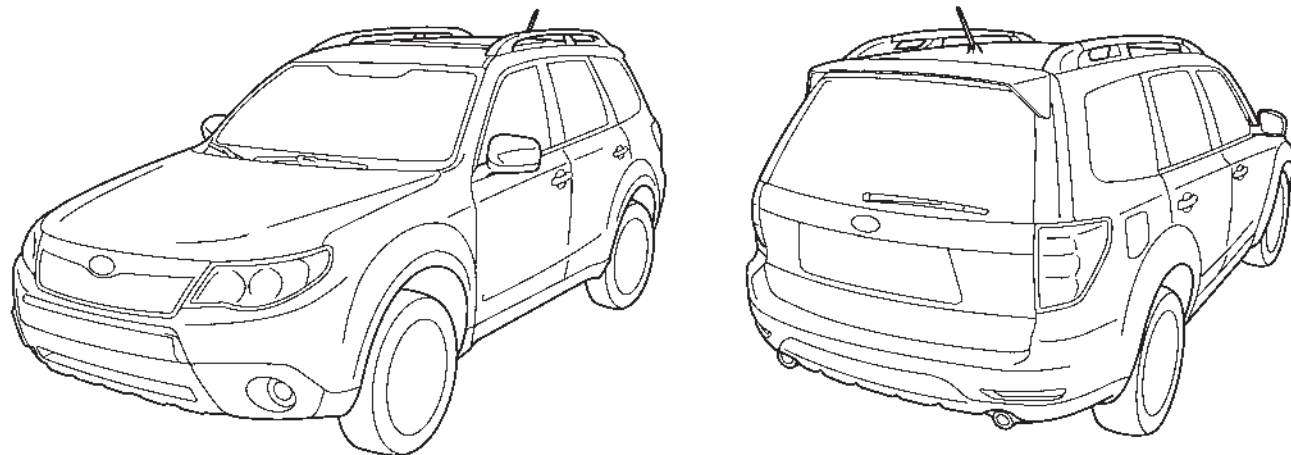


This manual describes the following vehicle types.\*



000706

\* The illustrated vehicle is one of the FORESTER series.



## Warranties

All warranty information, including details of coverage and exclusions, is in the "Warranty and Service Booklet". Please read these warranties carefully.

### ■ Models with HID headlights



#### CAUTION

**High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights contain mercury. For that reason, it is necessary to remove HID headlights before vehicle disposal. Once removed, please reuse, recycle or dispose of the HID headlights as hazardous waste.**

## How to use this Owner's Manual

### ■ Using your Owner's Manual

Before you operate your vehicle, carefully read this manual. To protect yourself and extend the service life of your vehicle, follow the instructions in this manual. Failure to observe these instructions may result in serious injury and damage to your vehicle.

This manual is composed of fourteen chapters. Each chapter begins with a brief table of contents, so you can usually tell at a glance if that chapter contains the information you want.

#### **Chapter 1: Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags**

This chapter informs you how to use the seat and seatbelt and contains precautions for the SRS airbags.

#### **Chapter 2: Keys and doors**

This chapter informs you how to operate the keys, locks and windows.

#### **Chapter 3: Instruments and controls**

This chapter informs you about the operation of instrument panel indicators and how to use the instruments and other switches.

#### **Chapter 4: Climate control**

This chapter informs you how to operate the climate control.

#### **Chapter 5: Audio**

This chapter informs you how to operate your audio system.

#### **Chapter 6: Interior equipment**

This chapter informs you how to operate interior equipment.

#### **Chapter 7: Starting and operating**

This chapter informs you how to start and operate your SUBARU.

#### **Chapter 8: Driving tips**

This chapter informs you how to drive your SUBARU in various conditions and explains some safety tips on driving.

#### **Chapter 9: In case of emergency**

This chapter informs you what to do if you have a problem while driving, such as a flat tire or engine overheating.

#### **Chapter 10: Appearance care**

This chapter informs you how to keep your SUBARU looking good.

#### **Chapter 11: Maintenance and service**

This chapter informs you when you need to take your SUBARU to the dealer for scheduled maintenance and informs you how to keep your SUBARU running properly.

## Chapter 12: Specifications

This chapter informs you about dimension and capacities of your SUBARU.

## Chapter 13: Supplement

This chapter informs you of supplementary information complied with some countries' requirements.

## Chapter 14: Index

This is an alphabetical listing of all that's in this manual. You can use it to quickly find something you want to read.

## ■ Safety warnings

You will find a number of WARNINGS, CAUTIONs and NOTES in this manual.

These safety warnings alert you to potential hazards that could result in injury to you or others.

Please read these safety warnings as well as all other portions of this manual carefully in order to gain a better understanding of how to use your SUBARU vehicle safely.



## WARNING

**A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.**



## CAUTION

**A CAUTION indicates a situation in which injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.**

## NOTE

**A NOTE gives information or suggestions how to make better use of your vehicle.**

## ■ Safety symbol



000013

You will find a circle with a slash through it in this manual. This symbol means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen", depending upon the context.

## ■ Abbreviation list

You will find several abbreviations in this manual. The meanings of the abbreviations are shown in the following list.

| Abbreviation | Meaning                               |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| A/C          | Air conditioner                       |
| A/ELR        | Automatic/Emergency locking retractor |
| ABS          | Anti-lock brake system                |
| ALR          | Automatic locking retractor           |
| AT           | Automatic transmission                |
| ATF          | Automatic transmission fluid          |
| AWD          | All-wheel drive                       |
| EBD          | Electronic Brake Force Distribution   |
| ELR          | Emergency locking retractor           |
| FWD          | Front-wheel drive                     |
| HID          | High intensity discharge              |
| INT          | Intermittent                          |
| LED          | Light emitting diode                  |
| LHD          | Left-hand drive                       |
| MPW          | Maximum permissible weight            |
| MT           | Manual transmission                   |
| OBD          | On-board diagnostics                  |
| Rear MPAW    | Maximum permissible rear axle weight  |

| Abbreviation | Meaning                       |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| RHD          | Right-hand drive              |
| RON          | Research octane number        |
| SRS          | Supplemental restraint system |
| VDC          | Vehicle Dynamics Control      |

## Vehicle symbols

There are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

For warning and indicator lights, refer to "Warning and indicator lights"  24.

| Mark                                                                               | Name                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|   | WARNING                              |
|   | CAUTION                              |
|   | Read these instructions carefully    |
|   | Wear eye protection                  |
|   | Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid |
|   | Keep children away                   |
|   | Keep flames away                     |
|   | Prevent explosions                   |
|  | Power door lock                      |

| Mark                                                                                 | Name                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|   | Power window with automatic open and close function |
|   | Passengers' windows lock                            |
|   | Fuel                                                |
|   | Front fog lights                                    |
|   | Rear fog lights                                     |
|   | Hazard warning flasher                              |
|   | Cigarette lighter                                   |
|   | Seat heater                                         |
|   | ISOFIX anchor bars                                  |
|   | Child restraint top tether anchorages               |
|  | Horn                                                |

– CONTINUED –

| Mark                                                                              | Name                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Wiper intermittent                                                  |
|  | Windshield washer                                                   |
|  | Windshield wiper mist (for single wipe)                             |
|  | Rear window wiper                                                   |
|  | Rear window washer                                                  |
|  | Lights                                                              |
|  | Headlight beam leveler                                              |
|  | Tail lights, license plate lights and instrument panel illumination |
|  | Headlights                                                          |
|  | Turn signal                                                         |
|  | Illumination brightness                                             |

| Mark                                                                              | Name                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Engine hood                                                          |
|  | Fan speed                                                            |
|  | Instrument panel outlets                                             |
|  | Instrument panel outlets and foot outlets                            |
|  | Foot outlets                                                         |
|  | Windshield defroster and foot outlets                                |
|  | Windshield defroster                                                 |
|  | Rear window defogger/Outside mirror defogger/Windshield wiper deicer |
|  | Air recirculation                                                    |
|  | Engine oil                                                           |
|  | Washer                                                               |

| Mark                                                                                | Name                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | Brake fluid                    |
|  | Door lock (transmitter)        |
|  | Door unlock (transmitter)      |
|  | Rear gate unlock (transmitter) |

## Safety precautions when driving

### ■ Seatbelt and SRS airbag



#### WARNING

- All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts **BEFORE** the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.
- To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.

Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.

- The SRS airbags deploy with

considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" 1-11.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" 1-37.

### ■ Child safety



#### WARNING

- Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.
- While riding in the vehicle, infants and small children should always be placed in the **REAR** seat in an infant or a child restraint system which is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the **REAR** seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.
- Put children in the **REAR** seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt. The SRS airbag deploys

with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**
- Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out. Refer to "Child safety locks" ¶2-21.
- Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window. Refer to "Windows" ¶2-22.
- Never leave unattended children in the vehicle. They could acci-

dentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ¶1-11.
- For the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" ¶1-23.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to "\*\*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)" ¶1-37.

### ■ Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)



#### WARNING

- Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.
- Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from enter-

ing the vehicle.

- Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.
- Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force outside air into the vehicle.
- Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.
- If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.
- Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.



## ■ Drinking and driving



### WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Alcohol in the bloodstream delays your reaction and impairs your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after drinking – even if you drink just a little – it will increase the risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident, injuring or killing yourself, your passengers and others. In addition, if you are injured in the accident, alcohol may increase the severity of that injury.

**Please don't drink and drive.**

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Since alcohol affects all people differently, you may have consumed too much alcohol to drive safely even if the level of alcohol in your blood is below the legal limit. The safest thing you can do is never drink and drive.

## ■ Drugs and driving



### WARNING

There are some drugs (over the counter and prescription) that can delay your reaction time and impair your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after taking them, it may increase your, your passengers' and other persons' risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident.

If you are taking any drugs, check with your doctor or pharmacist or read the literature that accompanies the medication to determine if the drug you are taking can impair your driving ability. Do not drive after taking any medications that can make you drowsy or otherwise affect your ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. If you have a medical condition that requires you to take drugs, please consult with your doctor.

Never drive if you are under the influence of any illicit mind-altering drugs. For your own health and well-being, we urge you not to take illegal drugs in the first place and to seek treatment if you are addicted to those drugs.

## ■ Driving when tired or sleepy



### WARNING

When you are tired or sleepy, your reaction will be delayed and your perception, judgment and attentiveness will be impaired. If you drive when tired or sleepy, your, your passengers' and other persons' chances of being involved in a serious accident may increase.

Please do not continue to drive but instead find a safe place to rest if you are tired or sleepy. On long trips, you should make periodic rest stops to refresh yourself before continuing on your journey. When possible, you should share the driving with others.

## ■ Modification of your vehicle



### CAUTION

Your vehicle should not be modified. Modification could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from modification may not be covered under warranties.

## ■ Car phone/cell phone and driving



### CAUTION

Do not use a car phone/cell phone while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident. If you use a car phone/cell phone, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. In some countries, only hands-free phones may legally be used while driving.

## ■ Driving vehicles equipped with navigation system



### WARNING

Do not allow the monitor to distract your attention from driving. Also, do not operate the controls of the navigation system while driving. The loss of attention to driving could lead to an accident. If you wish to operate the controls of the navigation system, first take the vehicle off the road and stop it in a safe place.

## ■ Driving with pets

Unrestrained pets can interfere with your driving and distract your attention from driving. In a collision or sudden stop, unrestrained pets or cages can be thrown around inside the vehicle and hurt you or your passengers. Besides, the pets can be hurt under these situations. It is also for their own safety that pets should be properly restrained in your vehicle. Restrain a pet with a special traveling harness which can be secured to the rear seat with a seatbelt or use a pet carrier which can be secured to the rear seat by routing a seatbelt through the carrier's

handle. Never restrain pets or pet carriers in the front passenger's seat. For further information, consult your veterinarian, local animal protection society or pet shop.

## ■ Tire pressures

Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month and before any long journey.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard. For detailed information, refer to "Tires and wheels" 11-38.



### WARNING

**Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.**

## ■ On-pavement and off-road driving

This vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Your vehicle has a higher ground clearance and higher center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over than ordinary passenger cars. It also handles and maneuvers differently from other passenger cars. For this reason, please read carefully the following section and follow the instructions and precautions in order to prevent serious injury or death due to loss of control, rollover and other accidents. Refer to "On-pavement and off road driving" 8-7.

## EU Battery directive 2006/66/EC

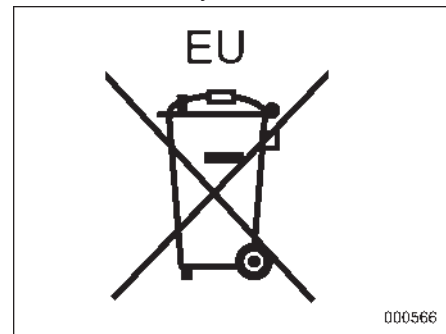
Followings are the symbol of EU Battery Directive 2006/66/EC.

This directive applies to the collection of batteries, recycling of disposed batteries and accumulators, and batteries not disposed of in landfills because they could be hazardous to the environment.

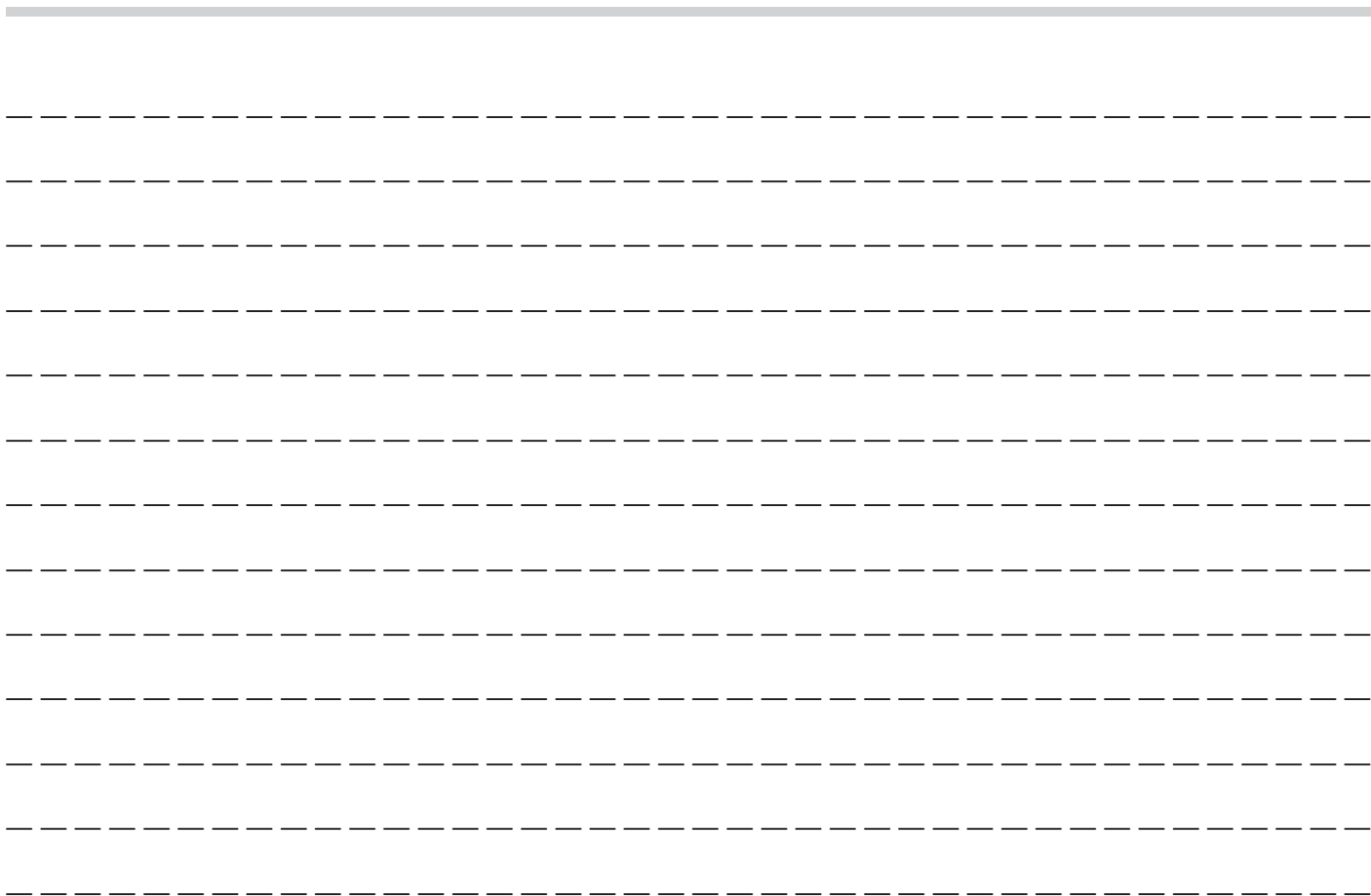
In your vehicle, there are some batteries that do not have the 2006/66/EC EU Battery directive symbol.

Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.

The following devices utilize batteries that do not have the symbol:



- Keys (if equipped): CR1620
- Access keys (if equipped): CR1632

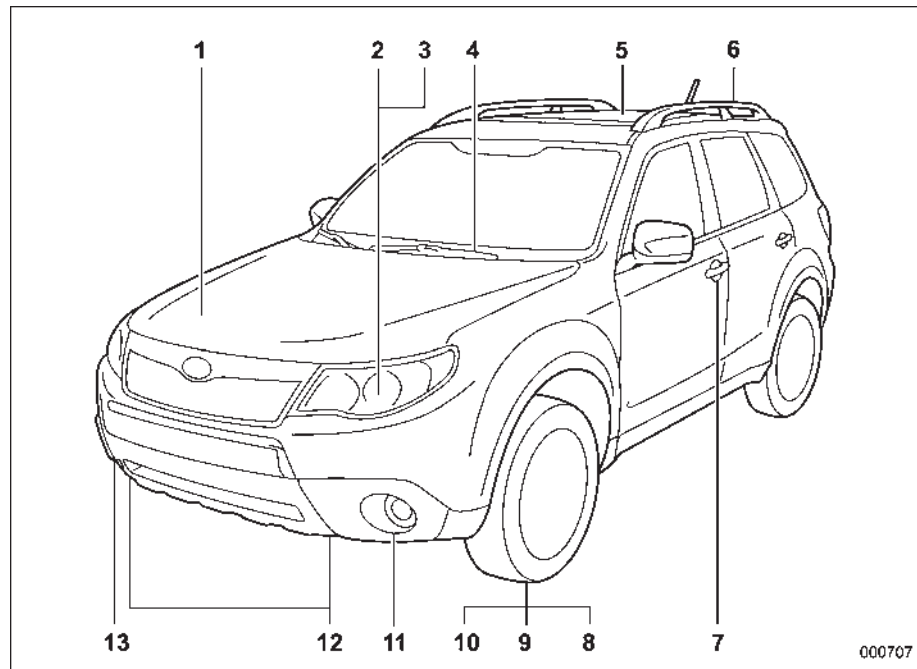


## Table of contents

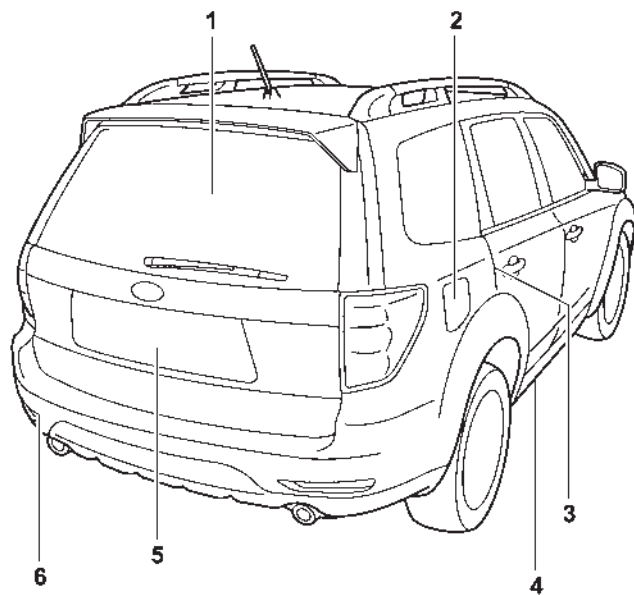
|                                       |           |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| <i>Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags</i> | <b>1</b>  |
| <i>Keys and doors</i>                 | <b>2</b>  |
| <i>Instruments and controls</i>       | <b>3</b>  |
| <i>Climate control</i>                | <b>4</b>  |
| <i>Audio</i>                          | <b>5</b>  |
| <i>Interior equipment</i>             | <b>6</b>  |
| <i>Starting and operating</i>         | <b>7</b>  |
| <i>Driving tips</i>                   | <b>8</b>  |
| <i>In case of emergency</i>           | <b>9</b>  |
| <i>Appearance care</i>                | <b>10</b> |
| <i>Maintenance and service</i>        | <b>11</b> |
| <i>Specifications</i>                 | <b>12</b> |
| <i>Supplement</i>                     | <b>13</b> |
| <i>Index</i>                          | <b>14</b> |

## Illustrated index

### ■ Exterior



- 1) Engine hood (page 11-10)
- 2) Headlight switch (page 3-37)
- 3) Replacing bulbs (page 11-53)
- 4) Wiper switch (page 3-45)
- 5) Sunroof (page 2-26)
- 6) Roof rails (page 8-13)
- 7) Door locks (page 2-4)
- 8) Tire pressure (page 11-39)
- 9) Flat tires (page 9-4)
- 10) Tire chains (page 8-12)
- 11) Fog light switch (page 3-42)
- 12) Tie-down hooks (page 9-12)
- 13) Towing hook (page 9-12)



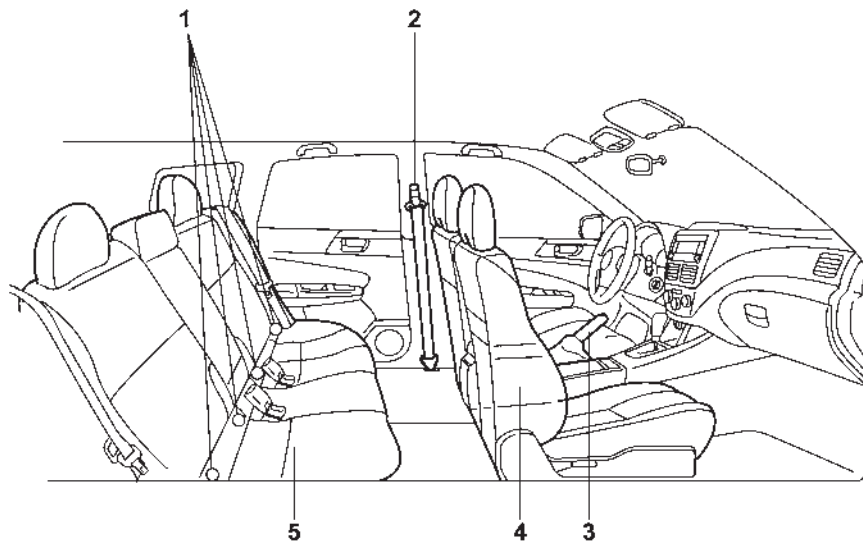
- 1) Rear window defogger (page 3-50)
- 2) Fuel filler lid and cap (page 7-3)
- 3) Child safety locks (page 2-21)
- 4) Tie-down hooks (page 9-12)
- 5) Rear gate (page 2-25)
- 6) Towing hook (page 9-12)

000708

## ■ Interior

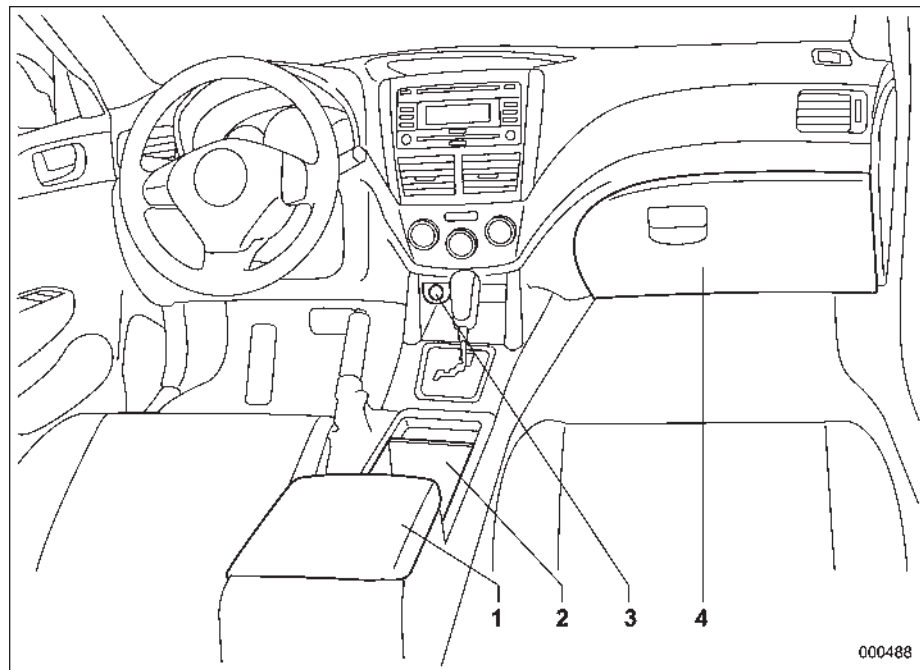
### ▼ Passenger compartment area

- 1) Anchor bars for ISOFIX child restraint system (page 1-33)
- 2) Seatbelt (page 1-11)
- 3) Parking brake lever (page 7-31)
- 4) Front seat (page 1-2)
- 5) Rear seat (page 1-7)



000479



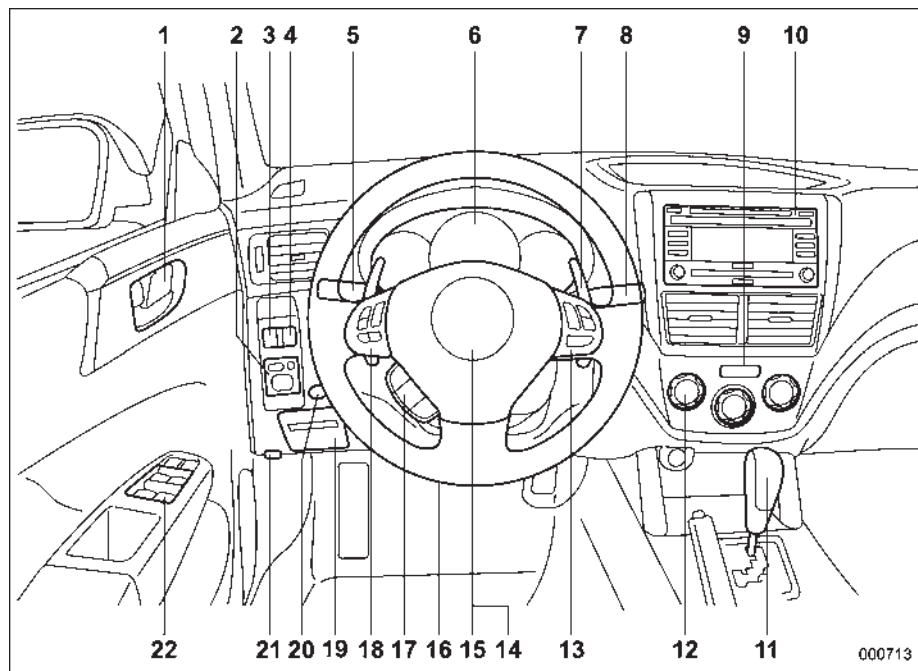


- 1) Center console (page 6-6)
- 2) Cup holder (page 6-8)  
Ashtray (page 6-12)
- 3) Front power supply socket (page 6-10)
- 4) Glove box (page 6-5)

000488

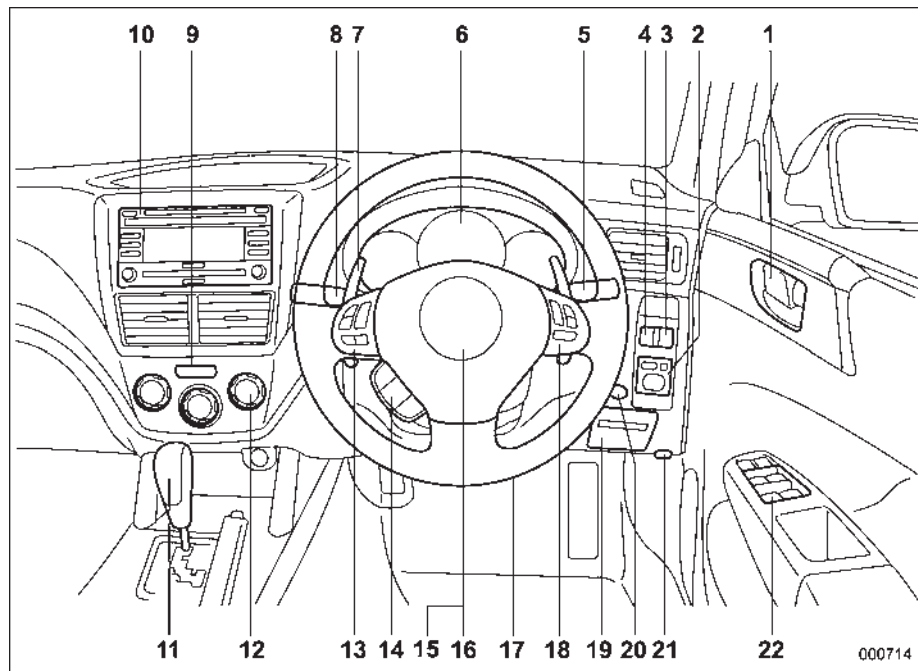
## ■ Instrument panel

### ▼ Left-hand drive models



- 1) Door locks (page 2-4)
- 2) Outside mirror switch (page 3-48)
- 3) Illumination brightness control (page 3-39)
- 4) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-40)
- 5) Light control lever (page 3-37)
- 6) Combination meter (page 3-7)
- 7) Paddle shift (page 7-22)
- 8) Wiper control lever (page 3-44)
- 9) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-7)
- 10) Audio (page 5-1)
- 11) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-11/7-14)/Select lever (AT) (page 7-17)
- 12) Climate control (page 4-1)
- 13) Cruise control (page 7-34)
- 14) Horn (page 3-52)
- 15) SRS airbag (page 1-37)
- 16) Tilt/telescopic steering (page 3-52)
- 17) Hands-free switches (page 5-39)
- 18) Audio control buttons (page 5-35)
- 19) Fuse box (page 11-51)
- 20) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (page 7-30)
- 21) Hood lock release knob (page 11-10)
- 22) Power windows (page 2-22)

# ▼ Right-hand drive models

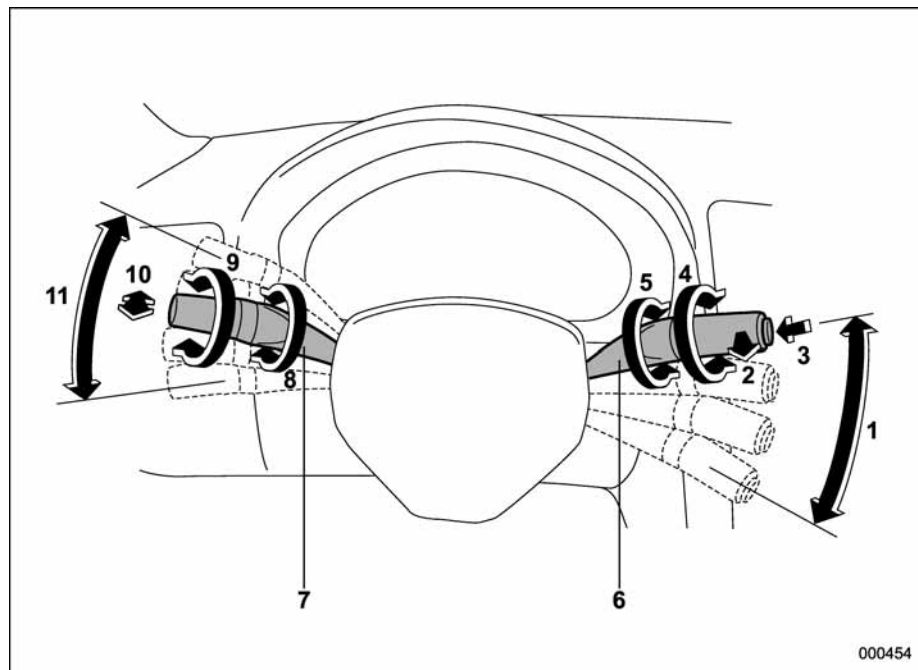


- 1) Door locks (page 2-4)
- 2) Outside mirror switch (page 3-48)
- 3) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-40)
- 4) Illumination brightness control dial (page 3-39)
- 5) Light control lever (page 3-37) or Wiper control lever (page 3-44)
- 6) Combination meter (page 3-7)
- 7) Paddle shift (page 7-22)
- 8) Wiper control lever (page 3-44) or Light control lever (page 3-37)
- 9) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-7)
- 10) Audio (page 5-1)
- 11) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-11/7-14)/Select lever (AT) (page 7-17)
- 12) Climate control (page 4-1)
- 13) Audio control buttons (page 5-35)
- 14) Hands-free switches (page 5-39)
- 15) Horn (page 3-52)
- 16) SRS airbag (page 1-37)
- 17) Tilt/telescopic steering (page 3-52)
- 18) Cruise control (page 7-34)
- 19) Fuse box (page 11-51)
- 20) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (page 7-30)
- 21) Hood lock release knob (page 11-10)
- 22) Power windows (page 2-22)

000714

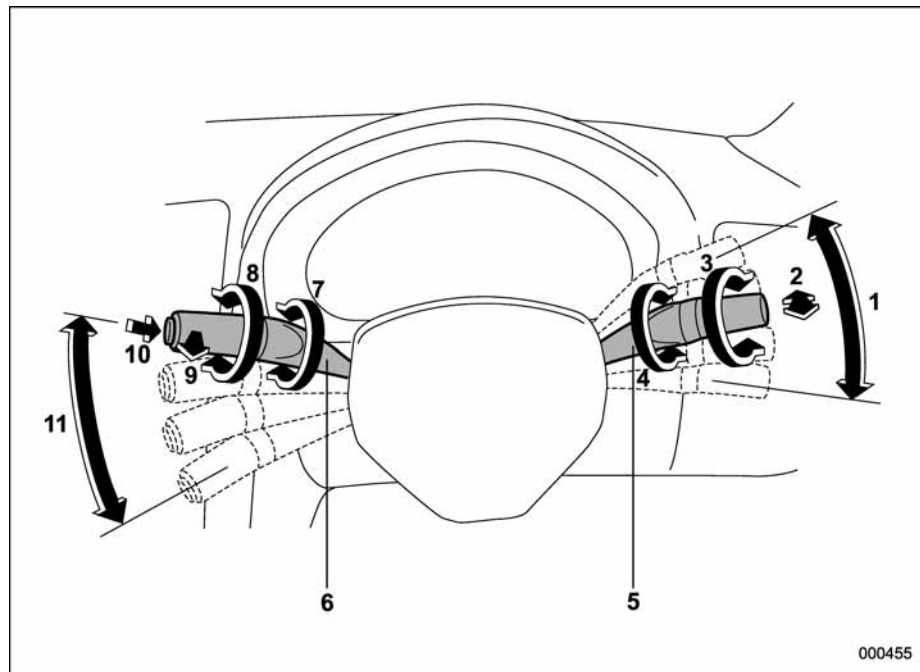
## ■ Light control and wiper control levers/switches

▼ Except Australia models



- 1) Windshield wiper (page 3-45)
- 2) Mist (page 3-46)
- 3) Windshield washer (page 3-46)
- 4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-46)
- 5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-45)
- 6) Wiper control lever (page 3-44)
- 7) Light control switch (page 3-37)
- 8) Fog light switch (page 3-42)
- 9) Headlight ON/OFF (page 3-37)
- 10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-38)
- 11) Turn signal (page 3-38)

▼ Australia models

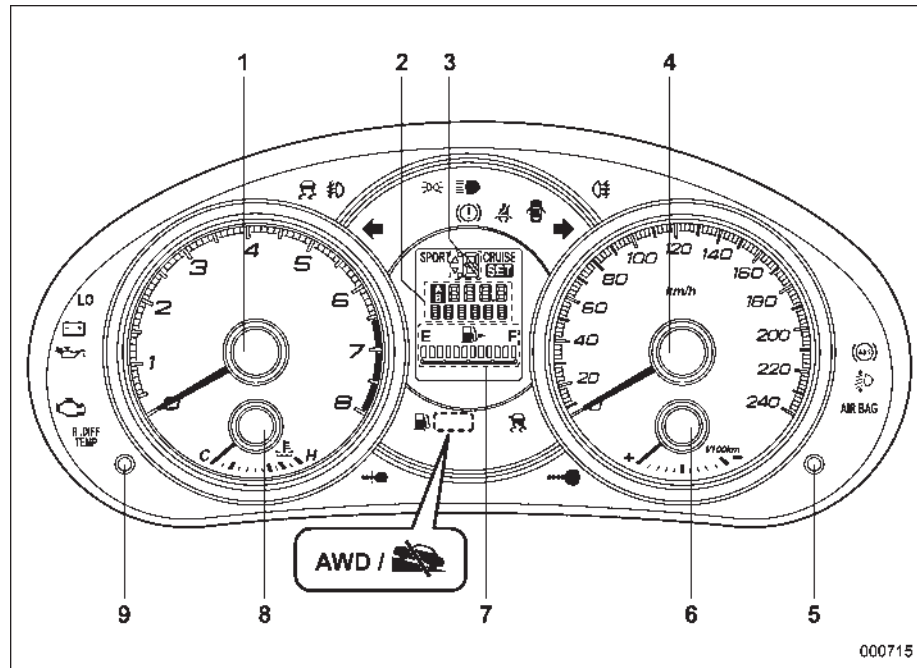


- 1) Turn signal (page 3-38)
- 2) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-38)
- 3) Headlight ON/OFF (page 3-37)
- 4) Front fog light switch (page 3-42)
- 5) Light control switch (page 3-37)
- 6) Wiper control lever (page 3-44)
- 7) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-45)
- 8) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-46)
- 9) Mist (page 3-46)
- 10) Windshield washer (page 3-46)
- 11) Windshield wiper (page 3-45)

000455

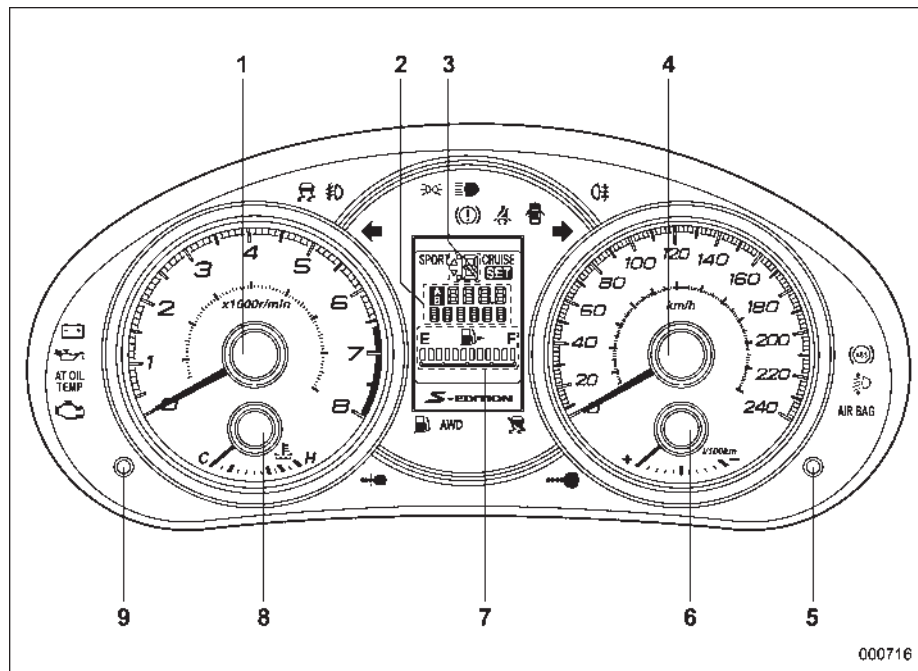
## ■ Combination meter

### ▼ Type A



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-12)
- 2) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-10)
- 3) Select lever and gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-10)
- 5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-34)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-8)
- 6) ECO gauge (page 3-14)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-12)
- 8) Temperature gauge (page 3-13)
- 9) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-8)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-34)

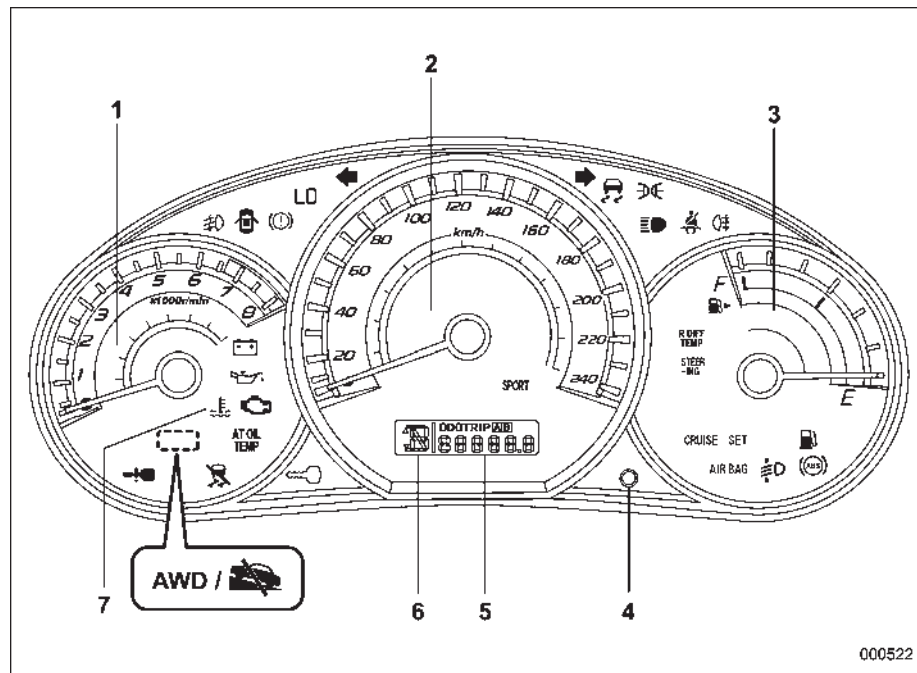
## ▼ Type B



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-12)
- 2) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-10)
- 3) Select lever and gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-10)
- 5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-34)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-8)
- 6) ECO gauge (page 3-14)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-12)
- 8) Temperature gauge (page 3-13)
- 9) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-8)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-34)

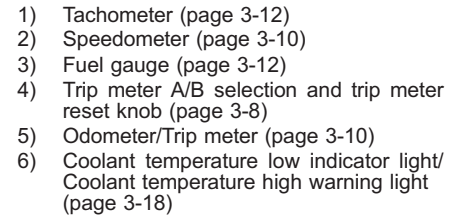
000716

## ▼ Type C



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-12)
- 2) Speedometer (page 3-10)
- 3) Fuel gauge (page 3-12)
- 4) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (page 3-8)
- 5) Odometer/Trip meter (page 3-10)
- 6) Select lever and gear position indicator (AT models) (page 3-31)
- 7) Coolant temperature low indicator light/  
Coolant temperature high warning light  
(page 3-18)





## ■ Warning and indicator lights

| Mark                                                                              | Name                                                                                                       | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|  | Seatbelt warning light (if equipped)                                                                       | 3-15 |
|  | Front passenger's seatbelt warning light (if equipped)                                                     | 3-15 |
| AIR BAG                                                                           | SRS airbag system warning light                                                                            | 3-17 |
|   | Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light)                                                            | 3-17 |
|  | Coolant temperature low indicator light (if equipped)/Coolant temperature high warning light (if equipped) | 3-18 |
|   | Charge warning light                                                                                       | 3-19 |
|   | Oil pressure warning light                                                                                 | 3-19 |
| AT OIL TEMP                                                                       | AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models)                                                                      | 3-20 |
| R.DIFF TEMP                                                                       | Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)                                              | 3-20 |
|  | ABS warning light                                                                                          | 3-20 |

| Mark                                                                              | Name                                                                                | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|  | Brake system warning light                                                          | 3-22 |
|  | Door open warning light                                                             | 3-24 |
| AWD                                                                               | AWD warning light (AT models)                                                       | 3-24 |
| STEERING                                                                          | Power steering warning light (if equipped)                                          | 3-24 |
|  | Hill start assist warning light (MT models)                                         | 3-23 |
|  | Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light                                  | 3-31 |
|  | Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light | 3-21 |
|  | Turn signal indicator lights                                                        | 3-32 |
|  | High beam indicator light                                                           | 3-32 |
|  | Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HiD headlights)         | 3-24 |

| Mark                                                                                | Name                                               | Page          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
|  | Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)      | 3-32          |
|  | Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)       | 3-32          |
|  | Access key warning light (if equipped)             | 3-26/<br>3-28 |
|  | Immobilizer indicator light                        | 2-4/<br>3-31  |
|  | Headlight indicator light                          | 3-32          |
| CRUISE                                                                              | Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)       | 3-32          |
| SET/SET                                                                             | Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)   | 3-32          |
|  | Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)   | 3-23          |
|  | Low fuel warning light                             | 3-13/<br>3-23 |
| SPORT                                                                               | SPORT mode indicator light (AT models)             | 3-31          |
| LO                                                                                  | LO position indicator light (dual range MT models) | 3-32          |

| Mark                                                                              | Name                                                                 | Page |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|  | Preheating indicator light<br>(diesel engine models)                 | 3-32 |
|  | Diesel particulate filter<br>warning light<br>(diesel engine models) | 3-33 |

## Function settings

A SUBARU dealer can change the settings of the functions shown in the following table to meet your personal requirements. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details. If your vehicle is equipped with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, the settings for some of these functions can be changed using the navigation monitor. For details, please refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.

| Item                                                                            | Function                                                                  | Possible settings                           | Default setting       | Page    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| Keyless access function <sup>*1*2</sup>                                         | Automatic locking                                                         | Operation/Non-operation                     | Operation             | 2-14    |
|                                                                                 | Automatic locking operation period                                        | Can be set in range from 20s to 60s         | 30s                   | 2-14    |
|                                                                                 | Door unlock selection function                                            | Operation/Non-operation                     | Non-operation         | 2-14    |
| Remote keyless entry system <sup>*1</sup>                                       | Automatic locking                                                         | Operation/Non-operation                     | Operation             | 2-18    |
|                                                                                 | Automatic locking operation period                                        | Can be set in range from 20s to 60s.        | 30s                   | 2-18    |
|                                                                                 | Door unlock selection function                                            | Operation/Non-operation                     | Non-operation         | 2-17    |
| Key lock-in prevention <sup>*1</sup>                                            | Key lock-in prevention                                                    | Operation/Non-operation                     | Operation             | 2-7     |
| Defogger and deicer system for models with the automatic climate control system | Rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer | Operation for 15 min./ Continuous operation | Operation for 15 min. | 3-50    |
| Map light/Dome light                                                            | Operation of map light/dome light OFF delay timer                         | OFF/Short/Normal/Long                       | Long                  | 6-2/6-3 |
| Battery drainage prevention function                                            | Battery drainage prevention function                                      | Operation/Non-operation                     | Operation             | 2-6     |

\*1: Not applicable to models equipped with double locking system

\*2: If equipped

|                                                                                                            |            |                                                                                                                             |             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Front seats</b> .....                                                                                   | <b>1-2</b> | <b>System monitors</b> .....                                                                                                | <b>1-22</b> |
| Manual seat .....                                                                                          | 1-3        | <b>System servicing</b> .....                                                                                               | 1-22        |
| Power seat (driver's seat – if equipped) .....                                                             | 1-4        | <b>Precautions against vehicle modification</b> .....                                                                       | 1-22        |
| Head restraint adjustment.....                                                                             | 1-5        | <b>Child restraint systems</b> .....                                                                                        | 1-23        |
| Active head restraint .....                                                                                | 1-5        | Where to place a child restraint system.....                                                                                | 1-24        |
| <b>Seat heater (if equipped)</b> .....                                                                     | 1-6        | Choosing a child restraint system .....                                                                                     | 1-26        |
| <b>Rear seats</b> .....                                                                                    | 1-7        | Child restraint suitability for each seating<br>position (Europe) .....                                                     | 1-27        |
| Armrest .....                                                                                              | 1-8        | Installing child restraint systems with<br>seatbelts .....                                                                  | 1-28        |
| Head restraint adjustment.....                                                                             | 1-8        | Installing a booster seat.....                                                                                              | 1-32        |
| Reclining the seatback .....                                                                               | 1-9        | Installation of child restraint systems using<br>ISOFIX anchor bars.....                                                    | 1-33        |
| Folding down the rear seatback.....                                                                        | 1-10       | Top tether anchorages .....                                                                                                 | 1-35        |
| <b>Seatbelts</b> .....                                                                                     | 1-11       | <b>*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint<br/>System airbag)</b> .....                                                         | 1-37        |
| Seatbelt safety tips.....                                                                                  | 1-11       | Models with SRS airbags and lap/shoulder<br>restraints for driver, front passenger, and<br>window-side rear passengers..... | 1-37        |
| Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) .....                                                                    | 1-12       | SRS frontal airbag .....                                                                                                    | 1-42        |
| Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR)<br>(if equipped).....                                        | 1-13       | SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag<br>(if equipped) .....                                                               | 1-48        |
| Seatbelt warning light and chime<br>(if equipped).....                                                     | 1-13       | SRS airbag system monitor.....                                                                                              | 1-54        |
| Fastening the seatbelt .....                                                                               | 1-13       | SRS airbag system servicing .....                                                                                           | 1-55        |
| Seatbelt maintenance .....                                                                                 | 1-19       | Precautions against vehicle modification.....                                                                               | 1-56        |
| <b>Front seatbelt pretensioners</b> .....                                                                  | 1-19       |                                                                                                                             |             |
| Seatbelt with shoulder belt pretensioner .....                                                             | 1-19       |                                                                                                                             |             |
| Seatbelt with shoulder belt and lap belt<br>pretensioners (driver's side – Australia models<br>only) ..... | 1-21       |                                                                                                                             |             |

## Front seats



### WARNING

- Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid the possibility of loss of vehicle control and of personal injury.
- Before adjusting the seat, make sure the hands and feet of rear seat passengers or cargo are clear of the adjusting mechanism.
- After adjusting the seat, push it slightly to make sure it is securely locked. If the seat is not securely locked, it may move or the seatbelt may not operate properly.
- Do not put objects under the front seats. They may interfere with front seat locking and cause an unexpected accident.
- Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running.

If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



### WARNING

Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or

improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

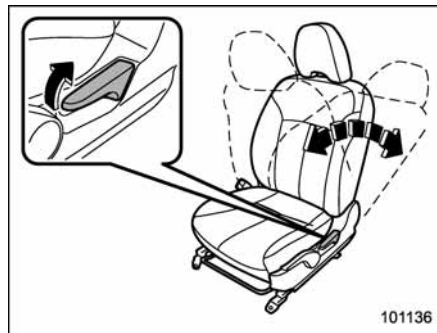
Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning child restraint systems, refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.

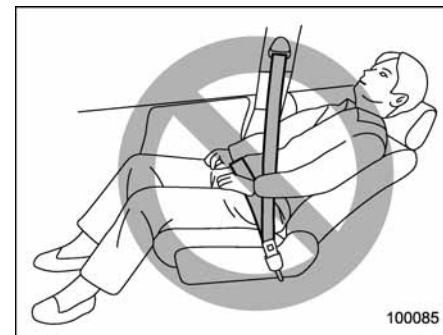
**Manual seat****Forward and backward adjustment**

Pull the lever upward and slide the seat to the desired position. Then release the lever and move the seat back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked into place.

**Reclining the seatback**

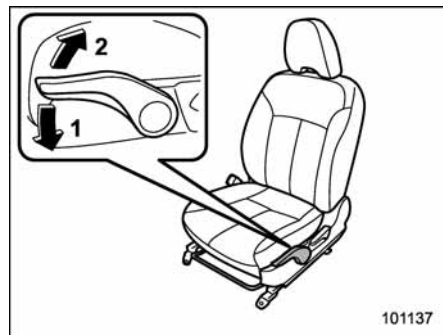
Pull the reclining lever up and adjust the seatback to the desired position. Then release the lever and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

The seatback placed in a reclined position can spring back upward with force when the lever is pulled. While operating the lever to return the seatback, hold the seatback lightly so that it may be raised back gradually.

**WARNING**

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

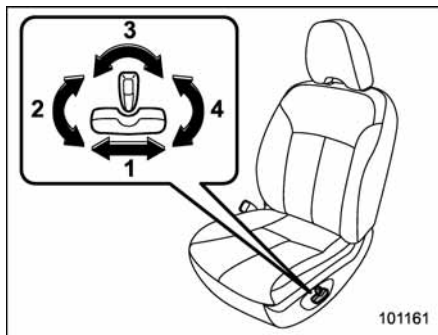
### ▼ Seat height adjustment (driver's seat)



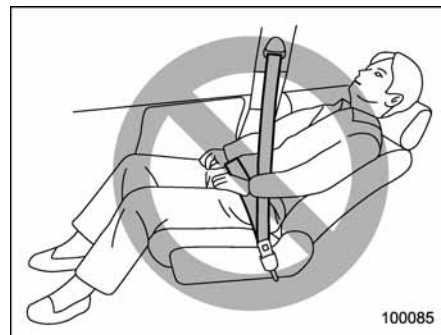
- 1) When the lever is pushed down, the seat is lowered.
- 2) When the lever is pulled up, the seat rises.

The height of the seat can be adjusted by moving the seat adjustment lever up and down.

### ■ Power seat (driver's seat – if equipped)



- 1) **Seat position forward/backward control switch**  
To adjust the seat forward or backward, move the control switch forward or backward. During forward/backward adjustment of the seat, you cannot adjust the seat cushion angle or seat cushion height.
- 2) **Seat cushion angle control switch**  
To adjust the seat cushion angle, pull up or push down the front end of the control switch.
- 3) **Seatback angle (reclining) control switch**  
To adjust the angle of the seatback, move the control switch.
- 4) **Seat height control switch**  
To adjust the seat height, pull up or push down the rear end of the control switch.

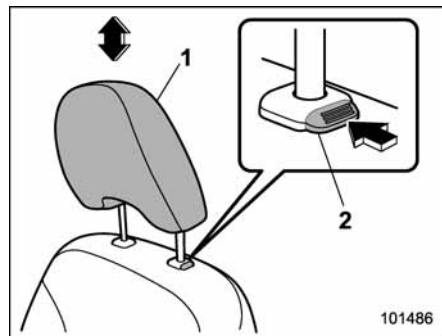


### WARNING

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



## ■ Head restraint adjustment



- 1) Head restraint
- 2) Release button

Both the driver's seat and the front passenger's seat are equipped with head restraints.

The head restraint should be adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.

### To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

### To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

### To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

### To install:

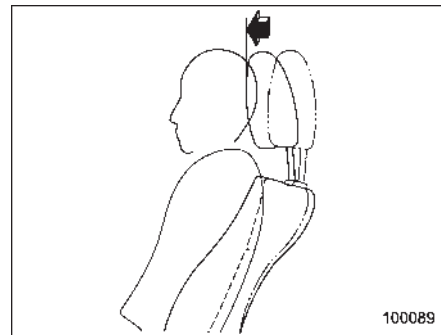
Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks.



## WARNING

- **Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.**
- **All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.**

## ■ Active head restraint



The front seats of your vehicle are equipped with active head restraints. They tilt forward slightly in the event the vehicle is struck from the rear, decreasing the amount of rearward head movement and thus reducing the risk of whiplash. For maximum effectiveness, the head restraint should be adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.


**CAUTION**

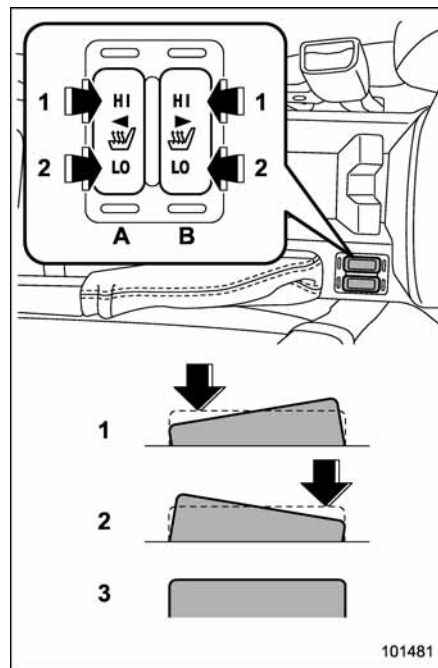
- Each active head restraint is effective only when its height is properly adjusted and the driver/passenger sits in the correct position on the seat.
- If your vehicle is involved in a rear-end collision, we recommend that you have an authorized SUBARU dealer inspect the active head restraints.
- The active head restraints may not operate in the event the vehicle experiences only a slight impact in the rear.
- The active head restraints may be damaged if they are pushed hard from behind or subjected to shock. As a result, they may not function if the vehicle suffers a rear impact.


**CAUTION**

- There is a possibility that people with delicate skin may suffer slight burns even at low temperatures if he/she uses the seat heater for a long period of time. When using the heater, always be sure to warn the persons concerned.
- Do not put anything on the seat which insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.

**NOTE**

Use of the seat heater for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.

**Seat heater (if equipped)**


- 1) **HI** – Rapid heating
  - 2) **LO** – Normal heating
  - 3) **OFF** – Off
- A) Left-hand side  
B) Right-hand side

The seat heaters are equipped in the front seats.

101481

The seat heaters operate when the ignition switch is either in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

**To turn on** the seat heater, push the LO or HI position on the switch, as desired, depending on the temperature. Selecting the HI position will cause the seat to heat up quicker. The indicator located on the switch illuminates when the seat heater is in operation.

**To turn off** the seat heater, slightly press the opposite side of the current position.

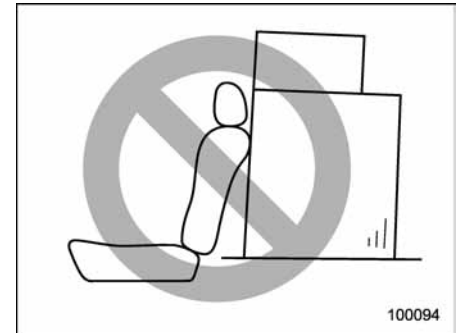
When the vehicle's interior is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn the switch off.

## Rear seats



### WARNING

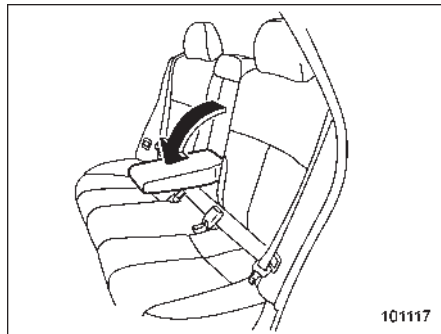
Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



### WARNING

Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## ■ Armrest



To lower the armrest, pull the top edge of the armrest down.

### WARNING

To avoid the possibility of serious injury, passengers must never be allowed to sit on the center armrest while the vehicle is in motion.

## ■ Head restraint adjustment

Both the rear window side seats and the rear center seat are equipped with head restraints.

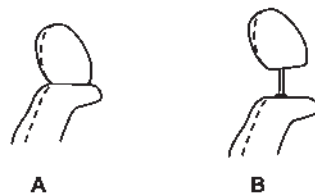
### WARNING

- Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.
- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

### ▼ Rear window side seating position

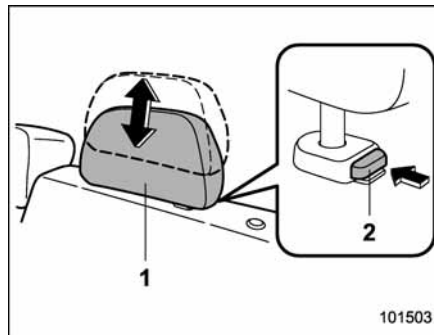
### CAUTION

The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the click position.



100097

- A) When not used (lowest position)  
B) When used (click position)



101503

- 1) Head restraint  
2) Release button

**To raise:**

Pull the head restraint up.

**To lower:**

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

**To remove:**

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

**To install:**

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks.

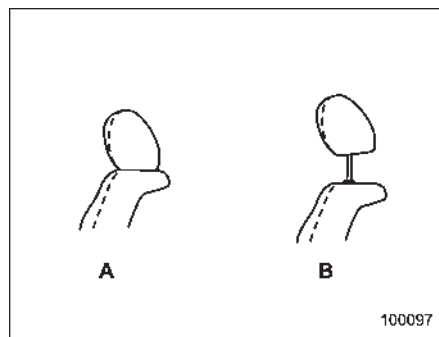
When the seats are not occupied, lower the head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

▼ **Rear center seating position**

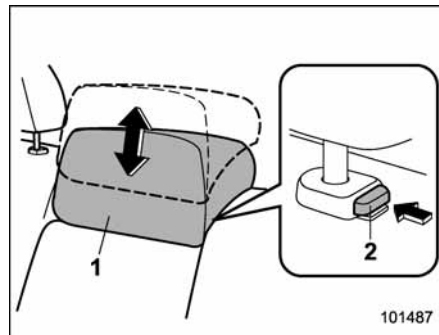


**CAUTION**

The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the click position.



- A) When not used (lowest position)
- B) When used (click position)



- 1) Head restraint
- 2) Release button

**To raise:**

Pull the head restraint up.

**To lower:**

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

**To remove:**

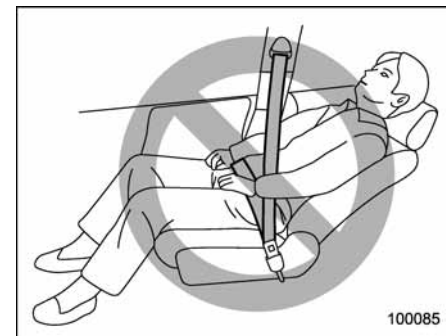
While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

**To install:**

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks.

When the rear center seating position is not occupied, lower the head restraint to improve rearward visibility.

■ **Reclining the seatback**



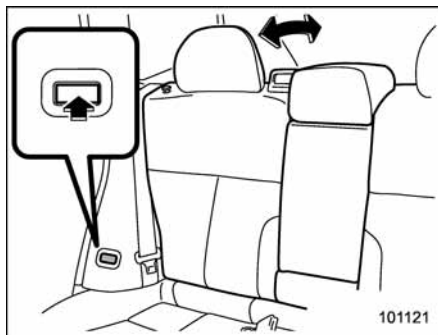
**⚠ WARNING**

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the vehicle is equipped with a cargo area cover, observe the following precautions.

- Be careful not to pinch your hand between the headrest and the cargo area cover when you recline the rear seat.
- Move the front cover of the cargo area cover backward so that the cover is not damaged by the reclined seatback. Refer to "Cargo area cover" 6-14.



Push the switch and adjust the seatback to the desired position.

Then release the switch and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

**■ Folding down the rear seatback**

**⚠ WARNING**

- When you fold down the seatback, confirm that there are no passengers or objects on the rear seat. Not doing so creates a risk of injury or property damage if the seatback suddenly folds down.
- For models equipped with the rear seat center table, when fold-

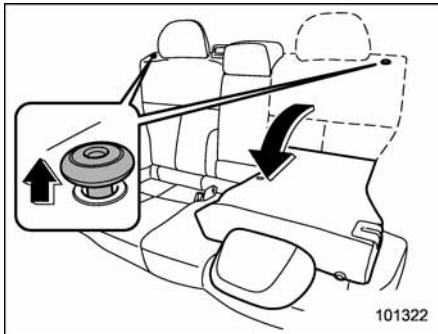
ing down the rear seatback, return the rear seat center table to its original position. If the rear seat center table is not returned to its original position, the rear seat center table could break and bodily injury could occur.

- Never allow passengers to ride on the folded rear seatback or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.
- Secure all objects and especially long items properly to prevent them from being thrown around inside the vehicle and causing serious injury during a sudden stop, a sudden steering maneuver or a rapid acceleration.
- When you return the seatback to the original position, shake the seatback slightly to confirm that it is securely fixed in place. If the seatback is not securely fixed in place, the seatback may suddenly fold down because of sudden braking or objects may move out from the cargo area, which could cause serious injury or death.
- When the seatback is returned to the original position, make sure

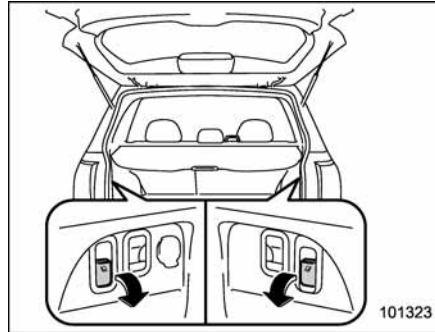
that the seatbelt is not caught in the seatback and it is fully visible. If the seatbelt is caught in the seatback, that may lead to serious injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident because the operation efficiency of the seatbelt is inhibited.

### CAUTION

The rear seatback may automatically and forcefully fold down because of its internal spring. Place your hand on the seatback to lower it more gradually.



Release knob



Folding switch (if equipped)

1. Lower the head restraints.
2. Unlock the seatback by pulling the release knob or the folding switch, and then fold the seatback down.

To return the seatback to its original position, raise the seatback until it locks into place and make sure that it is securely locked.

## Seatbelts

### Seatbelt safety tips

#### WARNING

- All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts **BEFORE** the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.
- All belts should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.
- Each seatbelt is designed to support only one person. Never use a single belt for two or more persons – even children. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.
- Replace all seatbelt assemblies including retractors and attaching hardware worn by occupants of a vehicle that has been in a serious accident. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.

- Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the REAR seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to

### **"Child restraint systems" 1-23.**

#### **▼ Infants or small children**

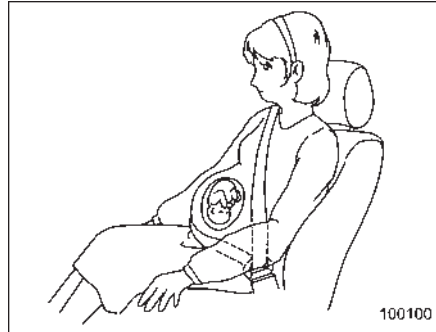
Use a child restraint system that is suitable for your vehicle. Refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.

#### **▼ Children**

If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the REAR seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.

If the shoulder portion of the belt crosses the face or neck, adjust the shoulder belt anchor height (window-side seating positions only) and then if necessary move the child closer to the belt buckle to help provide a good shoulder belt fit. Care must be taken to securely place the lap belt as low as possible on the hips and not on the child's waist. If the shoulder portion of the belt cannot be properly positioned, a child restraint system should be used. Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back.

#### **▼ Expectant mothers**



Expectant mothers also need to use the seatbelts. They should consult their doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips, not over the waist.

#### **■ Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)**

All seatbelts in the vehicle have an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).

The emergency locking retractor allows normal body movement but the retractor locks automatically during a sudden stop, impact or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.



## ■ Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) (if equipped)

For some models, each rear passenger's seatbelt has an Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR). The Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor normally functions as an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). The A/ELR has an additional locking mode "Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode" intended to secure a child restraint system.

First check if the ALR mode is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle. If the ALR mode is equipped, the seatbelts function as follows.

When a seatbelt is once drawn out completely and is then retracted even slightly, the retractor locks the seatbelt in that position and the seatbelt cannot be extended. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as an ALR. When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled.

For models with A/ELR seatbelts, when securing a child restraint system on the rear seats by the use of the seatbelt in the forward-facing direction, the seatbelt must be changed over to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. For instructions on how to install the child restraint system

using a seatbelt, refer to "Installing child restraint systems with seatbelts" 1-28.

When the child restraint system is removed, make sure that the retractor is restored to the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

## ■ Seatbelt warning light and chime (if equipped)



Refer to "Seatbelt warning light and chime" 3-15.

## ■ Fastening the seatbelt

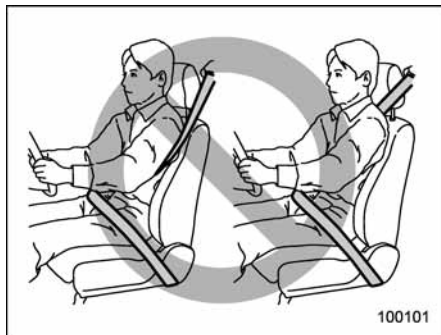


### WARNING

- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.**
- **Keep the lap belt as low as possible on your hips. In a collision, this spreads the force of the lap belt over stronger hip bones instead of across the weaker abdomen.**
- **Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding**

**under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**

- **Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**



**WARNING**

Never place the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.



**CAUTION**

Metallic parts of the seatbelt can become very hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn an occupant. Do not touch such hot parts until they cool.

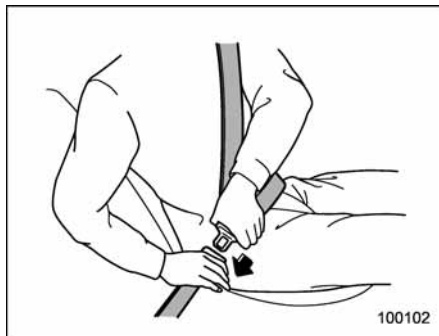
▼ **Front seatbelts**

1. Adjust the seat position:

**Driver's seat:** Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seatback as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control.

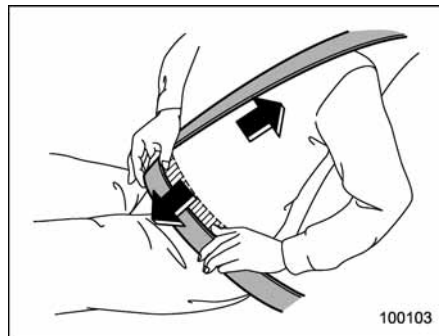
**Front passenger's seat:** Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seat as far back as possible.

2. Sit well back in the seat.
3. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.



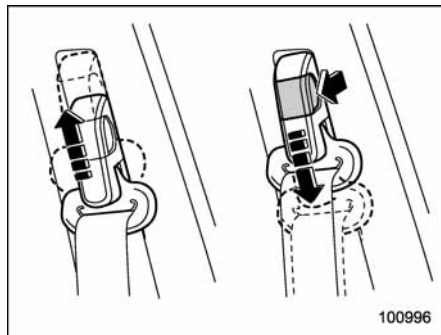
4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle

until you hear a click.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ **Adjusting the front seat shoulder belt anchor height**



The shoulder belt anchor height should be adjusted to the position best suited for the driver/front passenger. Always adjust the anchor height so that the shoulder belt passes over the middle of the shoulder without touching the neck.

**To raise:**

Slide the anchor up.

**To lower:**

Pull the release knob and slide the anchor down.

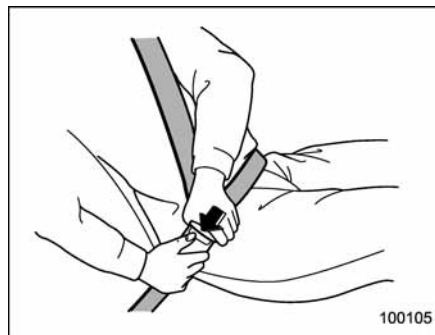
Pull down on the anchor to make sure that it is locked in place.



**WARNING**

When wearing the seatbelts, make sure the shoulder portion of the webbing does not pass over your neck. If it does, adjust the seatbelt anchor to a lower position. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.

▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**

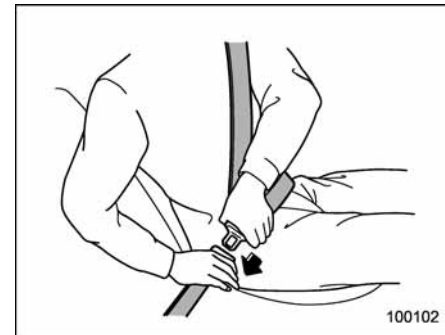


Push the button on the buckle.

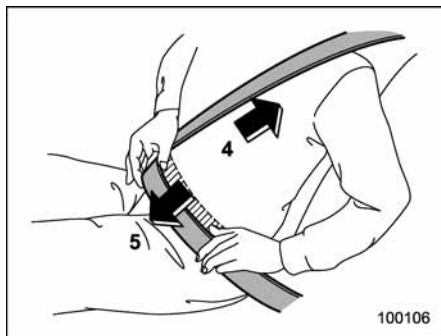
Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear seatbelts (except rear center seatbelt)**

1. Sit well back in the seat.
2. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving a strong pull on it, then pull it out slowly again.



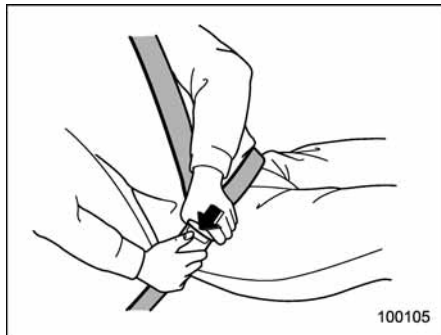
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

5. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

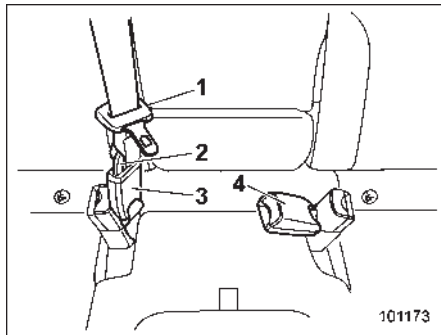
▼ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



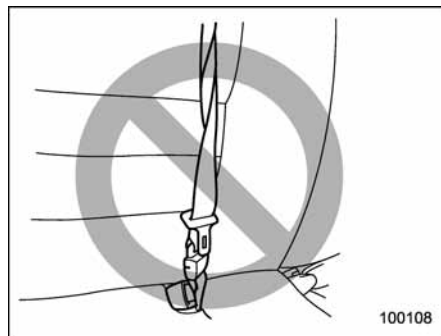
Push the button on the buckle.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear center seatbelt**

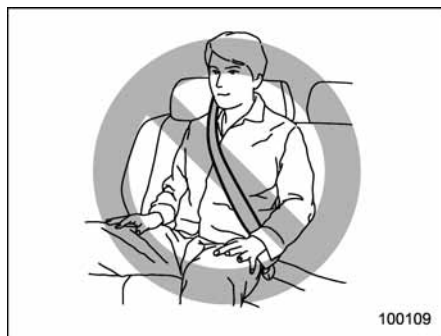


- 1) Center seatbelt tongue plate
- 2) Connector (tongue)
- 3) Connector (buckle)
- 4) Center seatbelt buckle



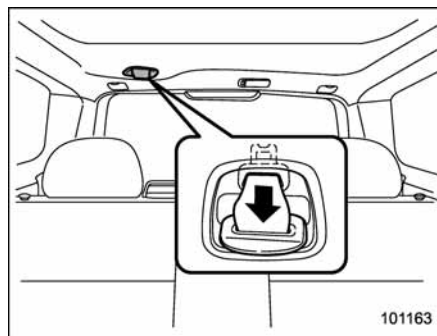
**WARNING**

Fastening the seatbelt with the webbing twisted can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident. When fastening the belt after it is pulled out from the retractor, especially when inserting the connector's tongue plate into the mating buckle (on right-hand side), always check that the webbing is not twisted.



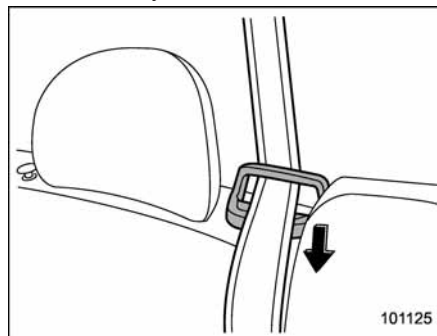
**WARNING**

Be sure to fasten both tongue plates to the respective buckles. If the seatbelt is used only as a shoulder belt (with the connector's tongue plate not fastened to the connector's buckle on the right-hand side), it cannot properly restrain the wearer in position in an accident, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

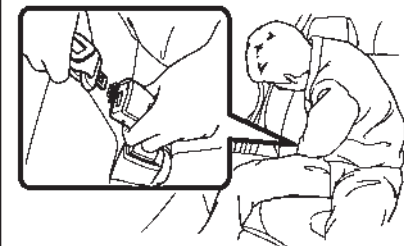


Rear center seatbelt is stowed in the recess of the ceiling above the cargo area.

1. Retrieve the connector (tongue) plate from the slot in the recess by pulling the connector (tongue) plate, then pull out the seatbelt slowly.



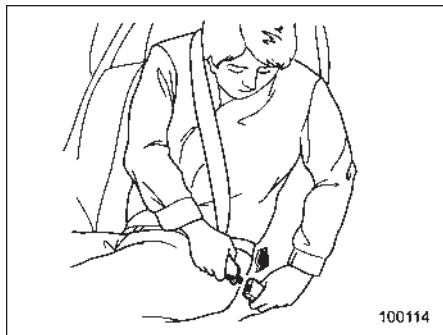
2. After drawing out the seatbelt, pass it through the belt guide.



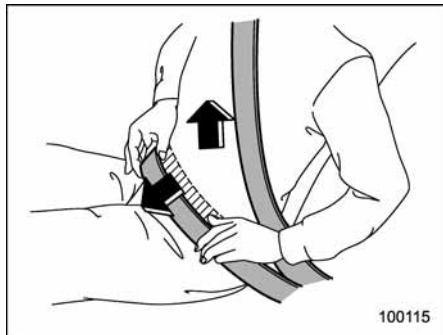
3. After confirming that the webbing is not twisted, insert the connector (tongue) attached at the webbing end into the buckle on the right-hand side until a click is heard.

If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.

## 1-18 Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags



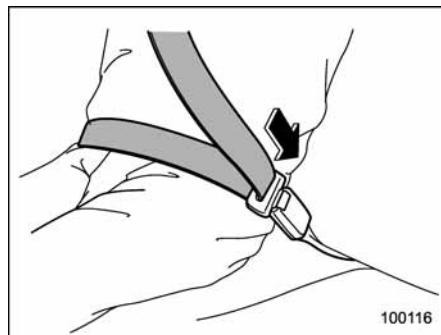
4. Insert the center seatbelt tongue plate in the center seatbelt buckle marked "CENTER" on the left-hand side until it clicks.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

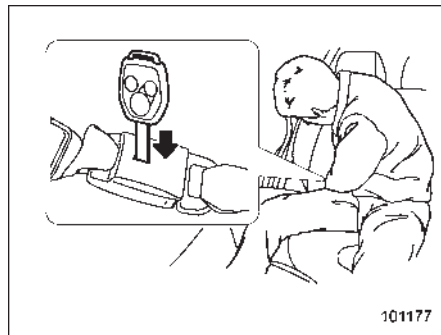
### ▽ Unfastening the seatbelt



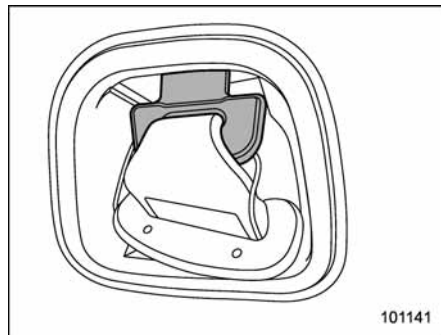
Push the release button of the center seatbelt buckle (on the left-hand side) to unfasten the seatbelt.

### NOTE

When the seatback is folded down for greater cargo area, it is necessary to disconnect the connector.

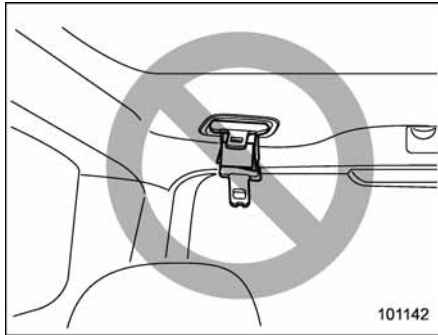


1. Insert a key or other hard pointed object into the slot in the connector (buckle) on the right-hand side and push it in, and the connector (tongue) plate will disconnect from the buckle.



2. Allow the retractor to roll up the belt.

You should hold the webbing end and guide it back into the retractor while it is rolling up. Neatly store the tongue plate in the recess and then insert the connector (tongue) plate into the slot.



101142

### **CAUTION**

- Do not allow the retractor to roll up the seatbelt too quickly. Otherwise, the metal tongue plates may hit and damage the trim.

- Make sure that the seatbelt is fully rolled up so that the tongue plates are neatly stored. A hanging tongue plate can swing and hit and damage the trim while driving.

### **Seatbelt maintenance**

To clean the seatbelts, use a mild soap and lukewarm water. Never bleach or dye the belts because this could seriously affect their strength.

Inspect the seatbelts and attachments including the webbing and all hardware periodically for cracks, cuts, gashes, tears, damage, loose bolts or worn areas. Replace the seatbelts even if only minor damage is found.

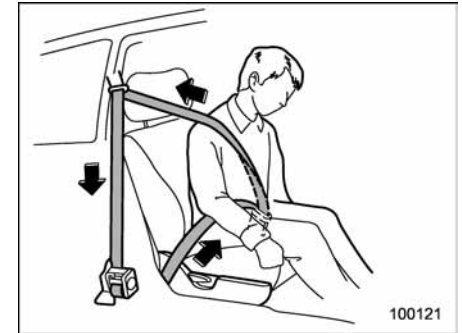
### **CAUTION**

- Keep the belts free of polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid.
- Never attempt to make modifications or changes that will prevent the seatbelt from operating properly.

## **Front seatbelt pretensioners**

The driver's and front passenger's seatbelts have a seatbelt pretensioner. The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to be activated in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision.

### **Seatbelt with shoulder belt pretensioner**



100121

The pretensioner sensor also serves as the frontal SRS airbag sensor. If the sensor detects a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the front seatbelt is quickly drawn back in by the pretensioner to take up the slack so that the belt more effectively restrains the front seat occupant.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt retractor remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

## NOTE

- Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to be activated in minor frontal impacts, in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.
- The driver's and passenger's seatbelt pretensioners and frontal SRS airbag operate simultaneously.
- Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have both the driver's and front passenger's seatbelt retractor assemblies replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer.
- If either front seatbelt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, we recommend that you

contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- If the front seatbelt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seatbelt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.



## WARNING

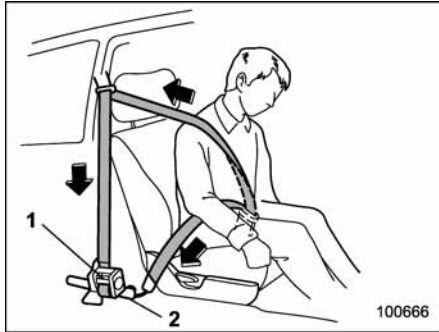
- To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" 1-11.
- Do not modify, remove or strike the front seatbelt retractor assemblies or surrounding area. This could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of front seatbelt retractors equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, we recommend that

you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.

- When discarding front seatbelt retractor assemblies or scrapping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.



## ■ Seatbelt with shoulder belt and lap belt pretensioners (driver's side – Australia models only)



- 1) Seatbelt retractor assembly (shoulder belt pretensioner)
- 2) Lap belt pretensioner

On the driver's side, the shoulder belt pretensioner is supplemented by a lap belt pretensioner, which is located at the base of the center pillar. Like the shoulder belt pretensioner, the lap belt pretensioner instantaneously pulls in the belt to eliminate slackness if a certain level of frontal collision force is detected. As a result, the belt restrains the driver more effectively.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a

small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt pretensioner remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

### NOTE

- Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to activate in minor frontal impacts, in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.
- The driver's and passenger's seatbelt pretensioners and frontal SRS airbag operate simultaneously.
- Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have both the driver's and front passenger's seatbelt retractor assemblies replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer.
- If either front seatbelt does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- If the front seatbelt assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seatbelt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.



### WARNING

- To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" 1-11.
- Do not modify, remove or strike the front seatbelt assemblies or surrounding area. This could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of front seatbelt assembly equipped with lap belt pretensioners, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.
- When discarding front seatbelt retractor assemblies or scrap-

ping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

## ■ System monitors

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the seatbelt pretensioner while the vehicle is being driven. The seatbelt pretensioners share the control module with the SRS airbag system. Therefore, if any malfunction occurs in a seatbelt pretensioner, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. For details, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" 1-54.

## ■ System servicing



### WARNING

- When discarding a seatbelt retractor assembly or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.
- Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental activation of the

seatbelt pretensioner and/or SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the seatbelt pretensioner and SRS airbag systems. For required servicing of the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.



### CAUTION

The front sub sensors are located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle, and the SRS airbag control module including the impact sensors is located under the center console. If you need service or repair in those areas or near the front seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you have the work performed by your authorized SUBARU dealer.

## NOTE

If the front part of the vehicle is damaged in an accident to the extent that the seatbelt pretensioners do not operate, we recommend that you con-

tact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

## ■ Precautions against vehicle modification

We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts to your vehicle.

**CAUTION**

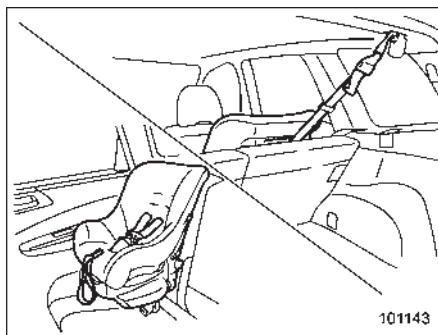
Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the seatbelt pretensioners.

- Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.
- Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.
- Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.

**Child restraint systems****NOTE**

For Australia models:

Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the instructions of the child restraint system.



Infants and small children should always be placed in an infant or child restraint system while riding in the vehicle. You should use an infant or child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's age and size. All child restraint systems are designed to be secured in the vehicle seats.

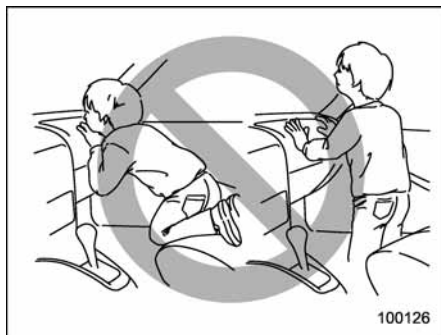
Children could be endangered in an accident if their child restraints are not

properly secured in the vehicle. When installing the child restraint system, carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

**WARNING**

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap or in his or her arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.

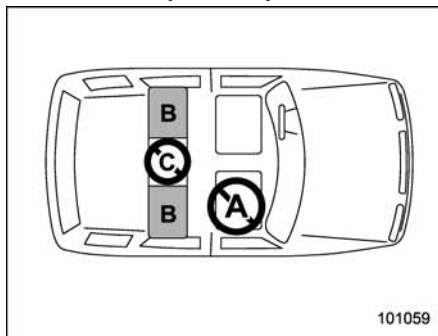


**⚠ WARNING**

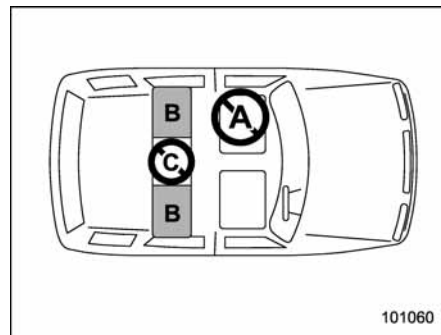
- Children should be properly restrained at all times. Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on any seat. Unrestrained children will be thrown forward during sudden stop or in an accident and can be injured seriously.
- Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.

**■ Where to place a child restraint system**

The following descriptions are SUBARU's recommendations on where to place a child restraint system in your vehicle.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

**A: Front passenger's seat**

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat) due to the hazard to children posed by the passenger's airbag.

**B: Rear seat, window-side seating positions**

Recommended positions for all types of child restraint systems.

In these positions, ISOFIX anchor bars are provided for installing a child restraint system.

Top tether anchorages are also provided for these positions.

Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

### **C: Rear seat, center seating position**

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat).



101154



### **WARNING**

- Secure **ALL** types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the **REAR** seats at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improp-

perly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the **REAR** seating positions than in the front seating positions.

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

### ▼ **Warning label**

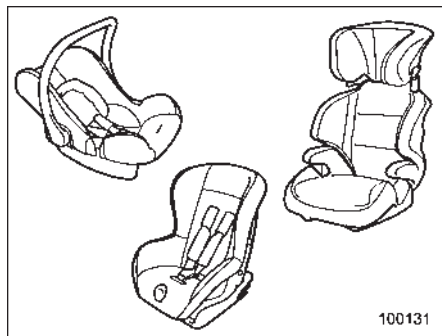


100664

A warning label as shown above is attached to the sun visor.

This warning label means "⚠ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!"

## ■ Choosing a child restraint system



Choose a child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's size and age to provide the child with proper protection.

Also it is important that the child restraint system meets safety standards applicable to your country.

In most European countries, child restraint systems must meet the requirement of ECE regulation No. 44. It can be identified by looking for the approval label on the child restraint system or the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and the system.

According to the ECE regulation No. 44, child restraint systems are classified into the following five "mass groups":

**Group 0:** for children of a mass less than 10 kg

**Group 0<sup>+</sup>:** for children of a mass less than 13 kg

**Group I:** for children of mass from 9 to 18 kg

**Group II:** for children of mass from 15 to 25 kg

**Group III:** for children of mass from 22 to 36 kg

For European countries, refer to the following table for the recommended child restraint system.

## ■ Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

| Mass group                   | Group according to ECE 44 | Front seating position | Rear seating position                        |        |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------|
|                              |                           | Passenger              | Window-side                                  | Center |
| Up to 13 kg (0 to 15 months) | 0, 0 <sup>+</sup>         | ×                      | L <sub>1</sub> , L <sub>2</sub> <sup>*</sup> | ×      |
| 9 to 18 kg (8 to 48 months)  | I                         | ×                      | L <sub>3</sub> <sup>*</sup>                  | ×      |
| 15 to 36 kg (3 to 12 years)  | II, III                   | ×                      | L <sub>4</sub> , L <sub>5</sub> <sup>*</sup> | ×      |

L<sub>1</sub>: Suitable for "SUBARU Baby-safe plus" that is approved for the use in this mass group.

L<sub>2</sub>: Suitable for "SUBARU Baby-safe plus + ISOFIX base" that is approved for the use in this mass group.

(\* : With ISOFIX fastening only)

L<sub>3</sub>: Recommended for "SUBARU Duo plus" that is approved for the use in this mass group.

(\* : With ISOFIX fastening only)

L<sub>4</sub>: Suitable for "SUBARU KID plus" that is approved for the use in this mass group.

L<sub>5</sub>: Suitable for "SUBARU KIDFIX" that is approved for the use in this mass group.

(\* : With ISOFIX fastening only)

×: Not suitable for child restraint system.

| Mass group        | Size class | Fixture | Vehicle ISOFIX positions |               |             |
|-------------------|------------|---------|--------------------------|---------------|-------------|
|                   |            |         | Front Passenger          | Rear Outboard | Rear Center |
| Carry-cot         | F          | ISO/L1  | NA                       | ×             | NA          |
|                   | G          | ISO/L2  | NA                       | ×             | NA          |
| 0 – up to 10 kg   | E          | ISO/R1  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
| 0+ – up to 13 kg  | E          | ISO/R1  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
|                   | D          | ISO/R2  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
|                   | C          | ISO/R3  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
| I – 9 to 18 kg    | D          | ISO/R2  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
|                   | C          | ISO/R3  | NA                       | IL1           | NA          |
|                   | B          | ISO/F2  | NA                       | IUF           | NA          |
|                   | B1         | ISO/F2X | NA                       | IUF           | NA          |
|                   | A          | ISO/F3  | NA                       | IUF           | NA          |
| II – 15 to 25 kg  |            |         | NA                       | IL2           | NA          |
| III – 22 to 36 kg |            |         | NA                       | IL2           | NA          |

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) that are given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.  
 ×: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

IL1: SUBARU BABY-SAFE Plus + ISOFIX base

IL2: SUBARU KIDFIX

## ■ Installing child restraint systems with seatbelts



### WARNING

- Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.



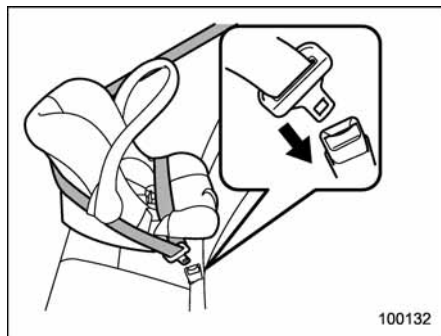
### CAUTION

**When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your**

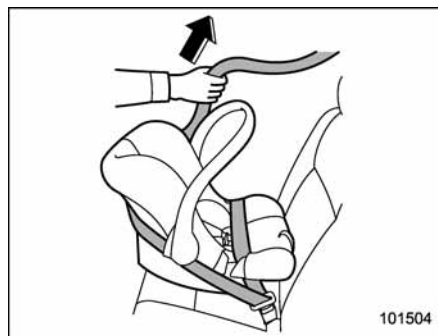


child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

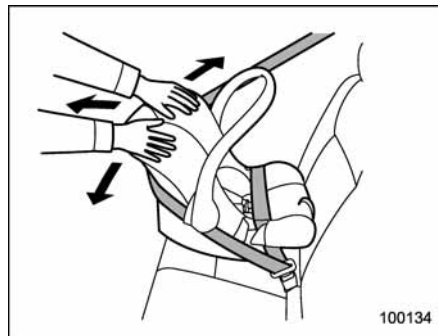
▼ Installing a rearward facing child restraint



1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.



5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to check that it is firmly secured.
6. To remove the child restraint system, press the release button on the seatbelt

buckle.



**WARNING**

**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

**▼ Installing a forward facing child restraint**

First check if the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle according to the following procedure.

1. Draw out the seatbelt completely.
2. Retract the seatbelt even slightly and try to draw out the seatbelt again.
3. If the seatbelt is locked in that position and cannot be extended, it indicates that an ALR is equipped for the seatbelt.

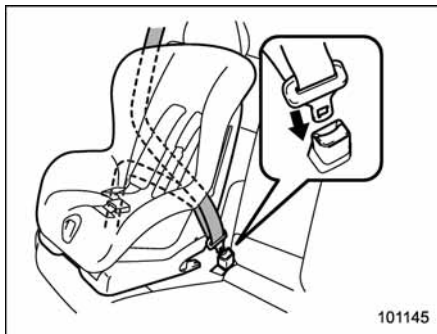
When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode is restored.

If the ALR is not equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models without ALR" 1-30.

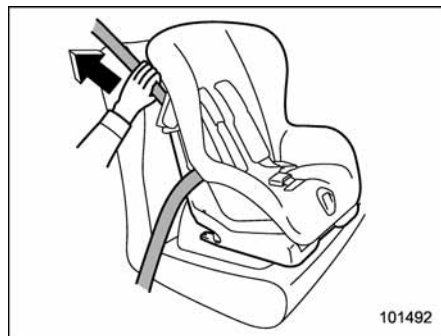
If the ALR is equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models with ALR" 1-31.

**NOTE**

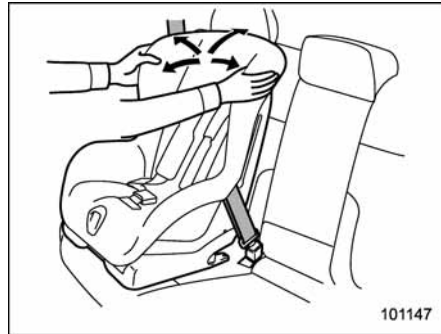
- For details about the ELR, refer to "Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)" 1-12.
- For details about the ALR, refer to "Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR)" 1-13.

**▽ Models without ALR**

1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



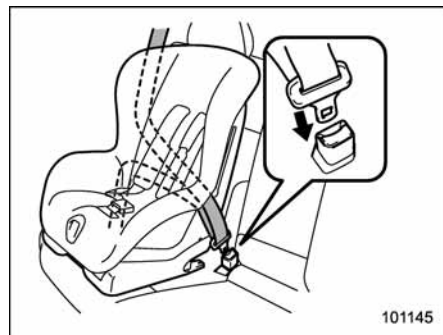
4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.



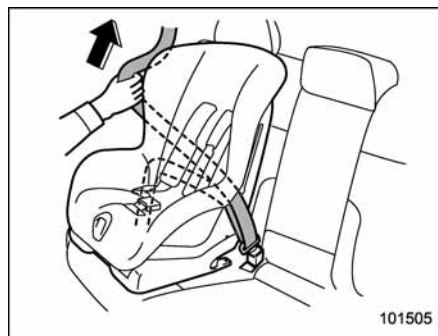
5. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it

down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.

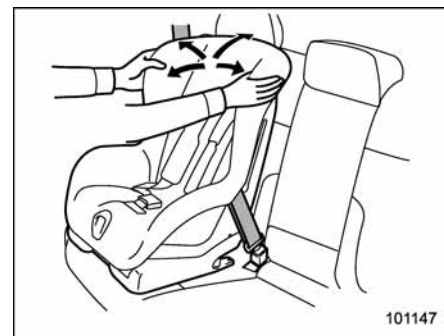
#### ▽ Models with ALR



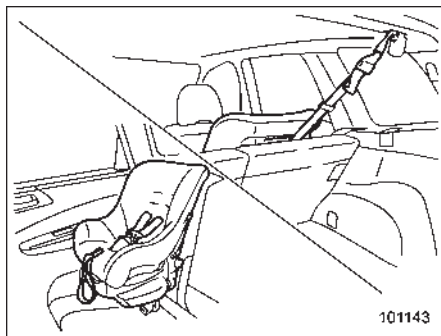
1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



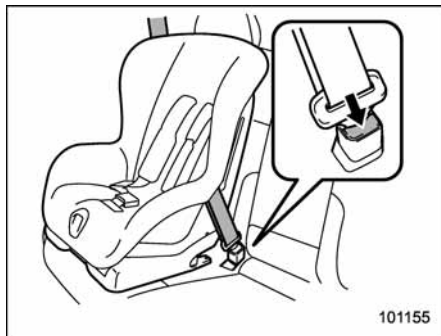
4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.
5. Pull out the seatbelt fully from the retractor to change the retractor over from the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) function. Then, allow the belt to rewind into the retractor. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as ALR.



6. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.
7. Pull at the shoulder portion of the belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out (ALR properly functioning).



8. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" 1-35.



9. To remove the child restraint system,

press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will return to the ELR mode.

### **NOTE**

**When the child restraint system is no longer in use, remove it and restore the ELR function of the retractor. That function is restored by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.**

### **■ Installing a booster seat**



1. Place the booster seat in the rear seating position and sit the child on it. The child should sit well back on the booster seat.

2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through

or around the booster seat and the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click. Take care not to twist the seatbelt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child's hips.



4. To remove the booster seat, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract.

**WARNING**

- Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.
- Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.
- The seatbelt should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.
- Place the lap belt as low as possible on the child's hips. High-positioned lap belt will increase the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.

## ■ Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars

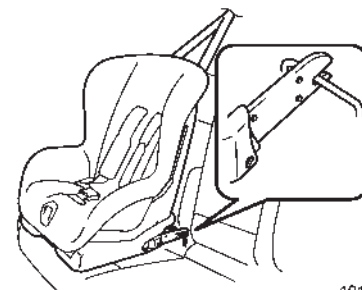
**WARNING**

- Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.

**CAUTION**

When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held

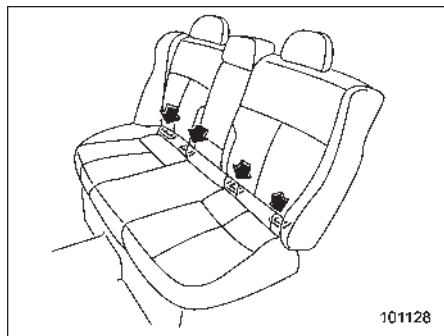
tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.



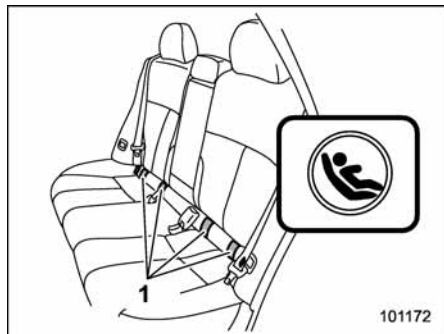
101158

Your vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX anchor bars that allow an approved ISOFIX child restraint system to be installed on the rear seat without use of a seatbelt.

## 1-34 Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags

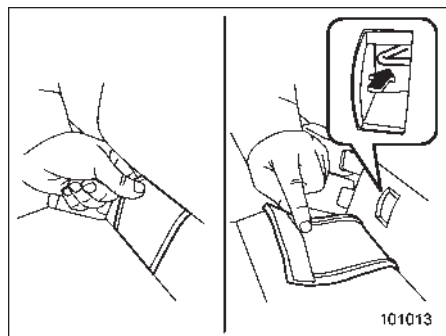


The ISOFIX anchor bars allow you to install a child restraint system only on the rear seat window-side seating positions. For each window-side seating position, two anchor bars are provided.



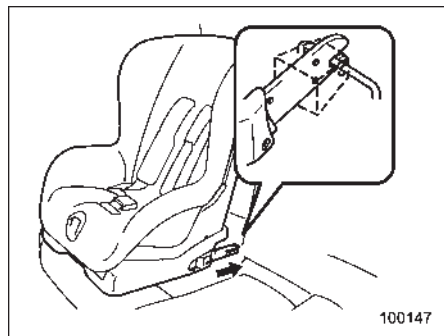
1) Cover

You will find the marks “Ⓢ” on the cover at the bottom of the rear seat seatbacks. These marks indicate the positions of the ISOFIX anchor bars.

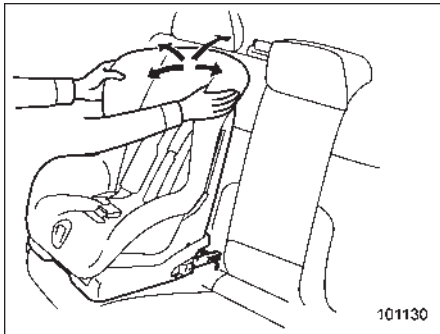


Each anchor bar is located where the seat cushion meets the seatback.

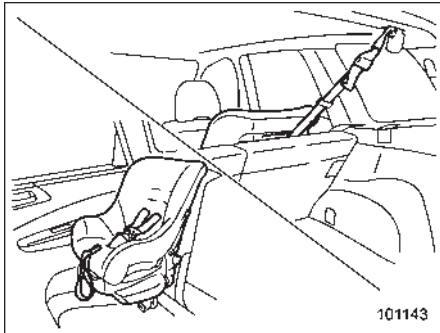
1. Use the “Ⓢ” marks to locate the two anchor bars for the position where you want to install the child restraint system.



2. While following the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer, connect the connectors of the child restraint system to the anchor bars. When the connectors are fastened, make sure that the adjacent seatbelts are not caught.



3. Before seating a child in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured.



If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether

anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" 1-35.

For further information about the child restraint system, refer to the instruction manual supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.

### NOTE

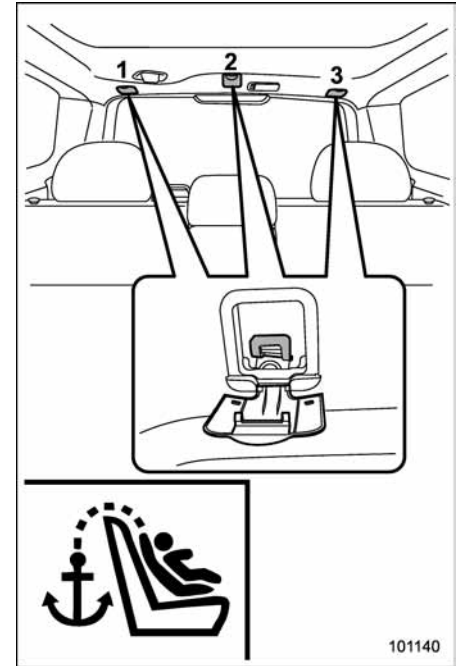
**Before installing a child restraint system, ask the manufacturer of the system to confirm that it is one approved for your vehicle.**

### ■ Top tether anchorages

Your vehicle is provided with two or three top tether anchorages so that a child restraint system having a top tether can be installed in the rear seat. When installing a child restraint system using top tether, proceed as follows, while observing the instructions by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Since a top tether can provide additional stability by offering another connection between a child restraint system and the vehicle, we recommend that you use a top tether whenever one is required or available.

### ▼ Anchorage location



- 1) For right seat
- 2) For center seat (for Australia models)
- 3) For left seat

There is an anchorage located on the rear edge of the ceiling above each seating

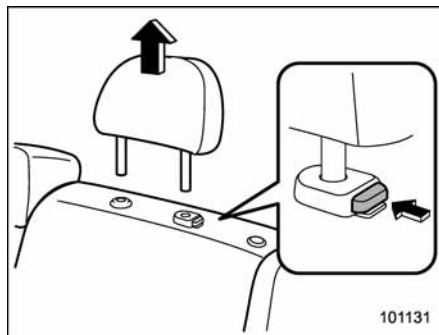
position.

▼ **To hook the top tether**



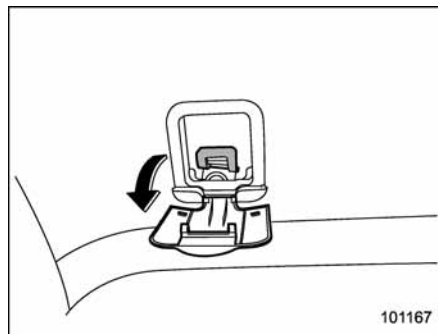
**CAUTION**

**Always remove the head restraint when mounting a child restraint system with a top tether. Failure to do so may prevent the top tether from being fastened tightly.**

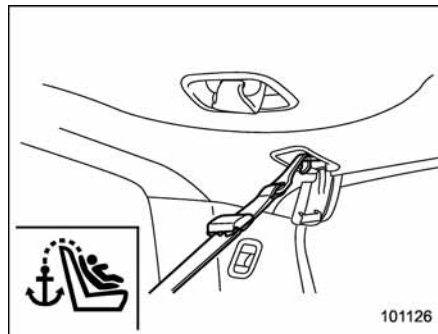


1. Remove the head restraint at the seating position where the child restraint system has been installed with the ISOFIX anchor bars or seatbelt; lift up the head restraint while pressing the release button. Store the head restraint in the cargo area. Avoid placing the head restraint in the passenger compartment to prevent it from

being thrown around in the passenger compartment in a sudden stop or a sharp turn.



2. Open the cover for the appropriate upper anchorage.



3. Attach the child restraint top tether

hook to the appropriate upper anchorage.  
4. Tighten the top tether securely.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you have any question regarding the installation of a child restraint system.



## \*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

\*SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seatbelts.

### ■ Models with SRS airbags and lap/shoulder restraints for driver, front passenger, and window-side rear passengers

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system in addition to a lap/shoulder belt at each front seating position and each rear window-side seating positions.

The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of two or six airbags. The configurations are as follows.

#### Two airbags

Driver's and front passenger's **frontal** airbags

#### Six airbags

- Driver's and front passenger's **frontal** airbags
- Driver's and front passenger's **side** airbags (if equipped)
- **Curtain** airbags (for driver, front passenger, and window-side rear passen-

gers) (if equipped)

**These SRS airbags are designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt.**

The system also controls front seatbelt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt pretensioner, refer to "Front seatbelt pretensioners" 1-19.



#### WARNING

- **To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS airbag is designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. It does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident. Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag. For instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt system,**

refer to "Seatbelts" 1-11.

- **Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed – faster than the blink of an eye – and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.**

It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.

Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.

- **The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deploy-**

ment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

- Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



100082



### **WARNING**

- Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE**

**FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**

- Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.

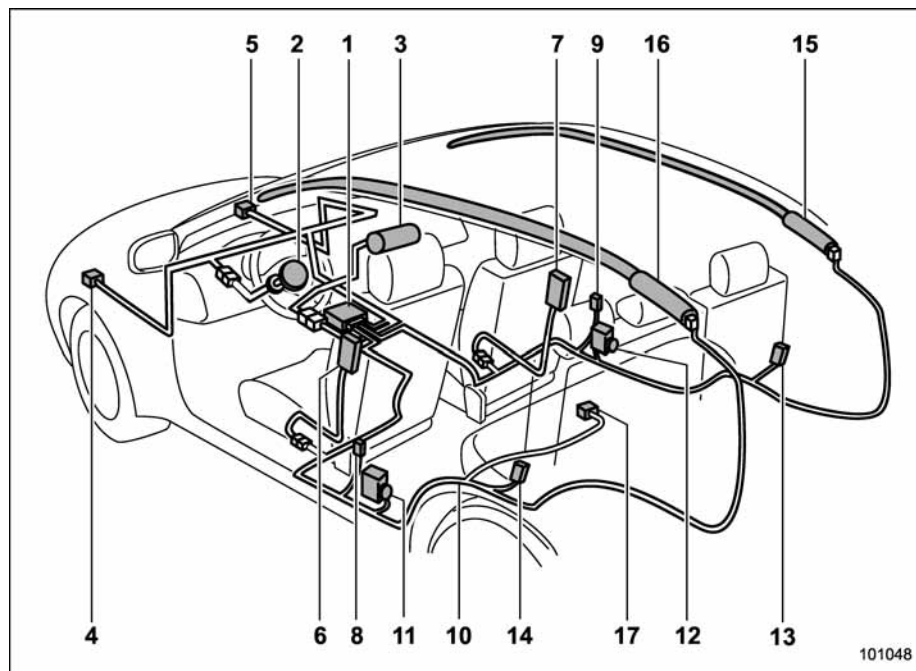


### **CAUTION**

- When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your passengers have breathing problems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.
- A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.

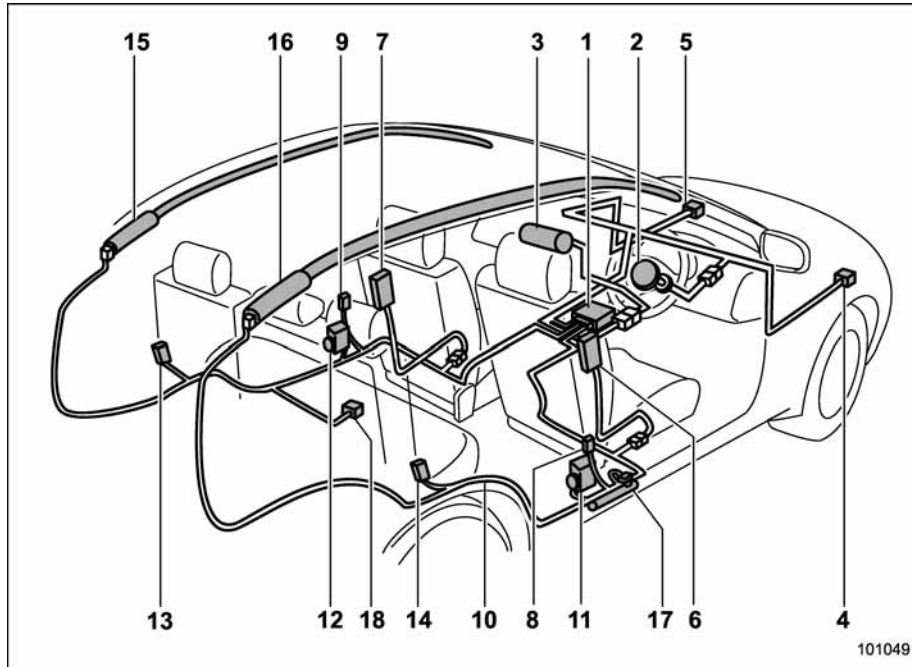
## **NOTE**

When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it is equipped with SRS airbags by alerting him or her to the applicable section in this Owner's Manual.



**Left-hand drive models**

- 1) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
- 2) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
- 3) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
- 4) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
- 5) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
- 6) Side airbag module (driver's side - if equipped)
- 7) Side airbag module (front passenger's side - if equipped)
- 8) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side - if equipped)
- 9) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side - if equipped)
- 10) Airbag wiring
- 11) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
- 12) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
- 13) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side - if equipped)
- 14) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side - if equipped)
- 15) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side - if equipped)
- 16) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side - if equipped)
- 17) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat - if equipped)



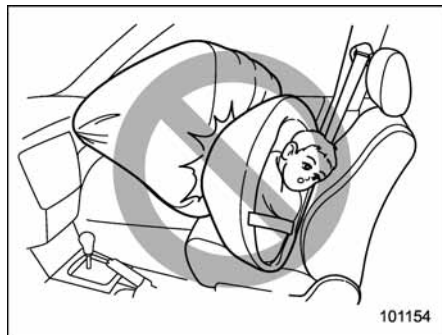
Right-hand drive models

- 1) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
- 2) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
- 3) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
- 4) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)
- 5) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
- 6) Side airbag module (driver's side – if equipped)
- 7) Side airbag module (front passenger's side – if equipped)
- 8) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side – if equipped)
- 9) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side – if equipped)
- 10) Airbag wiring
- 11) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
- 12) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
- 13) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side – if equipped)
- 14) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side – if equipped)
- 15) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side – if equipped)
- 16) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side – if equipped)
- 17) Lap belt pretensioner (driver's side – Australia models only)
- 18) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat – if equipped)

## ■ SRS frontal airbag

The driver's SRS frontal airbag is stowed in the center portion of the steering wheel. The passenger's SRS frontal airbag is stowed near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags deploy and supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact on the driver's and front passenger's head and chest.



### **WARNING**

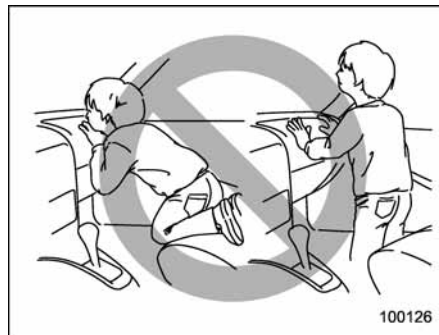
**NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD**

**BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**



A warning label as shown above is attached to the sun visor.

This warning label means "⚠ Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!".



### **WARNING**

**Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.**



**⚠ WARNING**

Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.

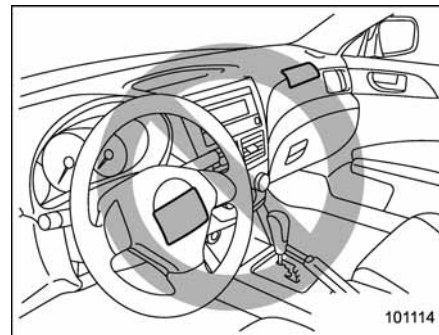


**⚠ WARNING**

The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

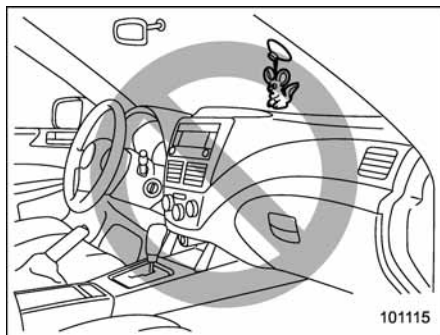
It is also important to wear your

seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown toward the front of the vehicle during pre-accident braking.



**⚠ WARNING**

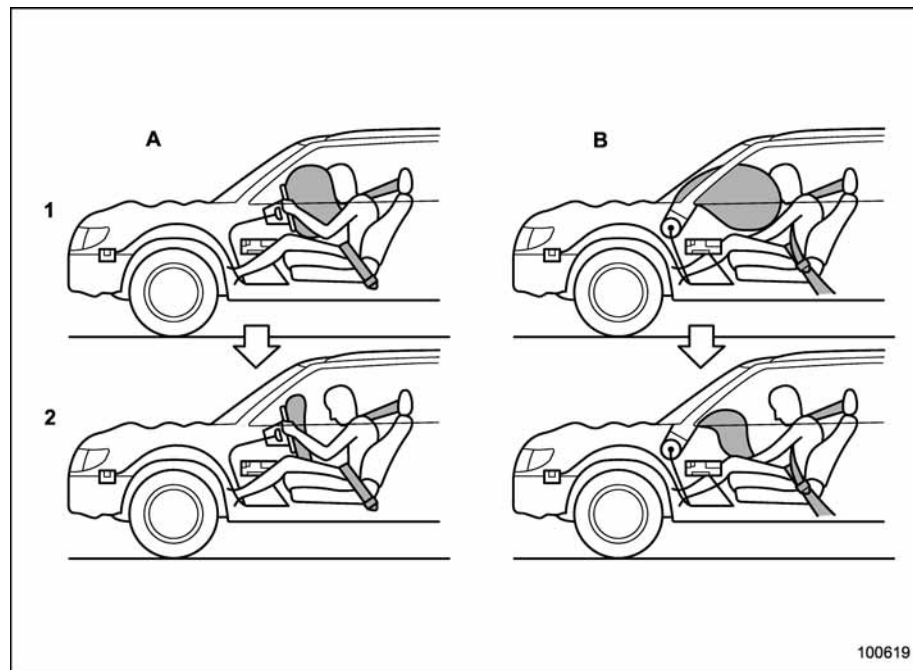
Do not put any objects over the steering wheel pad and dashboard. If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



**WARNING**

Do not attach accessories to the windshield, or fit an extra-wide mirror over the rear view mirror. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could become projectiles that could seriously injure vehicle occupants.

▼ **Operation**



A) Driver's side

B) Passenger's side

1) SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.

2) After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.



The SRS airbag can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

If the front sub sensors located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle and the impact sensors in the airbag control module detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the frontal airbag modules instructing them to inflate the SRS frontal airbags. Then both airbag modules produce gas, which instantly inflates driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags.

After deployment, the SRS airbags immediately start to deflate so that the driver's vision is not obstructed. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploys together with driver's SRS frontal airbag even when no one occupies the front passenger's seat.

Although it is highly unlikely that the SRS airbag would activate in a non-accident situation, should it occur, the SRS airbag will deflate quickly, not obscuring vision and will not interfere with the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle.

When the SRS airbag deploys, a sudden,

fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.



### CAUTION

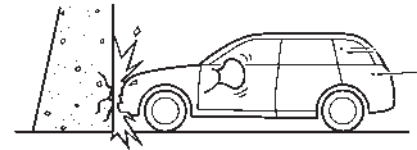
**Do not touch the SRS airbag system components around the steering wheel and dashboard with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.**

The SRS frontal airbag is designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision. It is basically not designed to deploy in lesser frontal impacts because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seatbelt alone. Also, it is basically not designed to deploy in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents because deployment of the SRS frontal airbag would not help the occupant in those situations. The SRS airbag is designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That

level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

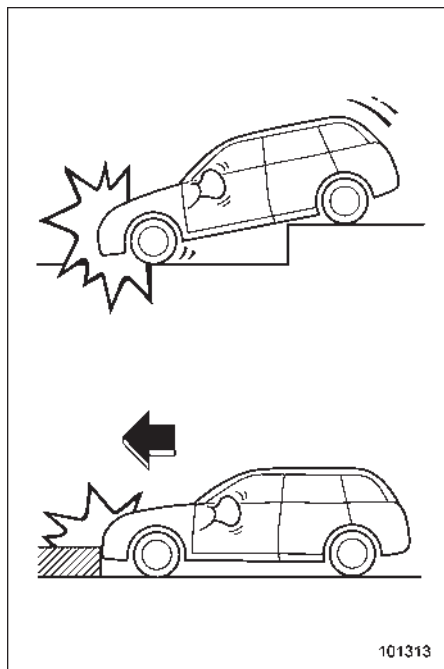
### ▽ When will the SRS frontal airbag most likely deploy?



101394

A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speed of 20 to 30 km/h (12 to 19 mph) or higher activates the SRS frontal airbag. The SRS frontal airbag will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

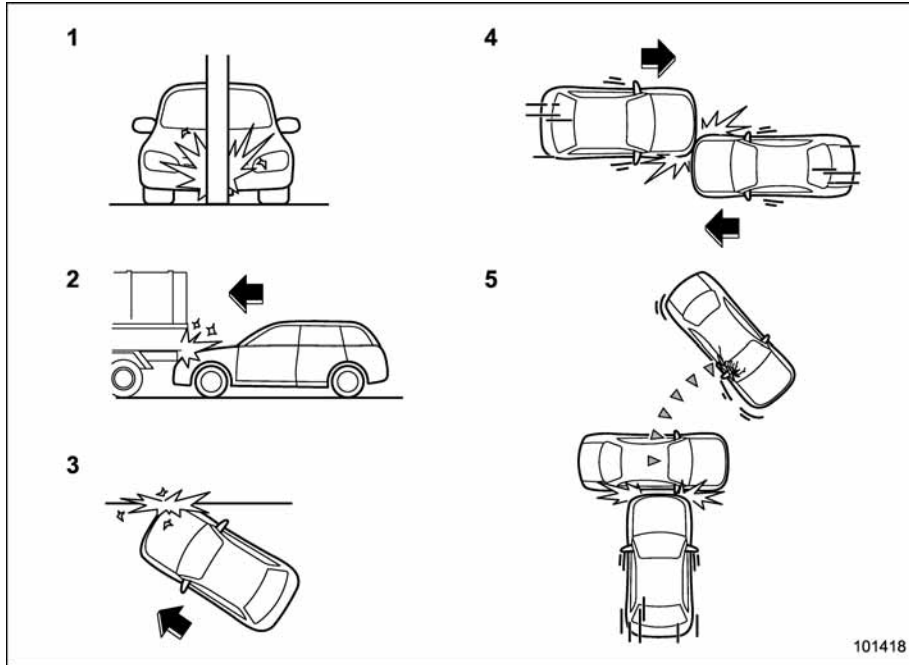
▽ **At what other times might the SRS frontal airbag deploy?**



The SRS frontal airbag may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle

plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

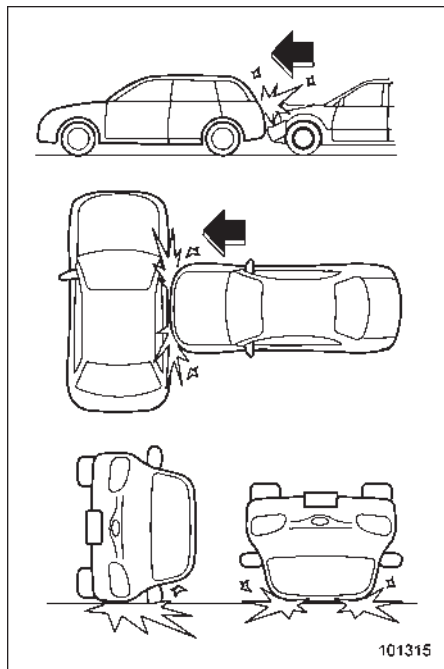
▽ When is the SRS frontal airbag unlikely to deploy?



- 1) The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.
- 2) The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.
- 3) The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.
- 4) The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.
- 5) The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

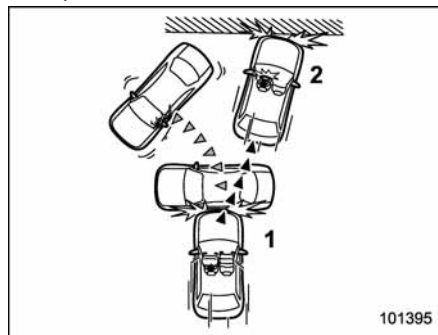
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS frontal airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS frontal airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

▽ **When will the SRS frontal airbag not deploy?**



The SRS frontal airbag is basically not designed to deploy if the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind, or if it rolls onto its side or roof, or if it is involved in a

low-speed frontal collision.



- 1) First impact
- 2) Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the SRS frontal airbag deploys only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once the SRS frontal airbag is activated on the first impact, it will not be activated on the second.

■ **SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag (if equipped)**

The SRS side airbag is stored in the door side of each front seat seatback, which bears an "SRS AIRBAG" label.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact on the occupant's chest.

The curtain airbag on each side of the cabin is stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat). An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located at the top of each center pillar.

In a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact on the occupant's head.



**WARNING**

**The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed as only a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. They do not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. It is also important**

to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.



**WARNING**

- Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to either front door. The SRS side airbag is stored in both front seat seatbacks next to the door, and it provides protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact collision. However, the force of SRS side airbag deployment may cause injuries if your head or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS

side airbag.

- Since your vehicle is equipped with SRS curtain airbags, do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the front or rear door on either side. The curtain airbag on each side of the cabin is stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat), and it provides protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact. However, the force of its deployment may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.



**WARNING**

Do not rest your arm on either front door or its internal trim. It could be injured in the event of SRS side airbag deployment.

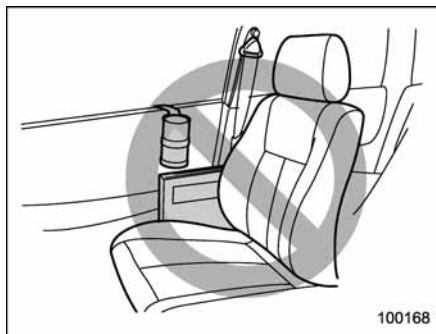




**⚠ WARNING**

- Never allow a child to kneel on the front passenger's seat facing the side window or to wrap his/her arms around the front seatback. In the event of an accident, the force of the SRS side airbag deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head or arms or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag.
- Never allow a child to kneel on the front and rear passenger's seat facing the side window. In the event of an accident, the force of the SRS curtain airbag

deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head is close to the SRS curtain airbag.

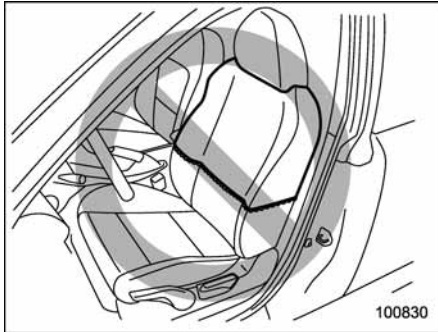


**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not attach accessories to the door trim or near either SRS side airbags and do not place objects near the SRS side airbags. In the event of the SRS side airbag deployment, they could be propelled dangerously toward the vehicle's occupants and cause injuries.
- Do not attach a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear

pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag. A hands-free microphone or other accessory in such a location could be propelled through the cabin with great force by the curtain airbag, or it could prevent correct deployment of the curtain airbag. In either case, the result could be serious injuries.

- Never hang or place coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects near the side windows. If such items are present when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could be thrown through the passenger compartment and cause serious injuries. They could also prevent proper operation of the SRS curtain airbags.

**WARNING**

**Do not put any kind of cover or clothes or other objects over either front seatback and do not attach labels or stickers to the front seat surface on or near the SRS side airbag. They could prevent proper deployment of the SRS side airbag, reducing protection available to the front seat's occupant.**

**▼ Operation****Models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags**

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The driver's and front passenger's SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags deploy independently of each other since each has its own impact sensor. Therefore, they may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy independently of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags in the steering wheel and instrument panel.

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the left and

right center pillars and rear wheel houses. Another impact sensor, which also senses impact force, is located under the rear center seat.

If one of the center pillar impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes both the SRS side airbag and curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate regardless of whether the rear wheel house impact sensor on the same side senses an impact.

If one of the rear wheel house impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes only the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate.

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye. The SRS curtain airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies

the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

When the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy, a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

**Do not touch the SRS side airbag system components around the front seat seatback with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.**

**After deployment, do not touch any part of the SRS curtain airbag system (from the front pillar to the part of the roof side over the rear seat). Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.**

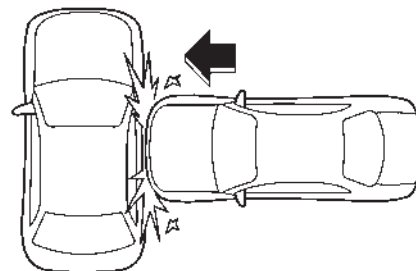
The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision. It is basically not designed to deploy in a lesser side

impact. Also, it is basically not designed to deploy in frontal or rear impacts because SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment would not help the occupant in those situations.

Each SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ **When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy?**

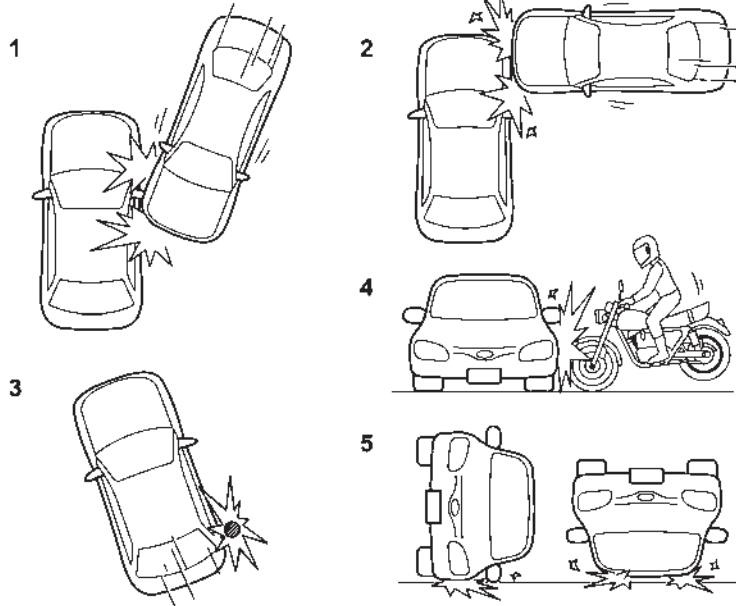


101369

A severe side impact near the front seat activates the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag.



▽ When are the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag unlikely to deploy?

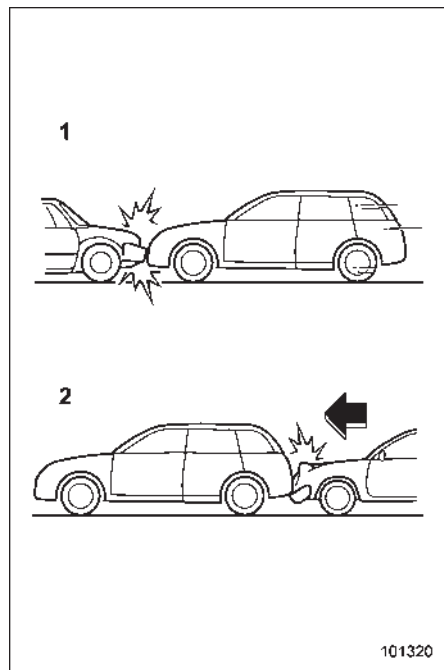


- 1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
- 2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
- 3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
- 4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
- 5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

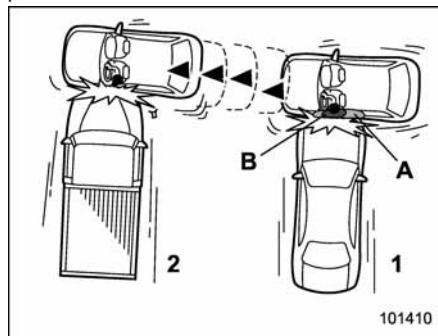
101319

## ▽ When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag not deploy?



- 1) The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).
- 2) The vehicle is struck from behind.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are basically not designed to deploy if the vehicle is involved in a frontal collision or is struck from behind. Examples of such accidents are illustrated.



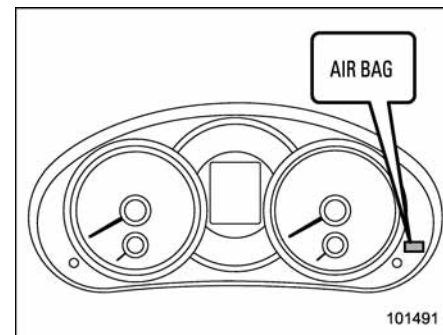
- 1) First impact
- 2) Second impact
- A) SRS curtain airbag
- B) SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

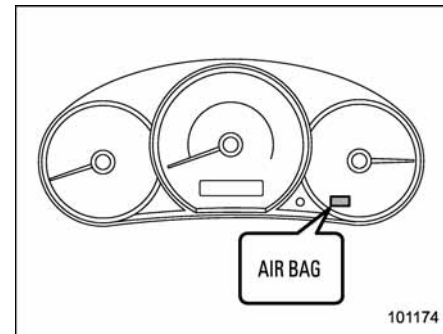
Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, once the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated

on the second.

## ■ SRS airbag system monitor



Type A and B



Type C and D

A diagnostic system continually monitors

the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including front seatbelt pretensioners) while the vehicle is being driven. The SRS airbag system warning light "AIR-BAG" will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

The following components are monitored by the indicator.

- Front sub sensor
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side
- Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
- Frontal airbag module
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Side airbag sensor (if equipped)
  - Center pillar right-hand side
  - Center pillar left-hand side
- Side airbag module (if equipped)
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Curtain airbag sensor (if equipped)
  - Rear wheel house right-hand side
  - Rear wheel house left-hand side
- Curtain airbag module (if equipped)
  - Right-hand side
  - Left-hand side

- Seatbelt pretensioner
  - Driver's side
  - Front passenger's side
- Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat – if equipped)
- Lap belt pretensioner (driver's side – Australia models only)
- All related wiring



### WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

- Flashing or flickering of the warning light
- No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position

- Continuous illumination of the warning light
- Illumination of the warning light while driving

## ■ SRS airbag system servicing



### WARNING

- When discarding an airbag module or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.
- The SRS airbag has no user-serviceable parts. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the SRS airbag system. For required servicing of the SRS airbag, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer. Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental inflation of the SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury.



### CAUTION

If you need any service or repair in areas indicated in the following list for your vehicle, we recommend that you have the work performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer. The SRS airbag control module, impact sensors and airbag modules are stored in the following areas.

- Under the center console
- On both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- Steering wheel and column and nearby areas
- Top of the dashboard on front passenger's side and nearby areas
- Each front seat and nearby area (only for models with SRS side airbags)
- Inside each center pillar
- In each roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) (only for models with SRS curtain airbags)
- Between the rear seat cushion and rear wheel house on each side
- Under the rear center seat (for

models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags)

In the event that the SRS airbag system is deployed, we recommend that you have the system replaced with genuine SUBARU parts at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

### NOTE

In the following cases, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The front part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the SRS frontal airbags did not deploy.
- The pad of the steering wheel, the cover over the front passenger's frontal airbag, or either roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

In addition, if your vehicle is equipped with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible in the following cases.

- The center pillar, rear wheel house or rear sub frame, or an area near these parts, was involved in an accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag did not deploy.

- The fabric or leather of either front seatback is cut, frayed, or otherwise damaged.
- The rear part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which no SRS airbag deployed.

### ■ Precautions against vehicle modification



### WARNING

To avoid accidental activation of the system or rendering the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury, no modifications should be made to any components or wiring of the SRS airbag system.

This includes the following modifications.

- Installation of custom steering wheels
- Attachment of additional trim materials to the dashboard
- Installation of custom seats (only for models with SRS side airbags)
- Replacement of seat fabric or leather (only for models with SRS side airbags)

- Installation of additional fabric or leather on the front seat (only for models with SRS side airbags)
- Attachment of a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag.
- Installation of additional electrical/electronic equipment such as a mobile two-way radio on or near the SRS airbag system components and/or wiring is not advisable. This could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.



### CAUTION

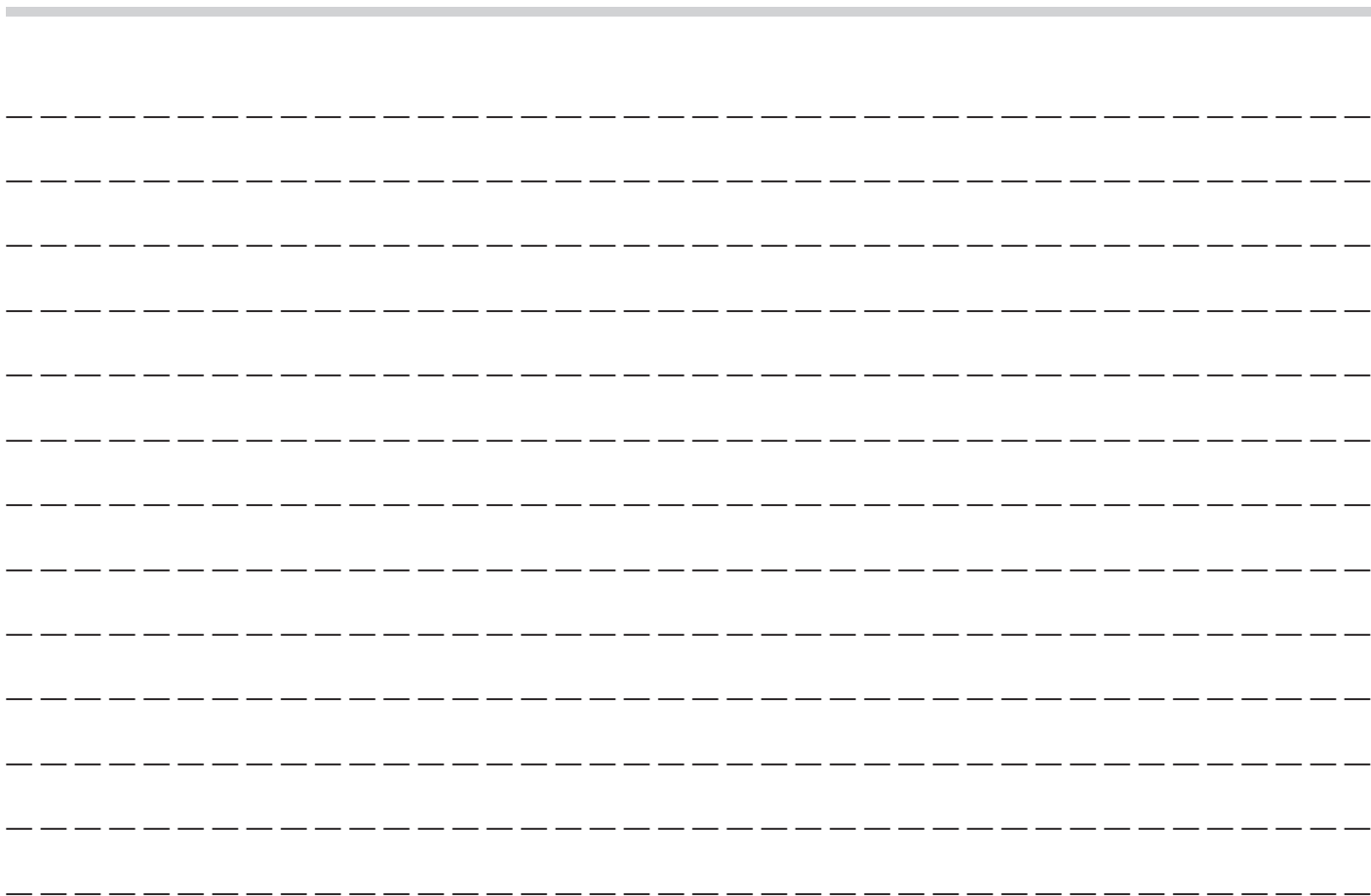
Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.

- Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or

parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.

- Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.
- Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.
- Attachment of any equipment (side steps or side sill protectors, etc.) to the side body other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags, or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags (only for models with side airbags).

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts on your vehicle.



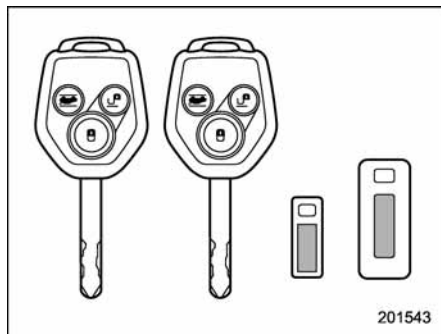
|                                                                                  |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Keys .....</b>                                                                | <b>2-2</b> |
| Key number plate .....                                                           | 2-2        |
| <b>Immobilizer .....</b>                                                         | <b>2-3</b> |
| Security ID plate .....                                                          | 2-3        |
| Immobilizer indicator light .....                                                | 2-4        |
| Key replacement .....                                                            | 2-4        |
| <b>Door locks .....</b>                                                          | <b>2-4</b> |
| Locking and unlocking from the outside with key .....                            | 2-4        |
| Locking from the outside without key .....                                       | 2-5        |
| Locking and unlocking from the inside .....                                      | 2-5        |
| Battery drainage prevention function .....                                       | 2-6        |
| <b>Power door locking switch.....</b>                                            | <b>2-7</b> |
| Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system) ..... | 2-7        |
| <b>Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) .....</b>          | <b>2-8</b> |
| Safety precautions .....                                                         | 2-8        |
| Locking and unlocking with "keyless access" entry function.....                  | 2-11       |
| Warning chimes and warning light .....                                           | 2-14       |
| Disabling keyless access function .....                                          | 2-15       |
| When access key does not operate properly .....                                  | 2-15       |
| Replacing battery of access key .....                                            | 2-15       |

|                                                                                             |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Remote keyless entry system (if equipped) .....</b>                                      | <b>2-16</b> |
| Locking and unlocking doors .....                                                           | 2-16        |
| Unlocking rear gate .....                                                                   | 2-18        |
| Replacing battery.....                                                                      | 2-18        |
| <b>Double locking system (if equipped) .....</b>                                            | <b>2-19</b> |
| To set double locking system.....                                                           | 2-19        |
| To cancel double locking system .....                                                       | 2-20        |
| In an emergency.....                                                                        | 2-20        |
| If a battery goes dead .....                                                                | 2-20        |
| To reset double locking system.....                                                         | 2-20        |
| <b>Function disabling unlocking with power door locking switch (Australia models) .....</b> | <b>2-21</b> |
| <b>Child safety locks .....</b>                                                             | <b>2-21</b> |
| <b>Windows.....</b>                                                                         | <b>2-22</b> |
| Power window operation by driver .....                                                      | 2-22        |
| Power window operation by passengers.....                                                   | 2-24        |
| Initialization of power window .....                                                        | 2-24        |
| <b>Rear gate .....</b>                                                                      | <b>2-25</b> |
| <b>Sunroof (if equipped) .....</b>                                                          | <b>2-26</b> |
| Sunroof switch .....                                                                        | 2-26        |
| Anti-entrapment function.....                                                               | 2-27        |
| Sun shade .....                                                                             | 2-27        |

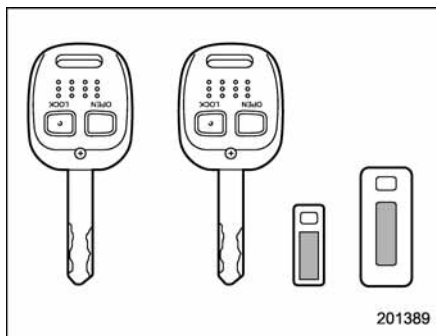
### Keys

#### NOTE

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Keyless access with push-button start system” 2-8.



Type A



Type B

Your vehicle has two or three keys, a key number plate and a security ID plate.

All keys provided for your vehicle fit all locks on your vehicle.

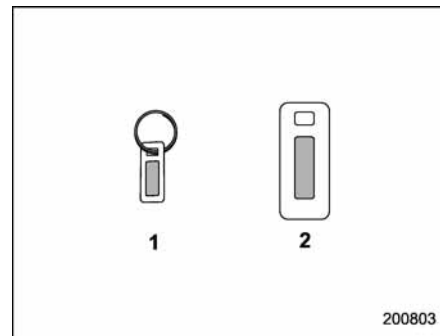
- Ignition switch
- Driver's door



#### CAUTION

**Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the “ON” position to the “Acc” or “OFF” position, thereby stopping the engine.**

### ■ Key number plate



- 1) Key number plate
- 2) Security ID plate

The key number is stamped on the key number plate attached to the key set. Write down the key number and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

For information on making replacement keys, refer to “Key replacement” 2-4.



## Immobilizer

The immobilizer system is designed to prevent an unauthorized person from starting the engine. Only keys registered with your vehicle's immobilizer system can be used to operate your vehicle. Even if an unregistered key fits into the ignition switch and can be turned to the "START" position, the engine will automatically stop after several seconds.

Each immobilizer key contains a transponder in which the key's ID code is stored. When a key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to the "ON" position, the transponder transmits the key's ID code to the immobilizer system's receiver. If the transmitted ID code matches the ID code registered in the immobilizer system, the system allows the engine to be started. Since the ID code is transmitted and acted upon almost instantly, the immobilizer system does not impede normal starting of the engine.

If the engine does not start, pull out the key once before trying again. Refer to "Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)" 3-3.

### For Europe:

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

### NOTE

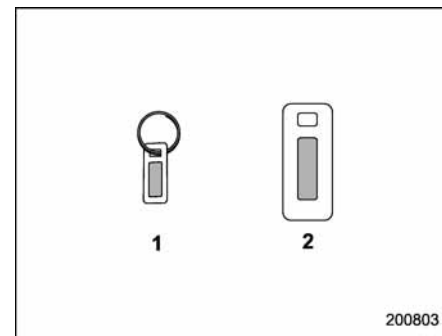
**To protect your vehicle from theft, please pay close attention to the following security precautions.**

- **Never leave your vehicle unattended with its keys inside.**
- **Before leaving your vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and lock the doors and rear gate.**
- **Do not leave spare keys or any record of your key number in the vehicle.**

### CAUTION

- **Do not place the key under direct sunlight or anywhere it may become hot.**
- **Do not get the key wet. If the key gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**

## Security ID plate



- 1) Key number plate
- 2) Security ID plate

The security ID is stamped on the security ID plate attached to the key set. Write down the security ID and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

This number is also needed for replacement or repair of the engine control module and immobilizer control module.

### ■ Immobilizer indicator light



Refer to "Immobilizer indicator light" 3-31.

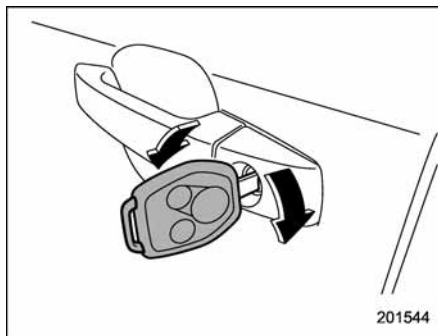
### ■ Key replacement

Your key number plate and security ID plate will be required if you ever need a replacement key made. Any new key must be registered for use with your vehicle's immobilizer system before it can be used. Up to four keys can be registered for use with one vehicle.

For security, all the keys registered with your vehicle's immobilizer system will have their ID codes erased and re-registered when a new key is made. Therefore, all of your vehicle's keys must be presented when a new key is registered. Any key that is not re-registered when a new key is made cannot be used after the other keys are re-registered. For information on replacement keys and on the registration of keys with your immobilizer system, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Door locks

### ■ Locking and unlocking from the outside with key



#### ▼ Models without double locking system

To lock the driver's door from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the rear. To unlock the door, turn the key toward the front. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

### NOTE

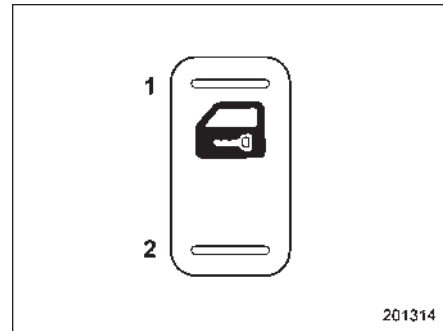
Only the driver's door can be locked from the outside using the key.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, perform the following procedure.

1. Remove the key from the ignition

switch (models without keyless access with push-button start system) or turn off the ignition switch (models with keyless access with push-button start system).

2. Close the doors including the rear gate except for the driver's door.



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

3. Push the lock side of the power door locking switch that is located on the driver's door.

4. Close the driver's door and insert the key. Turn the key rearward to lock the driver's door.

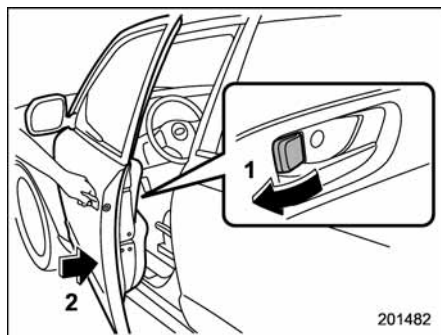
#### ▼ Models with double locking system

To lock the doors and the rear gate from the outside with the key, turn the key

toward the rear.

To unlock the doors and the rear gate, turn the key toward the front. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

## ■ Locking from the outside without key



- 1) Rotate the lock lever rearward.
- 2) Close the door while holding the handle pulled.

To lock the front door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever rearward and hold the outside door handle pulled while closing the door.

To lock the rear door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever rearward and close the door.

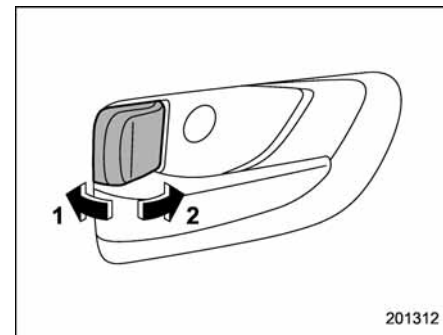
Always make sure that all doors and the

rear gate are locked before leaving your vehicle.

## NOTE

- Make sure that you do not leave the key inside the vehicle when locking the doors from the outside without the key.
- For models with the double locking system, it is not possible to place the lock lever on the driver's door in the locking position while the driver's door is open. The door lock levers function only when all the doors are securely closed and the double locking system is not set.

## ■ Locking and unlocking from the inside



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

To lock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever rearward. To unlock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever forward.

The red mark on the lock lever appears when the door is unlocked.

Pull the inside door handle to open an unlocked door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate are closed before starting to drive.

**NOTE**

If your vehicle is equipped with a double locking system and it is activated, the door will not be unlocked even when you move the door lock lever forward.

### ■ Battery drainage prevention function

If a door or the rear gate is not completely closed, the interior lights will remain illuminated as a result. However, several lights are automatically turned off by the battery drainage prevention function to prevent the battery from discharging. The following interior lights are affected by this function.

| Item                  | Switch position | Automatically turning off      |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| Map lights            | OFF*1           | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Dome light            | DOOR            | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Ignition switch light | —               | Approximately 20 minutes later |
| Door step lights      | —               | None*2                         |
| Cargo area light      | DOOR            | None*2                         |

\*1: The map lights can be controlled by the battery drainage prevention function only when the map light switches are in the OFF position and the door interlock switch is in the DOOR position. For the switch positions, refer to “Map light” 6-3.

\*2: The door step lights and the cargo area light are not affected by the battery drainage prevention function, so the lights do not turn off automatically. To turn off the lights, it is necessary that each door and the rear gate are completely closed.

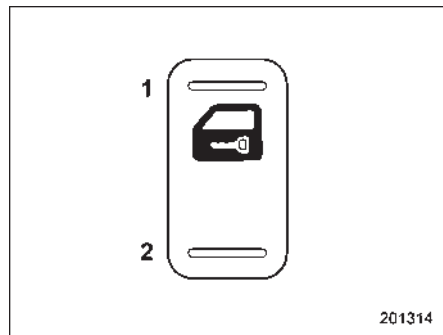
The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you would like to change the setting.

**NOTE**

- For details about the factory setting (default setting) for this function, refer to “Function settings” 26.
- When leaving the vehicle, please make sure that all doors and the rear gate are completely closed.
- For models with the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the ignition switch is in “Acc” or “ON” position.
- For models without the push-button

ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the key is in the ignition switch.

## Power door locking switch



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

All doors and the rear gate can be locked and unlocked by the power door locking switch located at the driver's side door.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, press the front side of the switch.

To unlock the doors including the rear gate, press the rear side of the switch.

### NOTE

• For models with the double locking system, pressing the rear side of the power door locking switch has no effect when the double locking system is activated.

• If your vehicle is an Australia model, after locking all doors and the rear gate using the remote transmitter, pressing the rear side of the power door locking switch has no effect.

### ■ Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)

This function prevents the doors from being locked with the key still in the ignition switch.

#### ▼ Behavior with key lock-in prevention function operational

With the driver's door open, the doors are automatically kept unlocked even if the front side of the power door locking switch is pressed.

#### ▼ Behavior with key lock-in prevention function non-operational

- If the lock lever is turned to the rear ("LOCK") position with the driver's door open and the driver's door is then closed, the driver's door is locked.
- If the spare key is used to lock the driver's door from the outside of the vehicle, the door is locked.

This function's operational/non-operational setting can be changed.

### Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The operational/non-operational setting can be changed using the monitor. For details, please refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

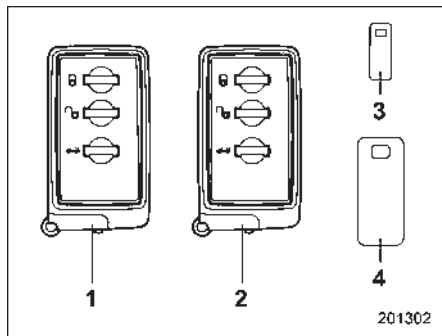
### Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

### NOTE

When leaving the vehicle, make sure that you are holding the key before locking the doors.

## Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



- 1) Access key (main)
- 2) Access key (sub)
- 3) Key number plate
- 4) Security ID plate

The vehicle has two access keys, a key number plate and a security ID plate.

Keyless access with push-button start system allows the following functions by carrying the access key.

- Locking and unlocking of the doors and rear gate
- Starting and stopping the engine

Locking and unlocking by the remote

keyless entry system can also be controlled with the buttons on the access key. For the engine starting procedure, refer to “Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)” 7-8.

### For Europe:

- This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in chapter 13.
- Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14ACA/13BZZ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

## ■ Safety precautions



### WARNING

**If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, stay at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from the transmitting antennas installed on the vehicle.**

**The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and im-**

**planted defibrillators.**

**If you wear electric medical equipment other than an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, before using the keyless access function, refer to “Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system” mentioned later, and contact the electric medical equipment manufacturer for more information. The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of the electric medical equipment.**

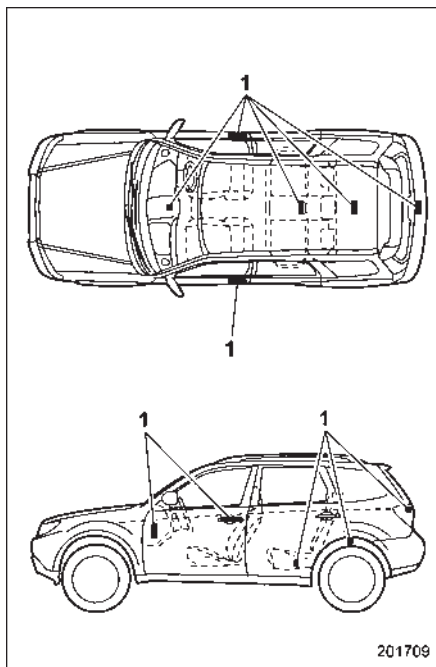
- The operational/non-operational setting for the keyless access function can be changed. For the setting procedure, refer to “Disabling keyless access function” 2-15. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For detailed information about the operation method for the push-button ignition switch while the keyless access functions is switched to the non-operational mode, refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate

properly” 9-15.

“Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system”

- The keyless access with push-button start system uses radio waves of the following frequency\* in addition to the radio waves used for the remote keyless entry system. The radio waves are periodically output from the antennas installed on the vehicle as shown in the following illustrations.

\* Radio frequency: 134 kHz



201709

1) Antenna



### CAUTION

- The keyless access with push-button start system uses weak radio waves. The status of the access key and the environmental conditions may interfere with the communication between the access key and the vehicle under the following conditions, and it may not be possible to lock or unlock the doors or start the engine.
  - When operating near a facility where strong radio waves are transmitted, such as a broadcast station and power transmission lines
  - When products that transmit radio waves are used, such as an access key or a remote transmitter key of another vehicle
  - When carrying more than one access key
  - When the access key is placed near wireless communication equipment such as a cell phone
  - When the access key is placed near a metallic object

– CONTINUED –

- When metallic accessories are attached to the access key
- When carrying the access key with electronic appliances such as a laptop computer
- When the battery of the access key is discharged
- Never leave or store the access key inside the vehicle (e.g., on the instrumental panel, inside the glove box, on the seat, in the door pocket or at the corner of the cargo area) or within 2 m (6.6 ft) around the vehicle (e.g., in the garage). Otherwise, the access key may be locked inside the vehicle, or the battery may discharge rapidly. Note that the push-button ignition switch may not turn on in some cases depending on the location of the access key.
- The access key contains electronic components. Observe the following points to prevent malfunctions.
  - Although you can replace the battery of the access key yourself, it is recommended that the battery be replaced by a SUBARU dealer to avoid the

- risk of damage at the time of replacement.
- Do not get the access key wet. If the access key gets wet, wipe it immediately and let it dry completely.
- Do not apply strong impacts to the access key.
- Keep the access key away from magnetic sources.
- Never leave the access key in direct sunlight or anywhere that may become hot, such as on the dashboard. It may damage the battery or cause circuit malfunctions.
- Do not wash the access key in an ultrasonic washer.
- Do not leave the access key in humid or dusty locations. Doing so may cause malfunctions.
- Do not leave the access key near personal computers or home electric appliances. Doing so may cause the access key to malfunction, resulting in battery discharge.
- If the access key is dropped, the integrated mechanical key inside

may become loose. Be careful not to lose the mechanical key.

- When you carry the access key on an airplane, do not press the button of the access key while in the airplane. When any button of the access key is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the access key in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the access key from being pressed.

## NOTE

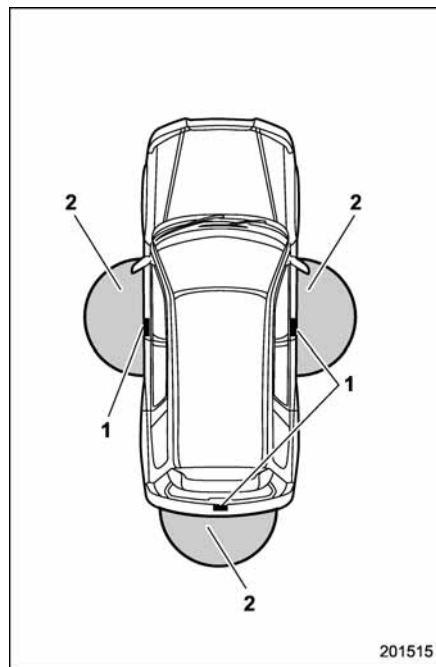
- The keyless access functions can be disabled. For the setting procedure, refer to “Disabling keyless access function” 2-15. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- We recommend that you disable the keyless access functions under the following conditions.
  - When the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time
  - When the keyless access functions are not going to be used



- When the access key needs to be stored inside or near the vehicle
- The access key is always communicating with the vehicle and is continuously using the battery. Although the life of the battery varies depending on the operating conditions, it is approximately 1 to 2 years. If the battery becomes fully discharged, replace it with a new one.
- If an access key is lost, it is recommended that the access key be reregistered. For reregistration of an access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For a spare access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- Up to 7 access keys can be registered for one vehicle.
- Carefully store the key number plate and security ID plate supplied with the access key. They are necessary for vehicle repair and additional registration of access keys.
- Do not leave the access key in the storage spaces inside the vehicle, such as the door pocket, dashboard and the corner of the cargo area. Vibrations may damage the key or turn on the switch, possibly resulting in a lockout.

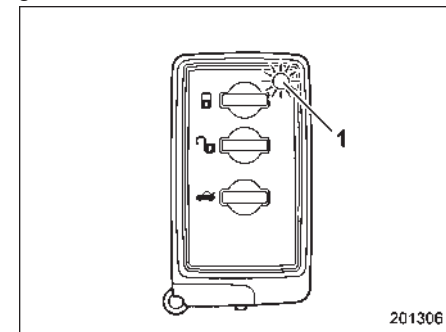
## ■ Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function

### ▼ Operating ranges



- 1) Antenna
- 2) Operating range

The operating ranges of the door and rear gate locking/unlocking functions are approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the respective door handles and the rear gate ornament.



- 1) LED indicator

When the access key is within either of the operating ranges of the front doors, the LED indicator on the access key flashes. When the keyless access functions are disabled, the LED indicator does not flash unless a button on the access key is pressed.

## NOTE

- After the push-button ignition switch is turned off, perform the operation of

– CONTINUED –

locking the doors and rear gate. It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the door lock button, rear lock button or access key button when the push-button ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position. Refer to "Switching power" 3-6.

- Locking by the door lock button can be operated only by the door lock button in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- Unlocking by the door handle can be operated only by the door handle in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- Locking and unlocking by the door lock button and the door handle cannot be operated for a short period of time (approximately less than 1 second) after locking or unlocking to prevent malfunctions.
- When pressing the door lock button too quickly, locking may not have been completed. After locking the doors, it is recommended to pull the REAR door handles to confirm that the doors have been locked.
- If the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, the keyless access functions may not operate properly. If they do not operate properly, restart the operation from further away.
- If the access key is placed near the

ground or in an elevated location from the ground, even if it is in the indicated operating range, the keyless access functions may not operate properly.

- When the access key is within the operating range, it is possible for anyone, even someone who is not carrying the access key, to operate the keyless access function. Note that locking and unlocking can be operated only by the door handle, door lock button, rear gate opener button or rear lock button in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- The keyless access functions may not operate properly depending on the status of the access key and the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, perform the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking" 9-16.
- It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the access key is inside the vehicle. However, depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions, the access key may be locked inside the vehicle. Before locking, make sure that you have the access key.
- When the battery of the access key is discharged, or when operating it in a location with strong radio waves or

noise (e.g., near a radio tower, power plant, broadcast station or an area where wireless equipment is used), or while talking on a cell phone, the operating ranges may be reduced, or the keyless access functions may not operate.

In such a case, perform the procedure described in "Locking and unlocking" 9-16.

- It is not possible to lock the doors when one of the doors is open. Close all of the doors including the rear gate and lock the doors.
- When an access key is in the operating range, if the door handle becomes wet due to a large amount of water while washing the vehicle or during heavy rain, the door lock may be released.
- If the door handle is gripped with a gloved hand, the door lock may not be released.

#### ▼ How to use keyless access functions

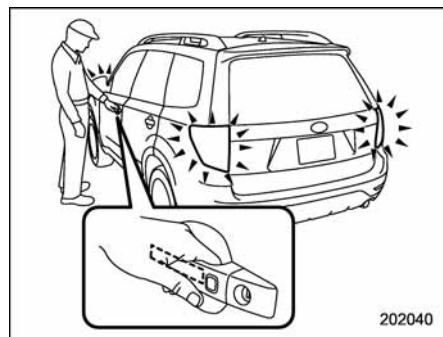
### NOTE

- Within 3 seconds after locking the doors and the rear gate by pressing the door lock button or the rear lock button, it is not possible to unlock the doors and/or the rear gate by gripping

the door handle or by pressing the rear gate opener button.

- If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, the doors and the rear gate cannot be locked.
- When locking, be sure to carry the access key to prevent locking the access key in the vehicle.

#### ▽ Unlocking



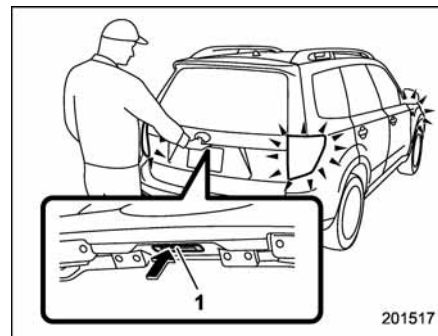
Carry the access key, and grip the door handle.

**Models without double locking system:**  
All doors including the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

**Models with double locking system:**  
Only the door for which the door handle is gripped will be unlocked. Also, the hazard

warning flashers will flash twice.

#### ▽ Opening rear gate



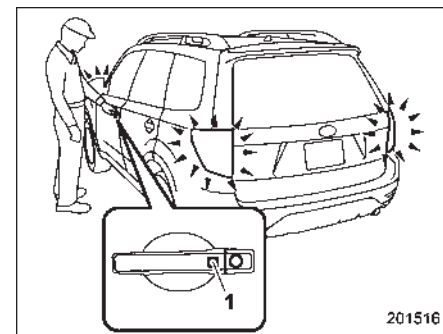
##### 1) Rear gate opener button

Carry the access key, and press the rear gate opener button.

**Models without double locking system:**  
The rear gate and all doors will be unlocked, and the rear gate will be opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

**Models with double locking system:**  
Only the rear gate will be unlocked and opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

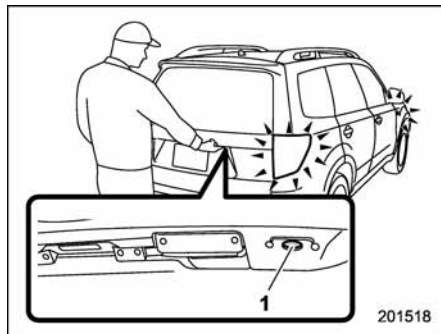
#### ▽ Locking with the door lock button



##### 1) Door lock button

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and press the door lock button on the door handle. All doors including the rear gate will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

### ▽ Locking with the rear lock button



1) Rear lock button

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and press the rear lock button. The rear gate and all doors will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

### ▼ Door unlock selection function (except models with double locking system)

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors.

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

**Operational:** Only the door for which the door handle is gripped will be unlocked.

**Non-operational:** All doors and the rear gate are unlocked.

For details about the factory setting (default setting), refer to "Function settings" 26. For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

### ▼ Power saving function

The keyless access function will be disabled in the following cases to protect the access key battery and the vehicle battery.

- When the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system have not been used for 2 weeks or longer while all doors are locked
- When the access key has been left in the operating range for 10 minutes or longer while all doors are locked

### ▽ Recovery from power saving mode

When one of the following is operated, the keyless access function will be recovered.

- Unlock by gripping the door handle or pressing the rear gate opener button on the rear gate
- Lock or unlock by the remote keyless entry system
- Lock or unlock by the mechanical key

### ▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

If any of the doors or the rear gate was not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, they will be automatically locked again.

The function's operational/non-operational setting and the time until automatic locking takes place can be changed.

#### • Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The setting can be changed on the monitor screen. For details, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

#### • Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

### ■ Warning chimes and warning light

The keyless access function sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

When the warning chime sounds and/or

the warning light flashes, take the appropriate action. For details, refer to "Warning chimes and warning light of keyless access with push-button start system" 9-24.

## NOTE

**For China models, the outside warning chime will not sound.**

## ■ Disabling keyless access function

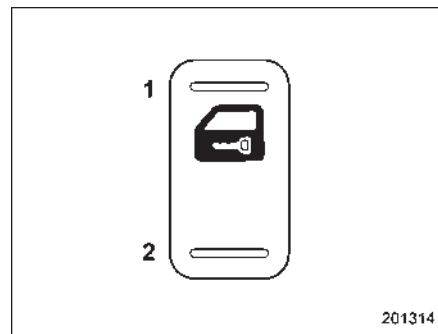
When the vehicle is not going to be used for a long time, or when you choose not to use the keyless access function, the keyless access function can be disabled.

## NOTE

- The locking and unlocking function by the remote keyless entry system is not disabled.
- The setting can also be changed at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- To start the engine while the functions are disabled, perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" 9-16.

## ▼ Disabling functions

1. Sit in the driver's seat, and close the door.



- 1) Lock
  - 2) Unlock
2. Push the unlock side of the power door locking switch.
  3. Within 5 seconds after step 2 is performed, open the driver's door.
  4. Within 5 seconds after step 3 is performed, push the unlock side of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.
  5. Within 30 seconds after step 4 is performed, close and open the driver's door twice.
  6. Within 30 seconds after step 5 is performed, push the unlock side of the

power door locking switch twice while the door is open.

7. Within 30 seconds after step 6 is performed, close and open the driver's door once.

8. Within 5 seconds after step 7 is performed, close the door. A chirp sound will be heard twice, and the functions are disabled.

## NOTE

**In steps 4 and 6, push the power door locking switch slowly. If the switch is pushed quickly, the functions may not be disabled.**

## ▼ Enabling functions

Perform the procedure to disable the functions again. A chirp sound will be heard once, and the functions are enabled.

## ■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" 9-15.

## ■ Replacing battery of access key

Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" 11-59.

## Remote keyless entry system (if equipped)

By use of the remote transmitter, you can lock or unlock all doors and the rear gate from a distance within approximately 1.0 m (3.2 ft) of the vehicle. The operable distance varies depending on the environmental conditions. The system's operable distance will be shorter in areas near a facility or electronic equipment emitting strong radio waves such as a power plant, broadcast station, TV tower, or remote controller of home electronic appliances. The trade, model and supplier's names of this device are as follows.

- Equipment's trade name: SUBARU
- Equipment's model name:
  - TF001 (left-hand drive models)
  - ASREU55 (right-hand drive models)
- Supplier's name: Calsonic Kansei

### For Europe:

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.



### CAUTION

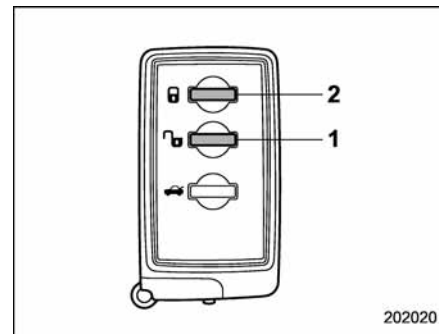
- Do not expose the remote transmitter to severe shocks, such as those experienced as a result of dropping or throwing.
- Do not take the remote transmitter apart except when replacing the battery.
- Do not get the remote transmitter wet. If it gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.
- When you carry the remote transmitter on an airplane, do not press the button of the remote transmitter while in the airplane. When any button of the remote transmitter is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the remote transmitter in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the remote transmitter from being pressed.

### NOTE

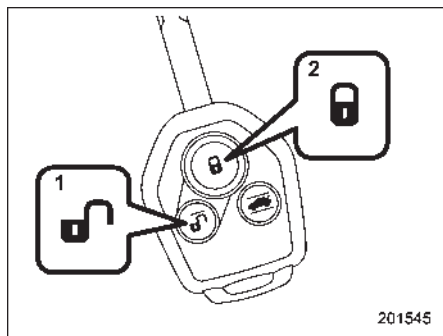
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are locked.
- If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, this function does not operate.

- For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, when the “” button on the access key is pressed while the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, unlocking by the keyless access functions may not work. In such a case, the functions will recover by unlocking using the remote keyless entry system.

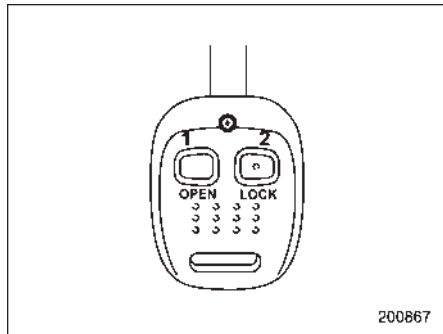
## ■ Locking and unlocking doors



Access key



Type A transmitter



Type B transmitter

- 1) Unlock button
- 2) Lock button

### ▼ Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the access key/transmitter near the vehicle.

#### Models with double locking system:

1. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. If you press the "OPEN" button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

#### Models without double locking system:

All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

### ▼ Locking

Pressing the lock button on the access key/transmitter locks all doors and the rear gate. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once. When leaving the vehicle, pull the door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

### NOTE

- The remote keyless entry system does not operate when the key is inserted in the ignition switch or when any of the doors or the rear gate is not fully closed.
- If any of the doors (or the rear gate)

is not fully closed, the turn signal lights will flash five times to alert you that the doors (or the rear gate) are not properly closed.

- For models with "keyless access with push-button start system", the front door may be unlocked if you grip the front door handle while an access key is in the operating range of the door unlock function. Pull the rear door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

### ▼ Door unlock selection function (except models with double locking system)

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors.

### ▽ Unlocking doors with the unlock function

1. With all doors closed, pressing the unlock button causes only the driver's door to unlock.
2. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors including the rear gate will be unlocked.

The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

**Operational:** Only the driver's door is unlocked.

**Non-operational:** All doors including the rear gate are unlocked.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

### ▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

When the unlock button is pressed, all of the doors and the rear gate are automatically locked 30 seconds later unless any one of the four doors or the rear gate is opened during that period. The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period (the time period after which locking takes place) can be changed.

### Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period can be changed using the monitor. For details, please refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.

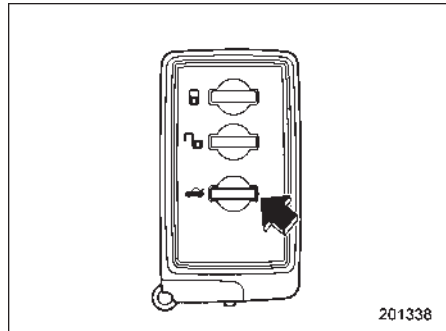
### Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The automatic locking function can be canceled by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest

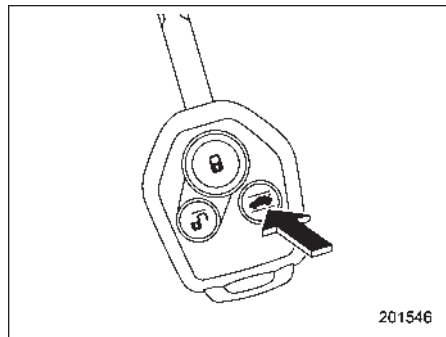
SUBARU dealer for details.

## ■ Unlocking rear gate

### ▼ Access key and type A transmitter



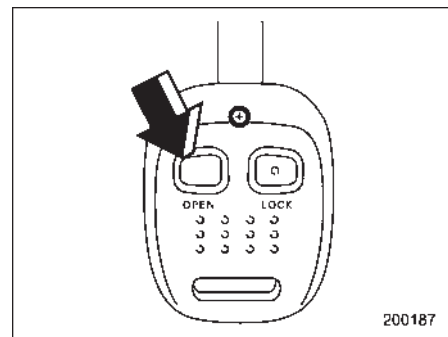
Access key



Type A transmitter

Pressing the “” button unlocks the rear gate. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

### ▼ Type B transmitter



1. Press the “OPEN” button on the key near the vehicle. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. Press the “OPEN” button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

## ■ Replacing battery

Refer to “Replacing battery”  11-59.



## Double locking system (if equipped)

The double locking system is an anti-theft system. It operates when the doors are locked using the key or remote transmitter. While this system is operating, the power door locking switch and door lock levers inside the cabin cannot be used to unlock the doors.



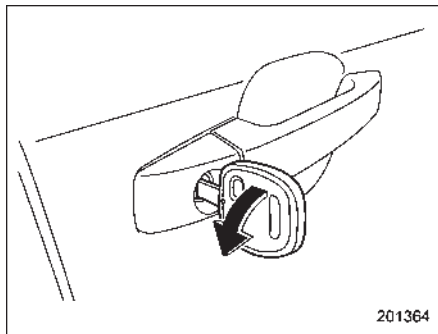
### WARNING

**Never set the double locking system while passengers are inside the vehicle. With the system set, people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. The result could be serious injuries or death.**

## ■ To set double locking system

### ▼ Setting system using key

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.



3. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the locking direction to set the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

### ▼ Setting system using remote transmitter

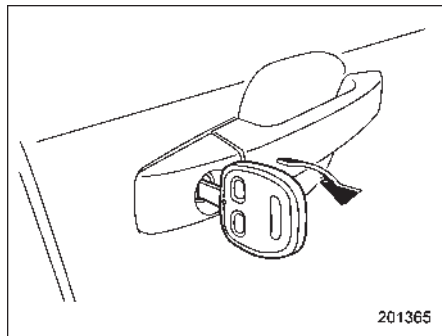
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.
3. Press the "G" or "LOCK" button on the access key/transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash once and the double locking system will be set. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

### NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to set the double locking system by pressing the door lock button.

## ■ To cancel double locking system

### ▼ Canceling system using key



201365

Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the unlocking direction to cancel the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

### ▼ Canceling system using remote transmitter

Press the “” or “OPEN” button on the access key/transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the double locking system will be canceled. The driver's door will be unlocked.

### NOTE

**For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to cancel the double locking system by gripping the door handle.**

### ■ In an emergency

If you become trapped inside the vehicle owing to an accident or some other unexpected circumstance, unlock the doors using one of the following methods:

- Remove the key from the ignition switch, then press the “” or “OPEN” button on the access key/remote transmitter.
- Insert the key into the ignition switch and turn it to the “ON” position.
- Open the driver's window, then insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.
- Break one of the windows and climb out through the window opening.
- Open the rear gate from inside the

cargo area. Refer to “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened”  9-17.

### ■ If a battery goes dead

If the double locking system cannot be canceled because the vehicle battery or transmitter battery has gone dead or because of a blown fuse or other electrical problem, insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

### ■ To reset double locking system

The double locking system must be reset when the vehicle battery has been temporarily disconnected for replacement or charging. To reset the system, turn the key once in the unlocking direction or press the “” or “OPEN” button on the access key/transmitter. The double locking system will then operate normally.

### NOTE

**For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to reset the double locking system by gripping the door handle.**

## Function disabling unlocking with power door locking switch (Australia models)

### **WARNING**

Never lock the doors using the remote keyless entry system while passengers are inside the vehicle. Doing so activates the function that disables unlocking with the power door locking switch and so people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. This could result in serious injury or death.

Australia models are fitted with an anti-theft function that disables door unlocking with the power door locking switch. This function is activated in the following situations.

- The doors are locked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to “Locking and unlocking doors” 2-16.
- The automatic locking function is in operation. Refer to “Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)” 2-18.

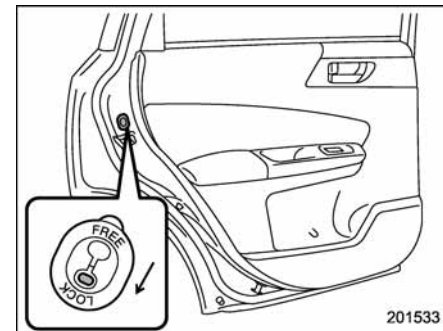
This function is canceled when the doors

are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system or the ignition switch is turned to “ON”.

### **NOTE**

- Even while this function is activated, doors can be unlocked using their lock levers, refer to “Locking and unlocking from the inside” 2-5.
- This function is not activated when the doors are locked using the key or power door locking switch.

## Child safety locks



Each rear door has a child safety lock that prevents the door from being opened even if the inside door handle is pulled.

When the child safety lock lever is in the “LOCK” position, the door cannot be opened from inside regardless of the position of the inner door handle lock lever. The door can only be opened from the outside.



### WARNING

Always turn the child safety locks to the “LOCK” position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out.

## Windows



### WARNING

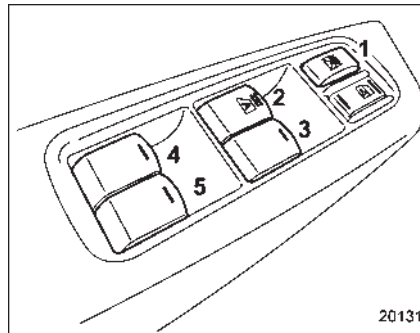
To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, you must conform to the following instructions without exception.

- When operating the power windows, be extremely careful to prevent anyone’s fingers, arms, neck or head from being caught in the window.
- Always lock the passengers’ windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window.

The power windows operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

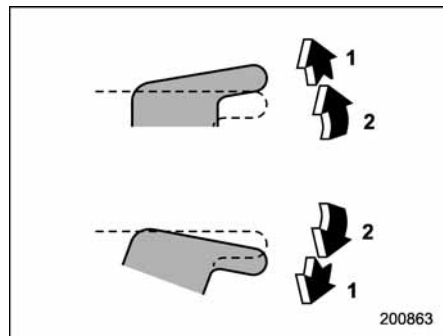
## ■ Power window operation by driver

### ▼ Driver’s side power window switches



- 1) Lock switch
- 2) For driver's window (with one-touch auto up and down feature)
- 3) For front passenger's window
- 4) For rear left window
- 5) For rear right window

All door windows can be controlled by the power window switch cluster at the driver side door.

**▼ Operating the driver's window**

- 1) Automatically open/close
- 2) Open/close

**To open:**

Push the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto down feature that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Push the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

**To close:**

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto up feature that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, push the switch down lightly.

**NOTE**

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" 2-24.

**▼ Anti-entrapment function**
 **CAUTION**

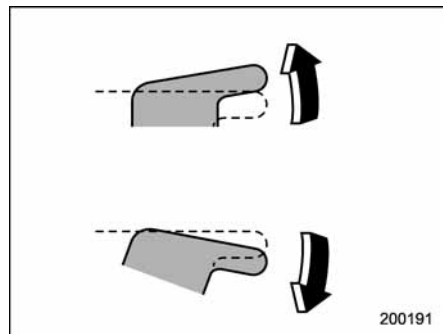
- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if an object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

**NOTE**

- **If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.**
- **The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the anti-entrapment function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the anti-entrapment function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" 2-24.**

While closing automatically, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

### ▼ Operating the passengers' windows



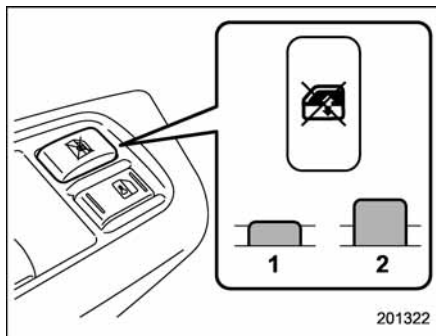
#### To open:

Push the appropriate switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

#### To close:

Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

### ▼ Locking the passengers' windows



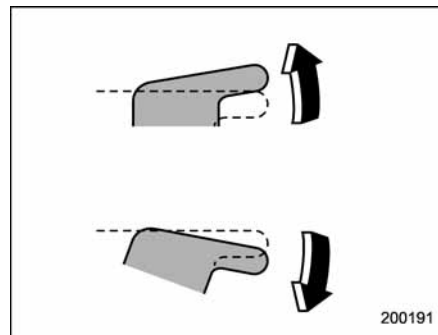
- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

Push the lock switch. When the lock switch is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be opened or closed.

Press the switch again to cancel the passengers' window locking.

### ■ Power window operation by passengers

Each passenger window can be controlled by the power window switch located on the door.



#### To open:

Push the switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

#### To close:

Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

When the lock switch on the power window switch cluster, located on the driver's side door, is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be operated with the passengers' switches.

### ■ Initialization of power window

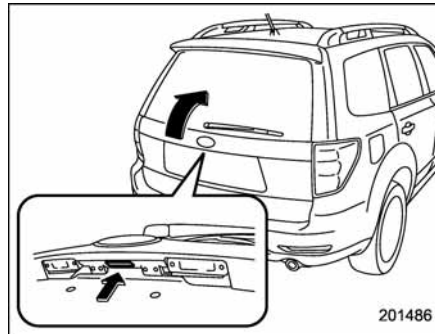
If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the following functions are deactivated.

- One-touch auto up/down function
- Anti-entrapment function

Initialize the power window using the following procedure to reactivate these functions.

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
3. Open the driver's side window halfway by pushing down the power window switch.
4. Pull up the power window switch and close the window completely. Continue pulling up the switch for approximately 1 second after the window is closed completely.

## Rear gate

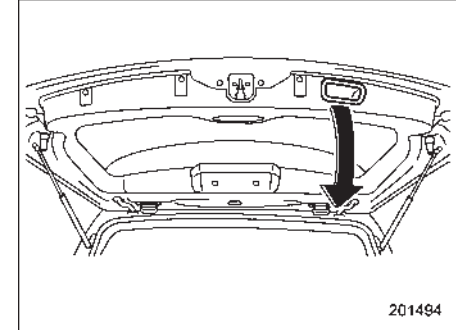


The rear gate can be locked and unlocked using any of the following systems.

- Power door locking switch: Refer to "Power door locking switch" 2-7.
- Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped): Refer to "Keyless access with push-button start system" 2-8.
- Remote keyless entry system (if equipped): Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" 2-16.
- Locking and unlocking from the outside with the key (models with double locking system): Refer to "Double locking system" 2-19.

### To open:

First unlock the rear gate lock then push the rear gate opener button.



### To close:

Lower the rear gate slowly and push down firmly until the latch engages. The rear gate can be lowered easily if you pull down on the inside handle as shown in the illustration.



### WARNING

- To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the rear gate closed while driving.
- Do not attempt to shut the rear gate while holding the recessed grip. Also avoid closing the rear

gate by pulling on the recessed grip from inside the cargo area. There is a danger of your hand being caught and injured.



### CAUTION

- Do not jam a plastic bag in or place cellophane tape on the rear gate stays or scratch the stays while loading or unloading cargo. That could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.
- Be careful not to hit your head or face on the rear gate when opening or closing the rear gate and when loading or unloading cargo.

### NOTE

If the rear gate cannot be unlocked due to a discharged vehicle battery, a malfunction in the door locking/unlocking system or other causes, you can unlock it by manually operating the rear gate lock release lever. For the procedure, refer to “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” 9-17.

## Sunroof (if equipped)



### WARNING

Never let anyone's hands, arms, head or any objects protrude from the sunroof. A person could be seriously injured if the vehicle stops suddenly or turns sharply or if the vehicle is involved in an accident.

To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, you must conform to the following instructions without exception.

- Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no one's hands, arms, head or other objects will be accidentally caught in the sunroof.
- Before leaving the vehicle, always turn the ignition switch to the “OFF” position and carry the access key (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) or carry the ignition key (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”) for safety. Never allow unattended children to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions could

result in injury to children operating the sunroof.

- Never try to check the anti-entrapment function by deliberately placing part of your body in the sunroof.



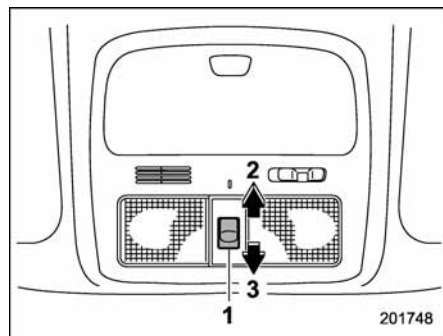
### CAUTION

- Do not sit on the edge of the open sunroof.
- Do not operate the sunroof if falling snow or extremely cold conditions have caused it to freeze shut.

## ■ Sunroof switch

The sunroof operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.





- 1) Open/close switch
- 2) Open
- 3) Close

### To open the sunroof:

Pull the switch to the open side and quickly release it to open the sunroof. The sun shade will also be opened together with the sunroof. The sunroof will stop at a position 50 cm (20 in) away from the fully closed position. Pull the switch again to open the sunroof completely.

### To close the sunroof:

Push the switch to the close side then quickly release it to close the sunroof. The sunroof will stop at a position 20 cm (8 in) away from the fully closed position. Push the switch again to close the sunroof completely.

To stop the sunroof at a desired position, momentarily push or pull the switch.

After washing the vehicle or after it rains, wipe away water on the roof prior to opening the sunroof to prevent drops of water from falling into the passenger compartment.

### ■ Anti-entrapment function

When the sunroof senses a substantial enough object trapped between its glass and the vehicle's roof during closure, it automatically moves back by 15 cm (6 in) from that point and then stops. The anti-entrapment function may also be activated by a strong shock on the sunroof even when there is nothing trapped.



### CAUTION

**Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**

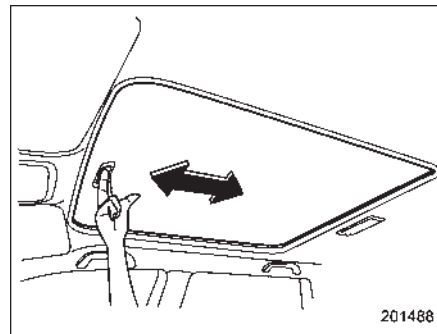
### NOTE

- **For the sake of safety, it is recommended that you avoid driving with the sunroof fully opened.**
- **Driving with the sunroof fully open can cause an annoying sound to generate at high speeds. If such a condi-**

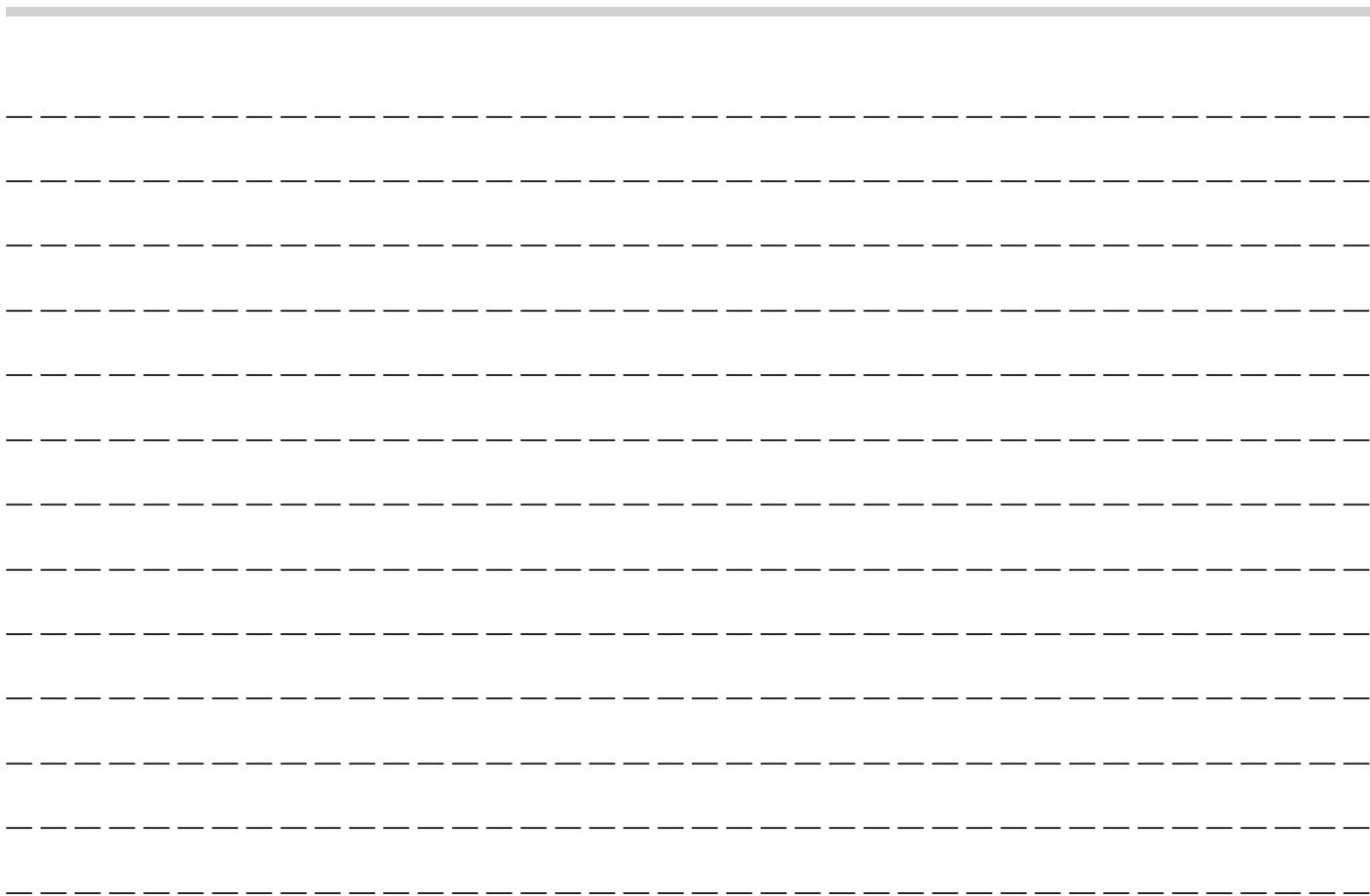
**tion has been encountered, use the sunroof at the initial stop position of 50 cm (20 in) away from the fully closed position.**

- **If the sunroof cannot be closed through switch operation because of system failure, it can be closed manually using a hex-head wrench. For the procedure, refer to "Sunroof – if the sunroof cannot be closed" 9-18.**

### ■ Sun shade



The sun shade can be slid forward or backward by hand while the sunroof is closed. If the sunroof is opened, the sun shade also moves back.

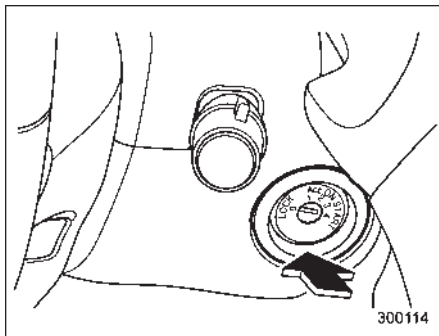


|                                                                                                 |             |                                                                                                                 |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Ignition switch (models without push-button start system).....</b>                           | <b>3-3</b>  | <b>SRS airbag system warning light.....</b>                                                                     | <b>3-17</b> |
| LOCK.....                                                                                       | 3-3         | Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light) .....                                                           | 3-17        |
| Acc.....                                                                                        | 3-4         | Coolant temperature low indicator light (if equipped)/Coolant temperature high warning light (if equipped)..... | 3-18        |
| ON.....                                                                                         | 3-4         | Charge warning light.....                                                                                       | 3-19        |
| START .....                                                                                     | 3-4         | Oil pressure warning light.....                                                                                 | 3-19        |
| Key reminder chime (if equipped) .....                                                          | 3-4         | AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models).....                                                                      | 3-20        |
| Ignition switch light.....                                                                      | 3-5         | Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped) .....                                             | 3-20        |
| <b>Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system) .....</b>                 | <b>3-5</b>  | ABS warning light.....                                                                                          | 3-20        |
| Safety precautions .....                                                                        | 3-5         | Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light.....                        | 3-21        |
| Operating range for push-button start system .....                                              | 3-5         | Brake system warning light.....                                                                                 | 3-22        |
| Switching power .....                                                                           | 3-6         | Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models) .....                                                          | 3-23        |
| When access key does not operate properly .....                                                 | 3-7         | Low fuel warning light .....                                                                                    | 3-23        |
| <b>Hazard warning flasher.....</b>                                                              | <b>3-7</b>  | Hill start assist warning light (MT models) .....                                                               | 3-23        |
| <b>Meters and gauges.....</b>                                                                   | <b>3-7</b>  | Door open warning light .....                                                                                   | 3-24        |
| Combination meter illumination .....                                                            | 3-7         | All-Wheel Drive warning light (AT models) .....                                                                 | 3-24        |
| Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch..... | 3-8         | Power steering warning light (if equipped).....                                                                 | 3-24        |
| Meter needles/gauge illumination setting (models with type A and B combination meter) .....     | 3-9         | Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights).....                                | 3-24        |
| Speedometer.....                                                                                | 3-10        | Warning chimes and warning light of keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped) .....            | 3-24        |
| Odometer/Trip meter.....                                                                        | 3-10        | Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light .....                                                        | 3-31        |
| Tachometer .....                                                                                | 3-12        | Immobilizer indicator light.....                                                                                | 3-31        |
| Fuel gauge.....                                                                                 | 3-12        | SPORT mode indicator light (AT models).....                                                                     | 3-31        |
| Temperature gauge (if equipped).....                                                            | 3-13        | Select lever and gear position indicator (AT models) .....                                                      | 3-31        |
| ECO gauge (if equipped) .....                                                                   | 3-14        |                                                                                                                 |             |
| <b>Warning and indicator lights .....</b>                                                       | <b>3-14</b> |                                                                                                                 |             |
| Seatbelt warning light and chime (if equipped).....                                             | 3-15        |                                                                                                                 |             |

|                                                                      |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| LO position indicator light (dual range MT models).....              | 3-32 |
| Turn signal indicator lights .....                                   | 3-32 |
| High beam indicator light .....                                      | 3-32 |
| Cruise control indicator light (if equipped) .....                   | 3-32 |
| Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped).....                | 3-32 |
| Headlight indicator light .....                                      | 3-32 |
| Front fog light indicator light (if equipped) .....                  | 3-32 |
| Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped) .....                   | 3-32 |
| Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models).....               | 3-32 |
| Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models) ..... | 3-33 |
| Clock .....                                                          | 3-34 |
| Information display .....                                            | 3-34 |
| Outside temperature indicator .....                                  | 3-35 |
| Current fuel consumption .....                                       | 3-36 |
| Average fuel consumption .....                                       | 3-36 |
| To turn off fuel consumption indicator display .....                 | 3-36 |
| Light control switch .....                                           | 3-37 |
| Headlights.....                                                      | 3-37 |
| High/low beam change (dimmer).....                                   | 3-38 |

|                                                                                  |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Headlight flasher .....                                                          | 3-38 |
| Turn signal lever.....                                                           | 3-38 |
| Illumination brightness control.....                                             | 3-39 |
| Headlight beam leveler (if equipped) .....                                       | 3-40 |
| Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights).....               | 3-40 |
| Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights, if equipped) ..... | 3-40 |
| Fog light switch .....                                                           | 3-42 |
| Front fog light switch (if equipped) .....                                       | 3-42 |
| Rear fog light switch (if equipped).....                                         | 3-42 |
| Wiper and washer.....                                                            | 3-44 |
| Windshield wiper and washer switches .....                                       | 3-45 |
| Rear window wiper and washer switch .....                                        | 3-46 |
| Headlight washer (if equipped).....                                              | 3-47 |
| Mirrors .....                                                                    | 3-48 |
| Inside mirror.....                                                               | 3-48 |
| Outside mirrors .....                                                            | 3-48 |
| Defogger and deicer.....                                                         | 3-50 |
| Tilt/telescopic steering wheel .....                                             | 3-52 |
| Horn .....                                                                       | 3-52 |

## Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK, Acc, ON and START.



### CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the "ON" position to the "Acc" or "LOCK" position, thereby stopping the engine.

## NOTE

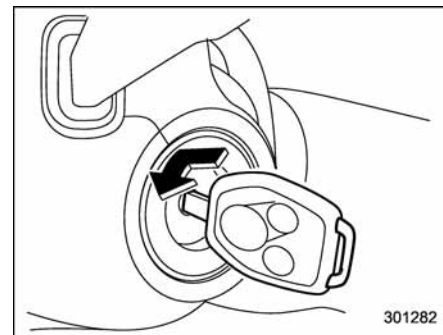
- Keep the ignition switch in the "LOCK" position when the engine is not running.
- Using electrical accessories for a long time with the ignition switch in the "ON" or "Acc" position can cause the battery to go dead.
- If the ignition switch will not move from the "LOCK" position to the "Acc" position, turn the steering wheel slightly to the left and right as you turn the ignition switch.

## LOCK

The key can be inserted or removed only when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK" position.

When you remove the key, note the following feature.

**For AT models**, the key can be turned from the "Acc" position to the "LOCK" position only when the select lever is in the "P" position.



**For MT models**, the key can be turned from the "Acc" position to the "LOCK" position only when the key is pushed in while turning it.

If turning the key is difficult, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right and left as you turn the key.

The ignition switch will lock the steering wheel when you remove the key.



### WARNING

- Never turn the ignition switch to "LOCK" while the vehicle is being driven or towed because that will lock the steering wheel, preventing steering control. And when the engine is turned off, it takes a much greater effort than

usual to steer.

- Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child or others. Children could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.

## ■ Acc

In this position the electrical accessories (radio, cigarette lighter, etc.) can be used.

## ■ ON

This is the normal operating position after the engine is started.

## ■ START

The engine is started in this position. The starter cranks the engine to start it. When the key is released (after the engine has started), the key automatically returns to the "ON" position.



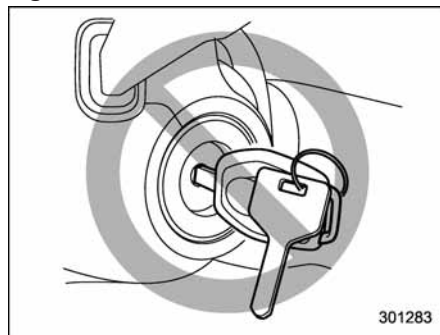
## CAUTION

**Do not turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while the engine is running.**

As your vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system, if the engine does not start with your registered key, pull out the key once (at this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks), wait for at least 10 seconds, reinsert the key in the ignition switch and then try to start the engine again.

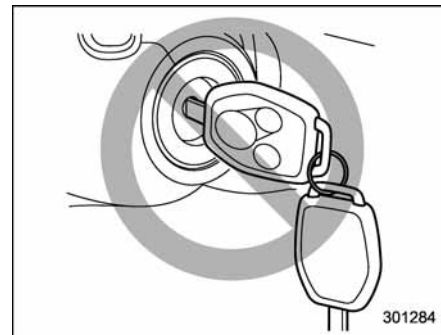
## NOTE

**The engine may not start in the following cases:**



- The key grip is touching another key

or a metallic key holder.



- The key is near another key that contains an immobilizer transponder.
- The key is near or touching another transmitter.

## ■ Key reminder chime (if equipped)

The reminder chime sounds when the driver's door is opened and the ignition switch is in the "LOCK" or "Acc" position.

The chime stops under the following conditions.

- when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch

- when the driver's door is closed

### ■ Ignition switch light

For easy access to the ignition switch in the dark, the ignition switch light illuminates when the driver's door is opened or when the driver's door is unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The light remains illuminated for several tens of seconds and then gradually turns off under the following conditions.

- when the driver's door is closed
- when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

The light turns off immediately under the following conditions.

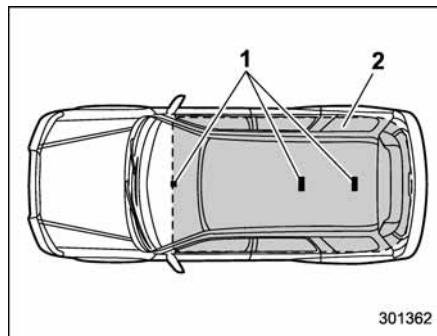
- when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position
- when all doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

## Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system)

### ■ Safety precautions

Refer to "Safety precautions" 2-8.

### ■ Operating range for push-button start system



- 1) Antenna
- 2) Operating range

### NOTE

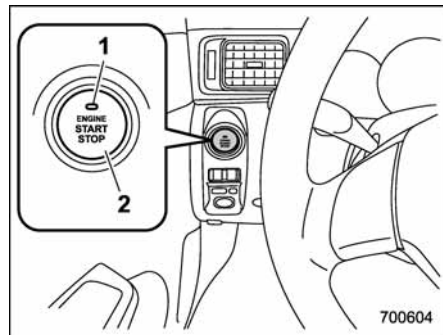
- If the access key is not detected within the operating range of the antennas inside the vehicle, the power switch and the engine start cannot be operated.

- Even when the access key is outside the vehicle, if it is placed too close to the glass, the power may switch on.
- Do not leave the access key in the following places. It may become impossible to operate the power switch.

- On the instrument panel
- On the floor
- Inside the glove box
- Inside the door trim pocket
- On the rear seat
- At the corner of the cargo area

- When operating the push-button ignition switch or starting the engine, if the battery of the access key is discharged, perform the procedure described in "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" 9-15. In such a case, replace the battery immediately. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" 11-59.

## ■ Switching power



- 1) Operation indicator
- 2) Push-button ignition switch

The power is switched every time the push-button ignition switch is pressed.

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Make sure that the shift lever is in neutral (MT models). Make sure that the select lever is in the "P" position (AT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (AT models). Every time the button is pressed, the power is switched in the sequence of "OFF", "Acc", "ON" and "OFF". When the engine is stopped and the push-button ignition switch is in "Acc" or "ON", the

operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in orange.

| Power status | Indicator color                      | Operation                                                                             |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF          | Turned off                           | Power is turned off.                                                                  |
| Acc          | Orange                               | The following parts can be used:<br>wipers, washer, audio and accessory power outlet. |
| ON           | Orange (while engine is stopped)     | All electrical parts can be used.                                                     |
|              | Turned off (while engine is running) |                                                                                       |



### CAUTION

- When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ON" or "Acc" for a long time, it may result in vehicle battery discharge.
- Do not spill drinks, etc. on the push-button ignition switch. It may cause a malfunction.
- Do not touch the push-button ignition switch with a hand soiled with oil, etc. It may cause a

malfunction.

- If the push-button ignition switch does not operate smoothly, stop the operation. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- If the push-button ignition switch does not illuminate even when the instrument panel illumination is turned on (light control switch is turned to the "☀" or "☞" position), we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.
- If the vehicle was left under the hot sun for a long time, the surface of the push-button ignition switch may get hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.

### NOTE

- In AT models, the push-button ignition switch cannot be switched to "OFF" when the select lever is in a position other than "P".
- When operating the push-button ignition switch, firmly press it all the way.
- If the push-button ignition switch is pressed quickly, the power may not turn on or off.



- After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, it may require an initialization of the steering lock system to start the engine. In such a case, initialize the steering lock.\*

#### \*Initialization of steering lock

Switch the power to “OFF”. Open and close the driver’s door, and wait for approximately 10 seconds. When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.

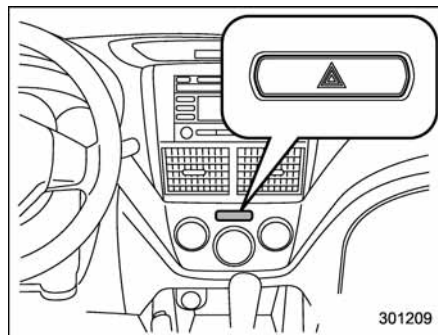
#### ▼ Battery drainage prevention function

When the power is left in “Acc” for approximately 1 hour, the power will be automatically switched to “OFF” to prevent the battery from going dead. (In AT models, this function is activated when the select lever is in the “P” position.)

#### ■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” 9-15.

## Hazard warning flasher



The hazard warning flasher is used to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions. The hazard warning flasher works with the ignition switch in any position.

To turn on the hazard warning flasher, push the hazard warning button on the instrument panel. To turn off the flasher, push the button again.

#### NOTE

**When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.**

## Meters and gauges

### NOTE

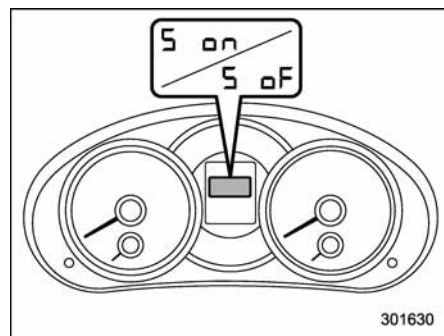
Liquid-crystal displays are used in some of the meters and gauges on the combination meter. You will find their indications hard to see if you wear polarized glasses.

### ■ Combination meter illumination

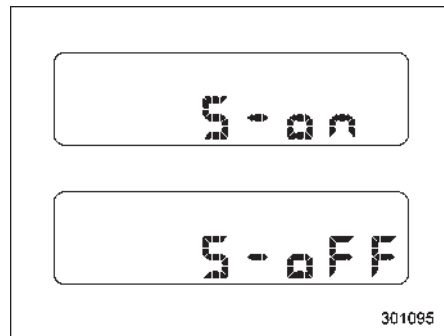
When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the various parts of the combination meter illuminate in the following sequence:

1. Warning lights, indicator lights, meter needles, gauge needles, odometer and trip meter back light illuminate.
2. Meters and gauges each show MAX position.
3. Meters and gauges each show MIN position.
4. Dials and indicators on meters and gauges light up.
5. Regular illumination (for driving) begins.

# ■ Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch



Type A and B



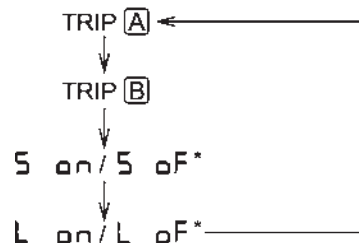
Type C and D

It is possible to activate or deactivate the movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that takes place when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "Acc" position.
2. Press the trip knob to show "S on"/"S-on" or "S off"/"S-off" on the odometer/trip meter display.

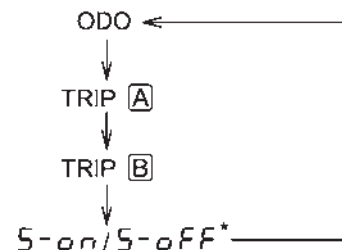
The display can be switched as shown in the following illustration by pressing the trip knob.

## Type A and B:



\*: "S on" or "S off", and "L on" or "L off" cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

## Type C and D:



\*: "S-on" or "S-off" cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

3. To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

S on/S-on : Activated

S off/S-off : Deactivated

## NOTE

- Your vehicle's initial movement setting of the meter/gauge needles has been set for activation "S on"/"S-on" at the time of shipment from the factory.

- It is not possible to cancel the initial movement setting of the meter/gauge needles when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Cancel the setting when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "Acc" position.

### ■ Meter needles/gauge illumination setting (models with type A and B combination meter)

When the setting is activated or deactivated, the meter needles and gauge illuminate and turn off as follows.

#### Activated:

When the driver's door is opened while the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the needles and gauge illuminate and turn off after approximately 20 seconds. The illumination gradually turns off after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

#### Deactivated:

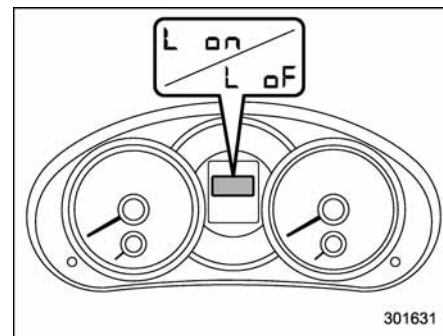
The needles and gauge do not illuminate when the driver's door is opened while the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. The illumination turns off immediately after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

### NOTE

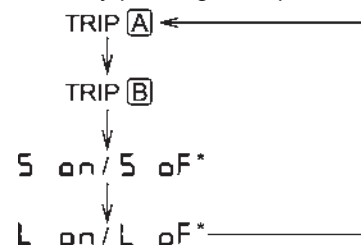
- Even during the illumination after the driver's door is opened, if the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the combination meter will illuminate as usual.
- If the doors are locked by the keyless access function or the remote keyless entry system during the illumination after the driver's door is opened, the illumination will be turned off.
- Even while the illumination is gradually turned off after the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, if the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the combination meter illuminate as usual.

#### To change the setting:

- Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "Acc" position.



- Press the trip knob to show "L on" or "L off" on the trip meter display. The display can be switched as shown in the following illustration by pressing the trip knob.



\*: "S on" or "S off", and "L on" or "L off" cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

- To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

L <sub>ON</sub> : Activated  
L <sub>OFF</sub> : Deactivated

## NOTE

The initial illumination setting of the meter needles/gauge of your vehicle has been set for activation “L <sub>ON</sub>” at the time of shipment from the factory.

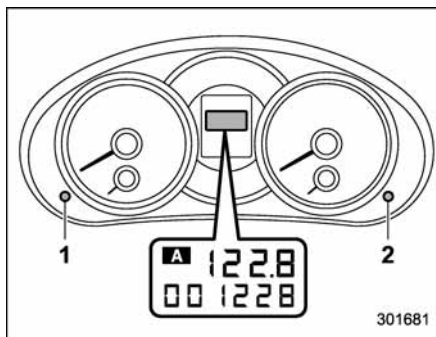
## Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed.

### ▼ Speed warning chime (if equipped)

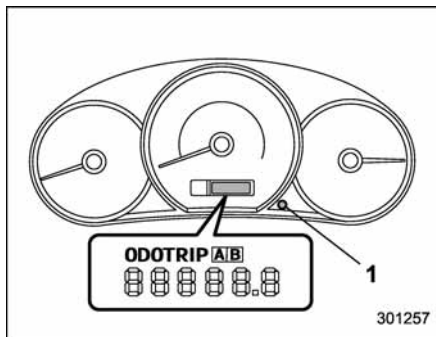
When the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a chime sounds.

## ■ Odometer/Trip meter



Type A and B

- 1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
- 2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)



Type C and D

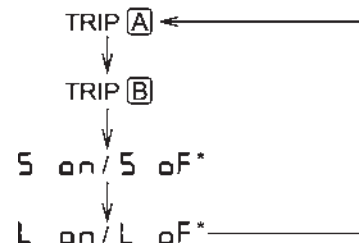
- 1) Trip knob

This meter displays the odometer and two trip meters when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. It is possible to switch the indications while the odometer/trip meter is lit up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

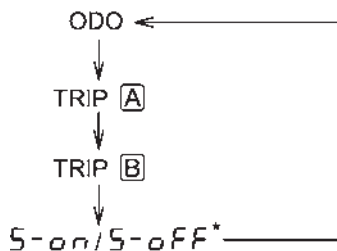
The display can be switched as shown in the following illustrations by pressing the trip knob.

### Type A and B:



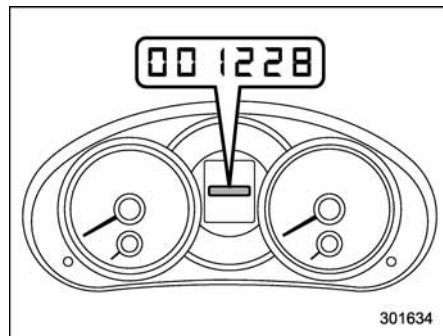
\*: “S <sub>ON</sub>” or “S <sub>OFF</sub>”, and “L <sub>ON</sub>” or “L <sub>OFF</sub>” cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

## Type C and D:

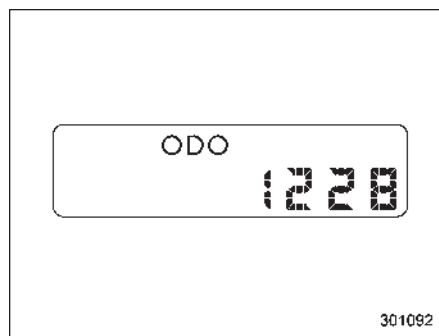


\*: "S-on" or "S-off" cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

## ▼ Odometer



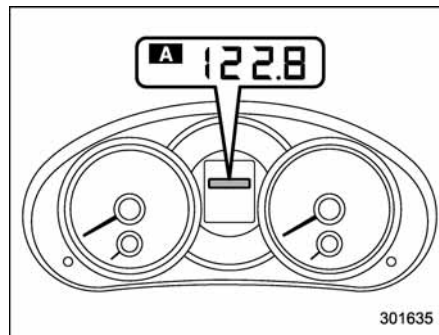
Type A and B



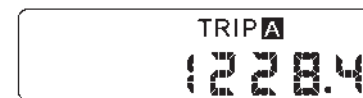
Type C and D

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

## ▼ Double trip meter



Type A and B



Type C and D

The trip meter shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since you last set it to zero.

To set the trip meter to zero, select the A trip or B trip meter by pushing the knob and keep the knob pushed for more than 2 seconds.

**CAUTION**

To ensure safety, do not attempt to change the function of the indicator during driving, as an accident could result.

**NOTE**

If the connection between the combination meter and battery is broken for any

– CONTINUED –

reason such as vehicle maintenance or fuse replacement, the data recorded on the trip meter will be lost.

### ■ Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute.



#### CAUTION

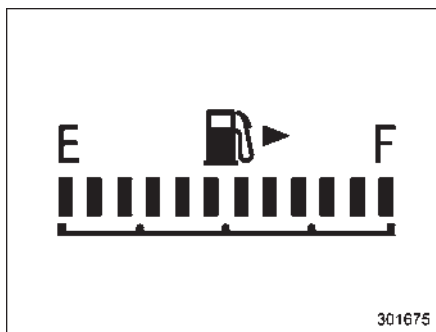
Do not operate the engine with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone. This may cause severe damage to the engine.

### ■ Fuel gauge

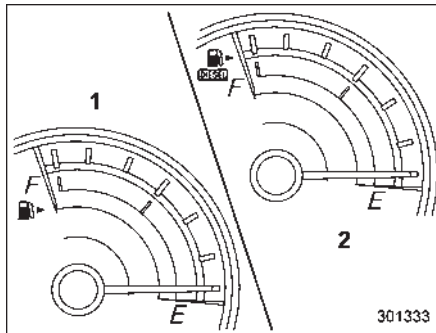


#### CAUTION

For diesel engine models, fill the tank with diesel fuel. For details about diesel fuel, refer to "Fuel requirements for diesel engine" 7-2.



Type A and B



- 1) Type C
- 2) Type D

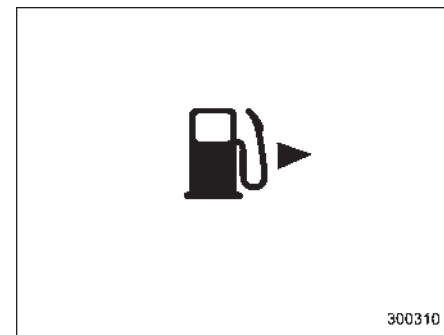
The fuel gauge shows the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

When the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/

"OFF" or "Acc" position, the fuel gauge shows "E" even if the fuel tank contains fuel.

The gauge may move slightly during braking, turning or acceleration due to fuel level movement in the tank.

### NOTE



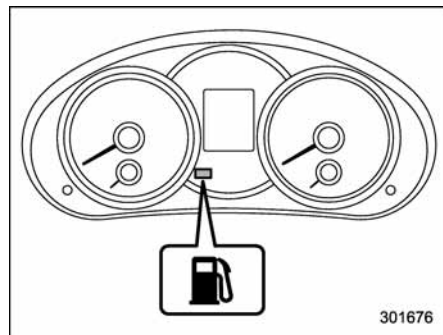
You will see the "fuel pump" sign in the fuel gauge.

This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

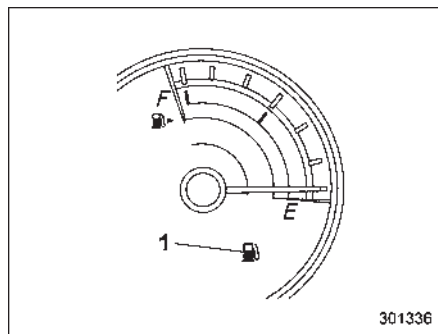
## ▼ Low fuel warning light

**CAUTION**

Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.



Type A and B

**Type C and D**

## 1) Low fuel warning light

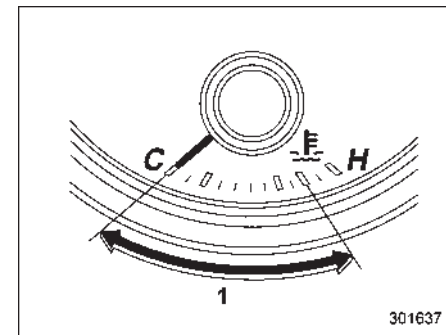
The low fuel warning light illuminates when the fuel tank is nearly empty. It only operates when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

**NOTE**

- With petrol engine models, the low fuel warning light illuminates when the remaining amount of fuel in the tank has reached approximately 9 liters (2.4 US gal, 2.0 Imp gal).
- With diesel engine models, the low fuel warning light illuminates when the remaining amount of fuel in the tank has reached approximately 8 liters (2.1 US gal, 1.8 Imp gal).

- The low fuel warning light does not turn off unless the tank is replenished up to an internal fuel quantity of approximately 15 liters (4.0 US gal, 3.3 Imp gal).

## ■ Temperature gauge (if equipped)



## 1) Normal operating range

The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The coolant temperature will vary in accordance with the outside temperature and driving conditions.

We recommend that you drive moderately until the pointer of the temperature gauge

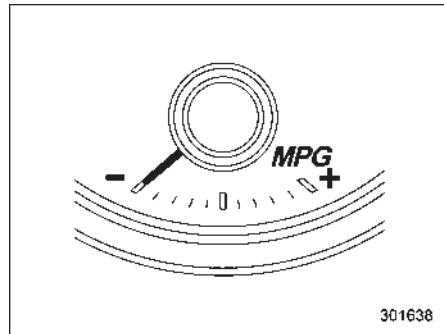
reaches near the middle of the range. Engine operation is optimum with the engine coolant at this temperature range and high revving operation when the engine is not warmed up enough should be avoided.



## CAUTION

If the pointer exceeds the normal operating range, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Refer to "Engine overheating" 9-11.

## ECO gauge (if equipped)



The unit displayed varies depending on the destination.

The ECO gauge shows the difference between the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset and the current rate of fuel consumption.

The ECO gauge indicates the current fuel efficiency as shown in the following chart.

| Displayed unit | Needle pointing |          |
|----------------|-----------------|----------|
|                | "+" side        | "-" side |
| MPG            | Better          | Poorer   |
| km/l           |                 |          |
| l/100km        | Poorer          | Better   |

## NOTE

- The ECO gauge shows only an approximate indication of fuel efficiency.
- After resetting the trip meter, the average rate of fuel consumption is not shown until driving 1 km (0.6 mile). Until that time, the ECO gauge does not operate.

## Warning and indicator lights

Several of the warning and indicator lights illuminate momentarily and then turn off when the ignition switch is initially turned to the "ON" position. This permits checking the operation of the bulbs.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. For the system check, the following lights illuminate and turn off after several seconds or after the engine has started.

- Seatbelt warning light (if equipped)  
(The seatbelt warning light turns off only when the driver fastens the seatbelt.)
- Front passenger's seatbelt warning light (Australia models only)  
(The seatbelt warning light turns off only when the front seat passenger fastens the seatbelt.)
- AWD: AWD warning light (AT models)
- STEERING: Power steering warning light (if equipped)
- AIR BAC: SRS airbag system warning light
- Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light)



 Coolant temperature high warning light (if equipped)

 Charge warning light

 Oil pressure warning light

 AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models)

 Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

 ABS warning light

 Brake system warning light

 Low fuel warning light

 Hill start assist warning light (MT models)

 Door open warning light

 SPORT mode indicator light (AT models)

 Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

 Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

 CRUISE: Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)

 SET: Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)

 Access key warning light (if equipped)

 Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)

 Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)

 Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)

 Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)

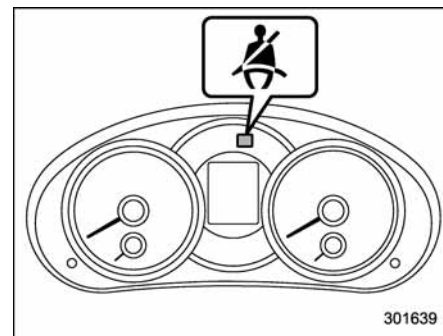
If any lights fail to illuminate, it indicates a burned-out bulb or a malfunction of the corresponding system.

We recommend that you consult your authorized SUBARU dealer for repair.

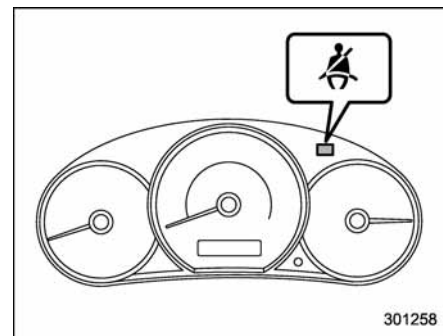
 **Seatbelt warning light and chime (if equipped)** 

## NOTE

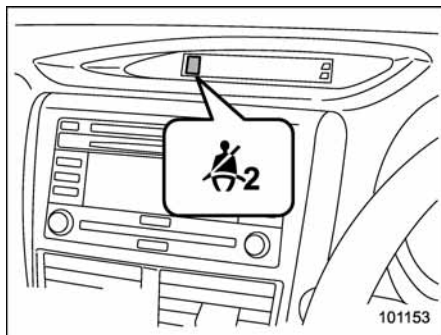
If your seatbelt warning device does not operate as described below, it may be out of order. We recommend that you have the device inspected and, if necessary, repaired by the nearest SUBARU dealer.



Driver's warning light (type A and B) (except Latin America models)



Driver's warning light (type C and D) (except Latin America models)



Front passenger's warning light (Australia models)

#### ▼ Latin America models

Your vehicle is not equipped with any seatbelt warning devices. Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the seatbelts are fastened properly.

#### ▼ Australia models

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device at the driver's and front passenger's seat.

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, this device reminds the driver and front passenger to fasten their seatbelts by illuminating the warning lights shown in the illustrations.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no

higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt and/or passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) corresponding to the unfastened seatbelt(s) will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt and/or passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of continuous illumination. At the same time, a chime will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of sounding followed by a 1-second pause. If either of the unfastened seatbelts is fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the chime will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened. This condition (continued operation of the chime unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened) will continue for approximately 108 seconds.

#### NOTE

● **If the driver's and passenger's seatbelts are not fastened simultaneously (if one seatbelt is fastened significantly earlier or later than the other), the chime may sound longer (10 seconds**

**maximum).**

- **The occupant detection system of the front passenger's seat detects the passenger by the weight on the seat. Therefore, if there is a heavy object on the seat, the warning system to fasten the seatbelt is activated.**
- **If you use a cushion on a passenger's seat, there is the possibility that the occupant detection system cannot detect the passenger.**

If the driver's seatbelt and/or the passenger's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light(s) will stop flashing and the chime will stop sounding. The warning light(s), however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the corresponding seatbelt(s) is fastened.

#### ▼ Other models

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device at the driver's seat.

This device causes the seatbelt warning light on the combination meter to illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" to remind the driver to wear the seatbelt.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fas-

tened, the warning light will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination. At the same time, a chime will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of sounding followed by a 1-second pause. If the seatbelt is fastened at this time, the warning light will turn off and the chime will stop sounding immediately. This condition will continue for approximately 108 seconds.

If the driver's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the chime will stop sounding. The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

### ■ **SRS airbag system**      AIR BAG **warning light**



#### **WARNING**

**If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt**

**pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.**

- **Flashing or flickering of the warning light**
- **No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position**
- **Continuous illumination of the warning light**
- **Illumination of the warning light while driving**

### ■ **Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light)**



#### ▼ **Vehicles equipped with OBD system**

Vehicles sold in Europe are equipped with an enhanced on-board diagnostics system called OBD that monitors the performance of the vehicle's emission control system.

Vehicles sold in some countries outside Europe may be equipped with the OBD system. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer to ascertain whether your vehicle has the OBD system.

The OBD system helps to protect the environment by ensuring that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle.

If the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates steadily or blinks while the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem or potential problem somewhere in the emission control system and that service is required. The OBD system also assists your service technician in properly diagnosing any malfunction.



### CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates while you are driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked/repaired by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible. Continued vehicle operation without having the emission control system checked and repaired as necessary could cause serious damage, which may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

#### ▽ If the light illuminates steadily

If the light illuminates steadily while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, an emission control system malfunction has been detected.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

#### ▽ If the light is blinking

If the light is blinking while driving, an engine misfire condition has been detected which may damage the emission control system.

To prevent serious damage to the emission control system, you should conform to the following instructions.

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- Reduce the amount of cargo, if possible.
- Stop towing a trailer as soon as possible.

The malfunction indicator lamp may stop blinking and illuminate steadily after several driving trips. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

#### ▼ Vehicles NOT equipped with OBD system

If the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem somewhere in the engine control system.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

- **Coolant temperature low indicator light (if equipped)/Coolant temperature high warning light (if equipped)**



### CAUTION

- After turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.
  - It remains blinking in RED.
  - It remains illuminated in RED for more than 2 seconds.
  - It remains blinking in RED and BLUE alternately.
- While driving, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, take the specified appropriate measure listed below.
  - Blinking or illuminated in RED:  
Safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer

to the emergency steps for the engine overheating. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Refer to “Engine overheating” 9-11.

- **Blinking in RED and BLUE alternately:**  
The electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

This coolant temperature low indicator light/coolant temperature high warning light has the following three functions.

- Illumination in **BLUE** indicates insufficient warming up of the engine
- Blinking in **RED** indicates that the engine is close to overheating
- Illumination in **RED** indicates overheating condition of the engine

For the system check, this indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** for approximately 2 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position. After that, this indicator light/warning light changes to **BLUE** and maintains illumination in **BLUE**. This **BLUE** illuminated light

turns off when the engine is warmed up sufficiently.

If the engine coolant temperature increases over the specified range, the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED**. At this time, the engine is close to overheating.

If the engine coolant temperature increases further, the indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** continuously. At this time, the engine may be overheating.

When the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED** or illuminates in **RED**, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer to the emergency steps for the engine overheating. Refer to “Engine overheating” 9-11. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

Also, if the indicator light/warning light often blinks in **RED**, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

### NOTE

**If the engine is restarted after a certain driving condition, this indicator light/warning light may illuminate in RED. However, this is not a malfunction if the**

**indicator light/warning light turns off after a short time.**

### ■ Charge warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the charging system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the alternator belt. If the belt is loose, broken or if the belt is in good condition but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

### ■ Oil pressure warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the engine oil pressure is low and the lubricating system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is low, add oil immediately. If the engine oil is at the proper level but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

diately.



### CAUTION

**Do not operate the engine with the oil pressure warning light on. This may cause serious engine damage.**

## ■ AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models)

AT OIL  
TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

### ▼ Automatic transmission control system warning

If the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light flashes after the engine starts, it may indicate that the automatic transmission control system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for service immediately.

## ■ Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

R.DIFF  
TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the rear differential oil temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, reduce vehicle speed and stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place.

Park the vehicle for several minutes. After the light turns off, you can start driving.



### CAUTION

**Reduce the vehicle speed and park the vehicle at a safe place as soon as possible if the R.DIFF TEMP warning light illuminates. Sustained driving with this light on can cause the rear differential to be damaged.**

## ■ ABS warning light



### CAUTION

- If any of the following conditions occur, we recommend that you have the ABS system repaired at the first available opportunity by your SUBARU dealer.

- The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, but it does not turn off even when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).
- The warning light illuminates during driving.
- When the warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the ABS function shuts down. However, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.

With a vehicle equipped with an ABS system, the ABS warning light illuminates together with the brake system warning light if the EBD system malfunctions. For further details of the EBD system malfunction warning, refer to "Brake system warning light" 3-22.

## NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as described in the following conditions, the ABS system may be considered

normal.

- The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.
- The warning light remains illuminated after the engine has been started, but it turns off when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).
- The warning light illuminates during driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.

When driving with an insufficient battery voltage such as when the engine is jump started, the ABS warning light may illuminate. This is due to the low battery voltage and does not indicate a malfunction. When the battery becomes fully charged, the light will turn off.

### ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light



This warning light functions to indicate malfunctions in the Vehicle Dynamics Control system as well as to indicate that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system has been deactivated.

It illuminates in the event of a malfunction in the system and is on when the system

is not operating.

### ▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light



### CAUTION

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system provides its ABS control through the electrical circuit of the ABS system. Accordingly, if the ABS is inoperative, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes unable to provide ABS control. As a result, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system also becomes inoperative, causing the warning light to illuminate. Though both the Vehicle Dynamics Control and ABS systems are inoperative in this case, the ordinary functions of the brake system are still available. You will be safe while driving with this condition, but drive carefully. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

### NOTE

- If the electrical circuit of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system itself malfunctions, only the warning light illumi-

nates. At this time, the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) remains fully operational.

- The warning light illuminates when the electronic control system of the ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control system malfunctions.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably inoperative under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The warning light illuminates while the vehicle is running.

### NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as described in the following conditions, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal.

- The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.
- The warning light illuminates after engine startup and turns off while the vehicle is subsequently being driven.
- The warning light illuminates during driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.



### ▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

- It illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is pressed.
- It also illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is deactivated.

### NOTE

- The light may remain on for a while after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.
- The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a problem and the malfunction indicator lamp is on.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the listed condition. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

### ■ Brake system warning light

#### WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.**
- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

This light has the following functions:

#### ▼ Parking brake warning

The light illuminates with the parking brake applied while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

#### ▼ Brake fluid level warning

This light illuminates when the brake fluid level has dropped to near the "MIN" level of the brake fluid reservoir with the ignition switch in the "ON" position and with the

parking brake fully released.

If the brake system warning light should illuminate while driving (with the parking brake fully released and with the ignition switch positioned in "ON"), it could be an indication of leaking of brake fluid or worn brake pads. If this occurs, immediately stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place and check the brake fluid level. If the fluid level is below the "MIN" mark in the reservoir, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

### ▼ Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning

The brake system warning light also illuminates if a malfunction occurs in the EBD system. In that event, it illuminates together with the ABS warning light.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.



If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat place.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning.

We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

4. If both warning lights illuminate again and stay illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level.

5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

### ■ Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)



This warning light illuminates when the amount of accumulated water in the fuel filter has reached the specified level. If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.



#### CAUTION

**Never drive the vehicle when the warning light is illuminated. Continuing to drive while water has accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.**

### ■ Low fuel warning light



The low fuel warning light illuminates when the tank is nearly empty approximately 9.0 liters (2.3 US gal, or 1.9 Imp gal). It only operates when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

### NOTE

This light does not turn off unless the tank is replenished up to an internal fuel quantity of approximately 14 liters (3.7 US gal, 3.1 Imp gal).



#### CAUTION

**Turbo models only:**

**Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.**

### ■ Hill start assist warning light (MT models)



While the engine is rotating, if any malfunction is detected in the hill start assist system control, the warning light will illuminate.



#### WARNING

**When the Hill start assist warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected immediately at an authorized SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Door open warning light



The door open warning light illuminates if any door or the rear gate is not fully closed.

Always make sure this light is out before you start to drive.

## ■ All-Wheel Drive warning light (AT models) AWD



### CAUTION

Continuing to drive with the AWD warning light flashing can damage the powertrain. If the AWD warning light starts to flash, promptly park in a safe place and check whether the tires have differing diameters and whether any of the tires has an excessively low inflation pressure.

### ▼ 5-speed AT models

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

### ▼ 4-speed AT models

This light illuminates when All-Wheel Drive is disengaged and the drive me-

chanism is switched to Front Wheel Drive for maintenance or similar purposes.

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

## ■ Power steering warning light (if equipped)



While the engine is running, this warning light illuminates when a malfunction has been detected in the electric power steering system.



### CAUTION

When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

## NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated frequently and widely while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking, the power steering control system may

temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system from overheating. At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. The normal steering force will be restored after a short time.

## ■ Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)



This light illuminates when the automatic headlight beam leveler does not operate normally.

If this light illuminates while driving or does not turn off approximately 3 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer.

## ■ Warning chimes and warning light of keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize

improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

When the warning chime sounds and/or the warning light flashes, take the appropriate action.

## **NOTE**

**For China models, the outside warning chime will not sound.**

### **▼ Warnings by warning chimes**

When the warning chime sounds, take the appropriate action.

#### **▼ Door ajar warning**

When the door lock button is pressed to lock the vehicle while any of the doors including the rear gate is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound.

## **NOTE**

**Close the door that is open, and lock the vehicle.**

#### **▼ Lockout warning**

When you attempt to lock all doors while the access key is left inside the vehicle, a chirp sound will be heard for 2 seconds, and all doors including the rear gate will be unlocked.

## **NOTE**

**Take out the access key from inside the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.**

#### **▼ Access key lock-in warning**

When the doors are closed and the door lock button is pressed to lock the vehicle while the access key is left inside the vehicle and the push-button ignition switch is "OFF", a chirp sound will be heard for 2 seconds.

## **NOTE**

**Take out the access key from inside the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.**

#### **▼ Power warning**

When the door lock button is pressed while carrying the access key and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF", a chirp sound will be heard for a maximum of 60 seconds.

## **NOTE**

- **Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and lock the doors. When the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF", it is not possible to lock the doors by the door lock button or the "P" button on the access key.**
- **When the access key is returned to**

**the inside of the vehicle or the push-button ignition switch is switched to "OFF", the chirp sound will stop.**

- **This warning occurs when the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in the "P" position (AT models).**

#### **▼ Select lever position warning indication (AT models)**

When the driver's door is opened while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position, the warning chime will sound.

## **NOTE**

**When a chirp sound is heard, shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and get out of the vehicle.**

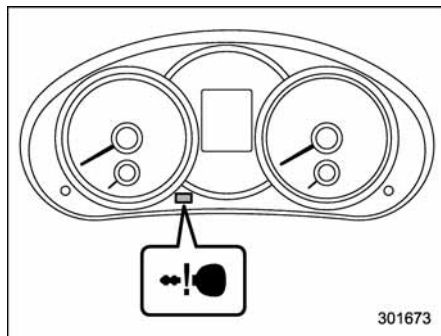
#### **▼ Access key warning**

When the vehicle is driven while the access key is not inside the vehicle, a chirp sound will be heard.

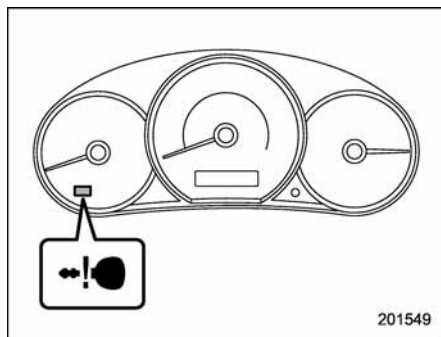
## **NOTE**

**Always carry the access key while driving the vehicle.**

### ▼ Warnings by warning light



Type A and B



Type C and D

The access key warning light illuminates when the push-button ignition switch is switched to “ON” and turns off approxi-

mately 2 seconds later.

When the access key is not inside the vehicle or is under such irregular conditions, the access key warning light on the combination meter flashes.

### ▼ Access key warning for engine start

When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while the access key is not inside the vehicle, a chirp sound will be heard, and the access key warning light will flash.

### NOTE

- Carry the access key, and press the push-button ignition switch.
- Even when the access key is within the operating ranges inside the vehicle, the access key warning may be provided depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions.

### ▼ Access key takeout warning

When the driver exits the vehicle with the access key and closes the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than “OFF”, a chirp sound will be heard, and the access key warning light will flash.

### NOTE

- Switch the push-button ignition

switch to “OFF”, and exit the vehicle (MT models).

- Shift the select lever to the “P” position, switch the push-button ignition switch to “OFF”, and exit the vehicle (AT models).

- When the access key is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the warning will not be provided.

### ▼ Passenger access key takeout warning

When another passenger exits the vehicle with the access key and closes a door other than the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than “OFF”, the warning chime will sound. At the same time, the access key warning light will flash.

### NOTE

- When the access key is returned to the inside of the vehicle or the push-button ignition switch is switched to “OFF”, the chirp sound will stop.
- When the access key is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the warning will not be provided.

▼ **Warning by flashing of operation indicator on push-button ignition switch**

▽ **Steering lock warning**

If the steering lock is not released when you start the engine, the indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green. In this case, slightly depress the brake pedal while rotating the steering wheel right and left and push the push-button ignition switch.



**WARNING**

**Never drive the vehicle if the indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in green when starting the engine. This indicates the status that the steering wheel is not released and could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.**



**CAUTION**

**When starting the engine again, if the indicator light is still flashing in green, there could be a steering lock malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.**

▽ **Keyless access with push-button start system malfunction warning**

In case the keyless access with push-button start system has a malfunction, the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in orange.



**CAUTION**

**When the operation indicator flashes in orange, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.**

**▼ List of warnings**

| Inside warning chime             | Outside warning chime       | Access key warning light on meter | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status                                                                                                                                                                                             | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ding, ding ...<br>(intermittent) | —                           | —                                 | —                                                  | The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is "Acc" (in AT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).                                                          | Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", or close the driver's door.<br>*When exiting the vehicle, be sure to switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".                                    |
|                                  |                             |                                   |                                                    | The push-button ignition switch was switched to "OFF" while the driver's door is open.                                                                                                             | Close the driver's door.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| —                                | Short beep<br>(2 seconds)   | —                                 | —                                                  | An attempt was made to lock all doors while the access key is left inside the vehicle.                                                                                                             | Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors.<br>*The doors cannot be locked while the access key is inside the vehicle.<br>*A chirp sound will be heard, and all doors will be unlocked. |
|                                  |                             |                                   |                                                    | The door lock button was pressed while the push-button ignition switch is "OFF" and the access key is inside the vehicle.                                                                          | Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors.<br>*If the access key is inside the vehicle, the doors cannot be locked.                                                                    |
| —                                | Beep<br>(10 seconds)        | —                                 | —                                                  | The push-button ignition switch is pushed while the ignition switch is in the "OFF" position and one of the doors including the rear gate is opened.                                               | Close the doors securely and lock them.<br>*If one of the doors including the rear gate is opened, the doors cannot be locked.                                                                            |
| —                                | Long beep (60 seconds max.) | —                                 | —                                                  | The door lock button was pressed while carrying the access key and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in AT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position). | Return the access key to the inside of the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".<br>*If the push-button ignition switch is not switched to "OFF", the doors cannot be locked.      |

| Inside warning chime   | Outside warning chime      | Access key warning light on meter                                                                                  | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Action                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ding                   | —                          | <br>(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | —                                                  | The vehicle was driven while the access key is not inside the vehicle.                                                                                                                                                    | Always carry the access key while driving the vehicle.                                                            |
| Ding                   | —                          | <br>(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | —                                                  | The push-button ignition switch was pressed while the access key is not inside the vehicle.                                                                                                                               | Carry the access key, and press the push-button ignition switch.                                                  |
| Ding                   | Beep, beep, beep (3 times) | <br>(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | —                                                  | The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in AT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).      | Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and get out of the vehicle.                                      |
| Ding                   | Beep, beep, beep (3 times) | <br>(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | —                                                  | A fellow passenger exited the vehicle with the access key and closed a door other than the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF".                                         | Return the access key to the inside of the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".           |
| Long beep (continuous) | Long beep (continuous)     | <br>(Flashes 1 sec. intermittent) | —                                                  | The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position. | Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle. |

| Inside warning chime   | Outside warning chime | Access key warning light on meter | Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch | Status                                                                                                                                                                  | Action                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Long beep (continuous) | —                     | —                                 | —                                                  | The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position. | Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle.           |
| Ding                   | —                     | —                                 | —                                                  | The battery of the access key is low.                                                                                                                                   | Replace the battery of the access key.                                                                                      |
| —                      | —                     | —                                 | Flashes in green (15 seconds max.)                 | The engine start procedure was performed, but the steering is still locked.                                                                                             | While turning the steering wheel right and left lightly, depress the brake pedal and press the push-button ignition switch. |
| —                      | —                     | —                                 | Flashes in orange                                  | A malfunction was detected in the power system or steering lock.                                                                                                        | We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately and have the vehicle inspected.                                   |



## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light



It blinks when the skid suppression function is activated. It illuminates when only the traction control function is operating.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The light does not turn off even after a period of approximately 2 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position.

## ■ Immobilizer indicator light



The immobilizer indicator light deters potential thieves by indicating that the vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system. It begins flashing under any of the following conditions.

### • Models with "keyless access with push-button start system"

Immediately after the push-button ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position.

### • Models without "keyless access with push-button start system"

- Approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the "ON" position to the "Acc" or "LOCK" position.
- Immediately after the ignition key is pulled out.

If the immobilizer indicator light does not flash, it may indicate that immobilizer system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

In case an unauthorized key is used, the immobilizer indicator light illuminates.

For information about the immobilizer system, refer to "Immobilizer" 2-3.

## NOTE

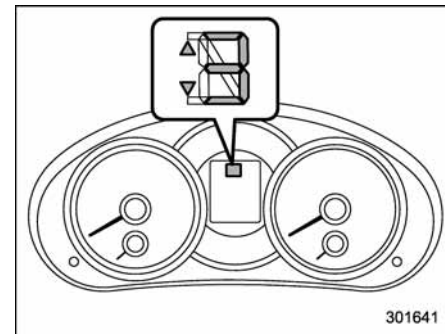
Even if the immobilizer indicator light flashes irregularly or its fuse blows (the light does not flash if its fuse is blown), the immobilizer system will function normally.

## ■ SPORT mode indicator light (AT models)

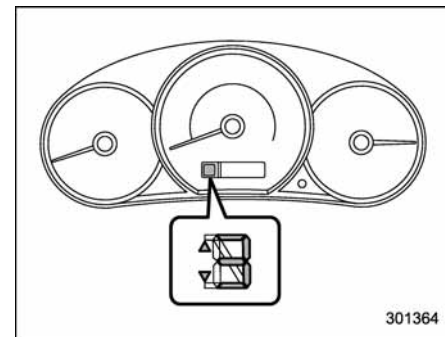
When the select lever is moved to the manual gate, the SPORT mode is selected and the indicator light illuminates.

Refer to "SPORT mode" 7-23.

## ■ Select lever and gear position indicator (AT models)



Type A and B



Type C

This indicator shows the position of the select lever.

When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator (which shows the current gear selection) and the upshift/downshift indicator light up. Refer to "Automatic transmission" 7-17.

### ■ LO position indicator light (dual range MT models)



This light illuminates when Hi-Lo select lever is set at Lo position.

### ■ Turn signal indicator lights



These lights show the operation of the turn signal or lane change signal.

If the indicator lights do not blink or blink rapidly, the turn signal bulb may be burned out. Replace the bulb as soon as possible. Refer to "Replacing bulbs" 11-53.

### ■ High beam indicator light



This light shows that the headlights are in the high beam mode.

This indicator light also illuminates when the headlight flasher is operated.

### ■ Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)



This light illuminates when the "CRUISE" main switch is pressed.

#### NOTE

- If you press the "CRUISE" main switch button while turning the ignition switch to "ON", the cruise control function is deactivated and the cruise control indicator light flashes. To reactivate the cruise control function, turn the ignition switch back to the "Acc" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position, and then turn it again to the "ON" position.
- If this indicator light and the malfunction indicator lamp "C" flash simultaneously during driving, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

### ■ Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)



This light illuminates when vehicle speed has been set.

### ■ Headlight indicator light



This indicator light illuminates when the light control switch is placed in the "000" or "00" position.

### ■ Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates while the front fog lights are illuminated.

### ■ Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates while the rear fog lights are illuminated.

### ■ Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)



The preheating indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off after the engine has sufficiently preheated (a few seconds later).

#### NOTE

- When the weather is cold outside, the preheating indicator light remains illuminated a little longer than usual.
- For models without push-button

start system, start the engine after the preheating indicator light has turned off.

- For models with push-button start system, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.

### ■ Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)



#### ▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates

The diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates when the filter is not able to automatically burn the soot and the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit.

When the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, drive the vehicle under the following conditions after the engine has been warmed up completely.

- Vehicle speed: 60 km/h (37 mph) or more
- Engine speed: 1,800 to 2,500 rpm
- Transmission gear position: 4th, 5th or 6th
- Driving period to burn particulate matter: 15 minutes or more

- Note: Do not accelerate rapidly.

Driving under these conditions will increase the inside temperature of the filter and burn the accumulated soot to eliminate it. The warning light turns off when the soot is eliminated.



### WARNING

Even if the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, continuing to drive does not damage the engine and diesel particulate filter immediately. Safely drive the vehicle according to all road laws and the traffic conditions. Otherwise, it may cause an accident or traffic violation.

### NOTE

**While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.**

#### ▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light flashes

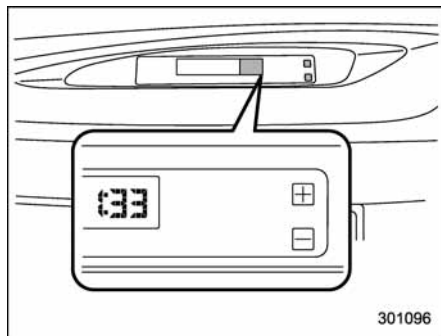
When the diesel particulate filter warning light flashes, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection.



### CAUTION

If you continue to drive the vehicle while the diesel particulate filter warning light is illuminated, the warning light will begin to flash. In this case, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection. Otherwise, the engine and diesel particulate filter may be damaged.

## Clock



The time changes by 1 minute each time the “+” button or “-” button is pressed. Pressing the “+” button moves the displayed time forward, while pressing the “-” button moves the displayed time back. Pressing and holding either button changes the displayed time continuously.



### CAUTION

**To ensure safety, do not attempt to set the time during driving, as an accident from inadequate attention to the road could result.**

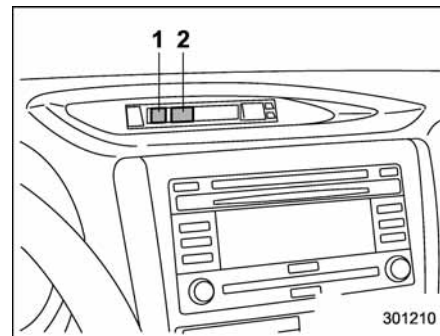
## NOTE

If the battery is disconnected, the time will be erased. After reconnecting the battery, set the correct time.

## Information display

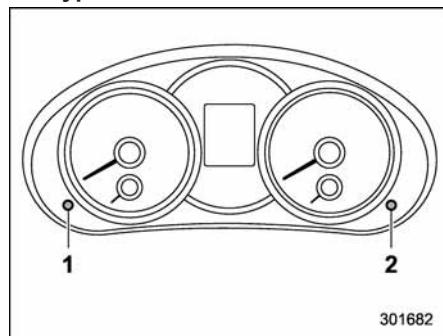
## NOTE

The displayed unit varies depending on the model.



- 1) Outside temperature indicator
- 2) Fuel consumption indicator

With the ignition switch in the “ON” position, the outside temperature and fuel consumption are indicated on the display.

**For type A and B combination meter:****Information display switching knob**

- 1) Right-hand drive models
- 2) Left-hand drive models

With the ignition switch in the “ON” position, each successive press of the information display switching knob toggles the display in the following sequence.

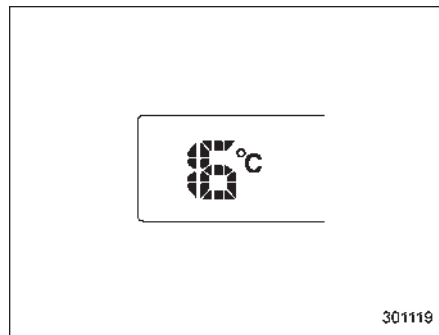
Current fuel consumption ← → Average fuel consumption

**For type C and D combination meter:**

The fuel consumption indicator is linked with the odometer/trip meter display on the combination meter according to the following chart.

|                         |                                                            |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Odometer/<br>Trip meter | Fuel consumption indicator                                 |
| A trip meter            | Average fuel consumption corresponding to the A trip meter |
| B trip meter            | Average fuel consumption corresponding to the B trip meter |
| Odometer                | Current fuel consumption                                   |

### ■ Outside temperature indicator

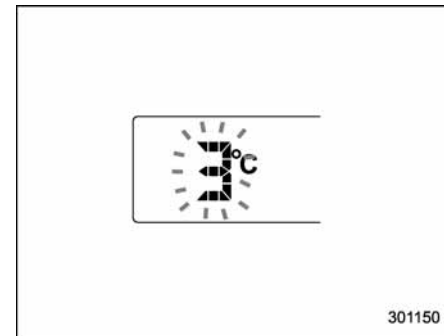


The outside temperature indicator shows the outside temperature in a range from -30 to 50°C (-22 to 122°F).

The indicator can give a false reading under any of the following conditions:

- When there is too much sun.
- During idling; while running at low speeds in a traffic jam; when the engine is restarted immediately following a shut-down.
- When the actual outside temperature falls outside the specified indicator range.

### ▼ Road surface freeze warning indication



When the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower, the temperature indication flashes to show that the road surface may be frozen.

If the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower while the display is giving an indication other than the outside temperature, the display switches to the outside temperature indication and flashes

– **CONTINUED** –

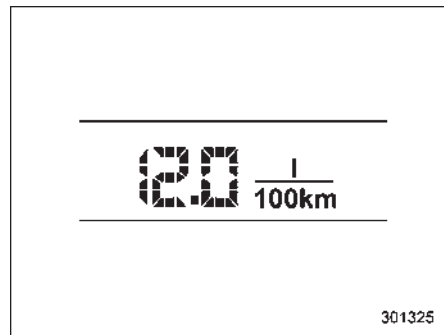
for 5 seconds before returning to its original indication.

If the display is already indicating an outside temperature of 3°C (37°F) or lower when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the indication does not flash.

## NOTE

The outside temperature indication may differ from the actual outside temperature. The road surface freeze warning indication should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.

## ■ Current fuel consumption



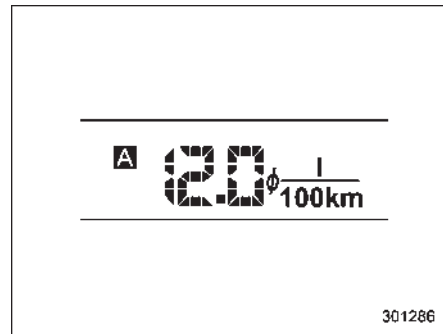
This indication shows the rate of fuel

consumption at the present moment.

## NOTE

The indicated values vary in accordance with changes in the vehicle's running conditions. Also, the indicated values may differ slightly from the actual values and should thus be treated only as a guide.

## ■ Average fuel consumption



This indication shows the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

When either of the trip meter indications is reset, the corresponding average fuel consumption value is also reset.

## NOTE

- The indicated values vary in accordance with changes in the vehicle's running conditions. Also, the indicated values may differ slightly from the actual values and should thus be treated only as a guide.
- When either trip meter indication is reset, the average fuel consumption corresponding to that trip meter indication is not shown until the vehicle has subsequently covered a distance of 1 km (or 1 mile).

## ■ To turn off fuel consumption indicator display

The display of the fuel consumption indicator can be turned off.

To turn off the display of the indicator, turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and press the “+” button adjacent to the information display for approximately 5 seconds. Then, the information display and the clock display will blink three times to notify that the display of the fuel consumption has been turned off.

To restore the indicator, once again press the “+” button for approximately 5 seconds.

**NOTE**

- The initial display setting of the fuel consumption indicator of your vehicle has been set to operational at the time of shipment from the factory.
- The average fuel consumption is calculated even while the indicator is not displayed.
- Even if you turn off the fuel consumption indicator, the fuel consumption indicator will automatically turn on when the battery voltage is disconnected and then reconnected for battery replacement or fuse replacement.

**Light control switch**

The light control switch operates when the key is inserted into the ignition switch. For models with the "Keyless access with push-button start system", the light control switch operates when the push-button ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the following operation is performed.

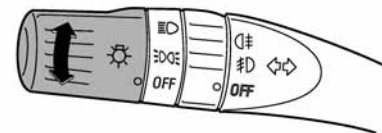
- The key is removed from the ignition switch (except models with the "Keyless access with push-button start system").
- The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the "Keyless access with push-button start system").

**NOTE**

Even if the key is removed from the ignition switch, the lights can be illuminated by operating the light control switch from "OFF" to the "⚡" or "☞" position. In this case, if the driver's door is opened, the chirp sound will inform the driver that the lights are illuminated.

**CAUTION**

- Use of any lights for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause the battery to discharge.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the light control switch is turned to the "OFF" position. If the vehicle is left unattended for a long time with the light control switch set to a position other than "OFF", the battery may be discharged.

**Headlights**

301268

To turn on the headlights, turn the knob on the end of the turn signal lever.

– CONTINUED –

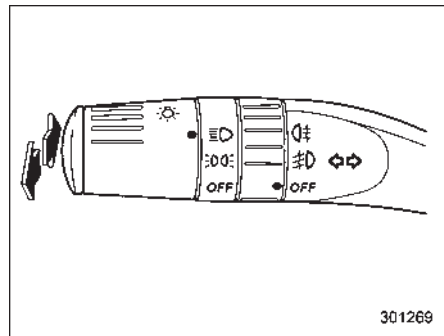
## ☰ first position

Front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

## ☷ second position

Headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights, and license plate lights are on.

## ■ High/low beam change (dimmer)

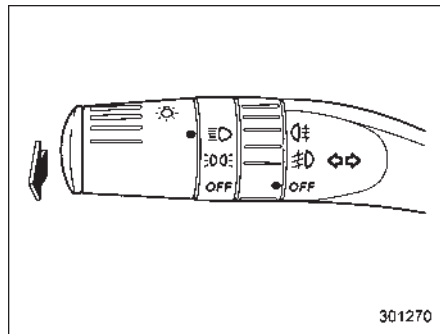


To change from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal lever forward. When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "☷" on the combination meter also illuminates.

To switch back to low beam, pull the lever

back to the detent position.

## ■ Headlight flasher



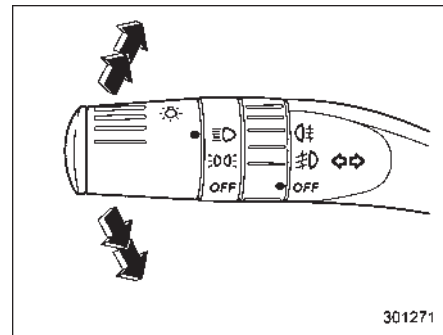
To flash the headlights, pull the lever toward you and then release it. The high beam will remain on for as long as you hold the lever. The headlight flasher works even though the light switch is in the "OFF" position.

When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "☷" on the combination meter also illuminates.

## ⚠ CAUTION

**Do not hold the lever in the flashing position for more than just a few seconds.**

## Turn signal lever



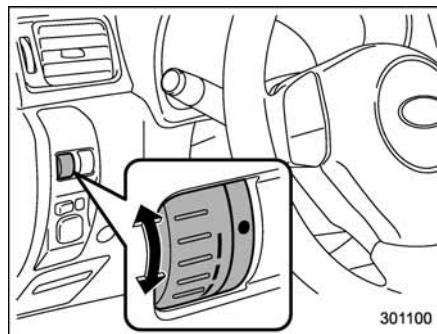
To activate the right turn signal, push the turn signal lever up. To activate the left turn signal, push the turn signal lever down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically. If the lever does not return after cornering, return the lever to the neutral position by hand.

To signal a lane change, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and hold it during the lane change. The turn signal indicator lights will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change. The lever will return automatically to the neutral position when you release it.



**NOTE**

For a vehicle that has the turn signal lever equipped on the right side of the steering wheel, the pushing direction of the turn signal lever is opposite of that described here.

**Illumination brightness control**

The brightness of clock display, audio, air conditioner, information display and instrument panel illumination dims when the light switch is in the “ ” or “ ” positions. You can adjust brightness of the instrument panel illumination for better visibility.

To brighten, turn the control dial upward.

To darken, turn the control dial downward.

**NOTE**

- When the control dial is turned fully upward, the illumination brightness becomes the maximum and the automatic dimming function does not work

at all.

- The brightness setting is not canceled even when the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position.

## **Headlight beam leveler (if equipped)**

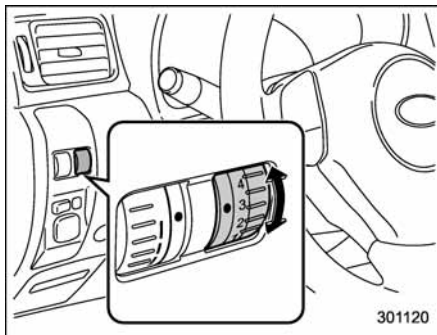
### ■ **Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights)**

The HID headlights generate more light than conventional halogen headlights.

Therefore a driver of an oncoming vehicle may experience too much glare when your headlight beam height adjustment is high because the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

The automatic headlight beam leveler adjusts the headlight beam height automatically and optimally according to the load being carried by the vehicle.

### ■ **Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights, if equipped)**



Adjust the headlight beam level with the following dial positions according to the number of passengers and load condition.

**Non-turbo petrol engine models**

| Switch position | Number of front seat occupants | Number of rear seat occupants | Load in the luggage compartment area | Trailer towing |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| 0               | 1 or 2                         | 0                             | No load                              | No             |
| 1               | 2                              | 3                             | No load                              | No             |
| 2               | 2                              | 3                             | Full load*                           | No             |
| 3               | 1                              | 0                             | Full load*                           | No             |
|                 | 1                              | 0                             | Full load*                           | Yes            |
|                 | 2                              | 3                             | Full load*                           | Yes            |
| 4 and 5         | Not apply                      | Not apply                     | Not apply                            | Not apply      |

\*: Up to maximum permissible weight

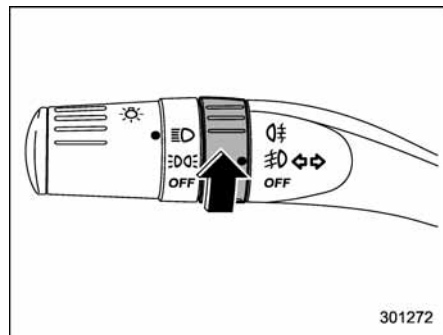
**Turbo petrol engine models and diesel engine models**

| Switch position | Number of front seat occupants | Number of rear seat occupants | Load in the luggage compartment area | Trailer towing |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| 0               | 1 or 2                         | 0                             | Not apply                            | No             |
| 1               | 2                              | 3                             | Not apply                            | No             |
| 2               | 2                              | 3                             | Full load*                           | No             |
|                 | 2                              | 3                             | Full load*                           | Yes            |
| 3               | 1                              | 0                             | Full load*                           | No             |
|                 | 1                              | 0                             | Full load*                           | Yes            |
| 4 and 5         | Not apply                      | Not apply                     | Not apply                            | Not apply      |

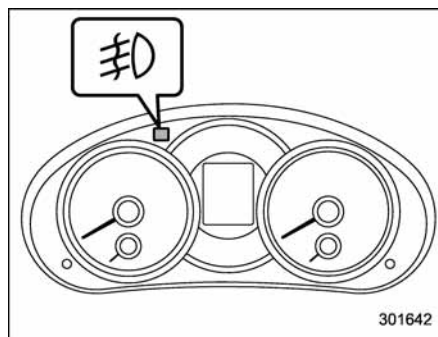
\*: Up to maximum permissible weight

## Fog light switch

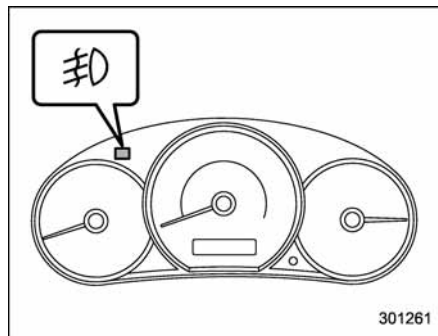
### ■ Front fog light switch (if equipped)



The front fog lights operate only when the light switch is in the “” or “” position. To turn on the front fog lights, turn the fog light switch on the turn signal lever upward to the “” position. To turn off the front fog lights, turn the switch back down to the “OFF” position.



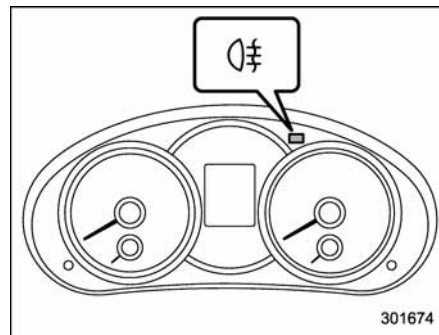
Type A and B



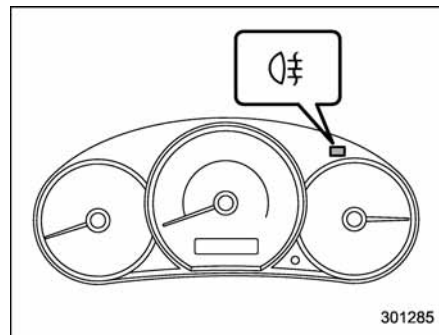
Type C and D

The indicator light located on the combination meter will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Rear fog light switch (if equipped)



Type A and B

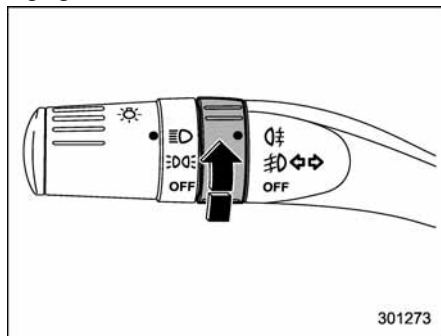


Type C and D

The rear fog lights operate only when the light switch is in the “” position or the

front fog lights are on.

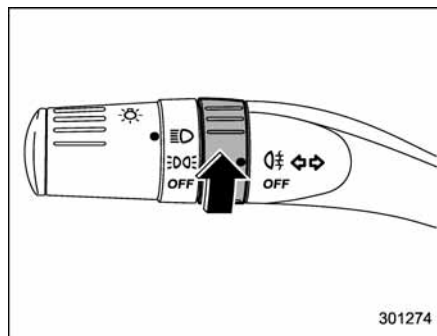
The indicator light located on the combination meter will illuminate when the rear fog lights are on.



#### Models with front fog lights:

To turn on the rear fog lights, turn the fog light switch on the turn signal lever upward to the “” position. The switch will return to the “” position when released.

To turn off the rear fog lights, either turn the switch upward back to the “” position or turn it downward to the “OFF” position.



#### Models without front fog lights:

To turn on the rear fog lights, turn the fog light switch on the turn signal lever upward to the “” position. The switch will return to the “OFF” position when released. To turn off the rear fog lights, turn the switch to the “” position again.

#### NOTE (Europe and Australia models)

To prevent switching off the rear fog light from being forgotten, the rear fog light circuit is designed so that it turns off whenever one of the following operations is performed.

- The light switch is set to either the “” or “OFF” position.
- The ignition key is removed from the ignition switch (models without “Key-

less access with push-button start system”).

- The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the “Keyless access with push-button start system”).

However, this does not mean that the rear fog light illuminates when the light switch is set to “” position or the ignition switch is turned to “ON” position again. So, if you want to reilluminate the rear fog light, turn the switch upward again.

## Wiper and washer



### WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the windshield washer until the windshield is sufficiently warmed by the defroster.

Otherwise the washer fluid can freeze on the windshield, blocking your view.



### CAUTION

- Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check the washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.
- Do not operate the wipers when the windshield or rear window is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield or rear window, always use the windshield washer.

- In freezing weather, be sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window before switching on the wipers. Attempting to operate the wiper with the blades frozen to the window glass could cause not only the wiper blades to be damaged but also the wiper motor to burn out. If the wiper blades are frozen to the window glass, be sure to operate the defroster, windshield wiper deicer (if equipped) or rear window defogger before turning on the wiper.
- If the wipers stop during operation because of ice or some other obstruction on the window, the wiper motor could burn out even if the wiper switch is turned off. If this occurs, promptly stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and clean the window glass to allow proper wiper operation.
- Use clean water if windshield washer fluid is unavailable. In areas where water freezes in winter, use SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid or the equivalent.

Refer to "Windshield washer fluid" 11-44.

Also, when driving the vehicle when there are freezing temperatures, use non-freezing type wiper blades.

- Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzene. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.

## NOTE

- The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.
- The front wiper motor is protected against overloads by a circuit breaker. If the motor operates continuously under an unusually heavy load, the circuit breaker may trip to stop the motor temporarily. If this happens, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off the wiper switch, and wait for approximately 10 minutes. The circuit breaker will reset itself, and the wipers will again operate normally.
- Clean your wiper blades and window glass periodically with a washer solution to prevent streaking, and to remove accumulations of road salt or

road film. Keep the washer button depressed at least for 1 second so that washer solution will be sprinkled all over the windshield or rear window.

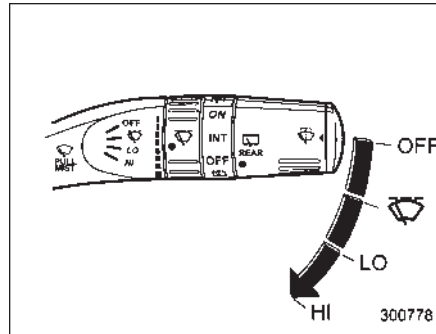
- Grease, wax, insects or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove those streaks after operating the washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield or rear window and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the window glass and wiper blades with clean water. The glass is clean if no beads form on the glass when you rinse with water.

- If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this procedure, replace the wiper blades with new ones. For replacement instructions, refer to "Replacement of wiper blades" 11-45.

## ■ Windshield wiper and washer switches

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.

### ▼ Windshield wipers



OFF: Off

 Intermittent

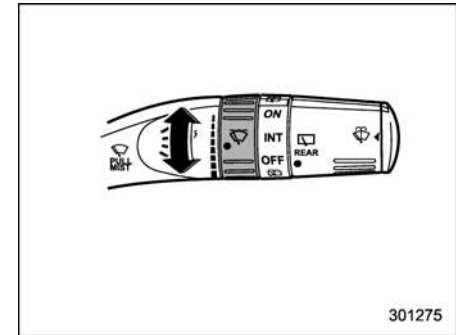
LO: Low speed

HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the "OFF" position.

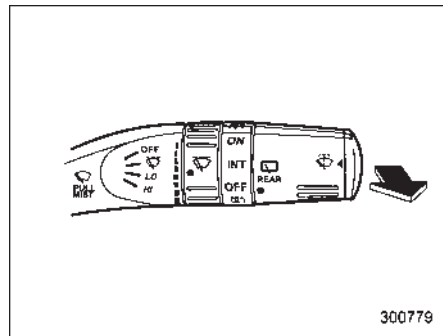
### ▼ Wiper intermittent time control



When the wiper switch is in the  position, turn the dial to adjust the operating interval of the wiper.

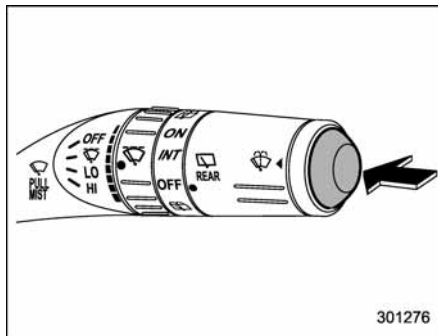
The operating interval can be adjusted in nine steps.

### ▼ Mist (for a single wipe)



For a single wipe of the wipers, pull the lever toward you. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

### ▼ Washer



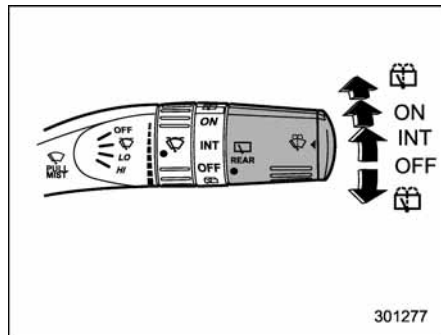
To wash the windshield, push the washer button at the end of the wiper control lever. The washer fluid sprays until you release the washer button. The wipers operate while you push the button.

### NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer, pressing the windshield washer button for more than 1 second also causes the headlight washer to operate when the headlight switch is in the "☰" position. For further details, refer to "Headlight washer" 3-47.

### ■ Rear window wiper and washer switch

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.



☰: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)  
ON: Continuous  
INT: Intermittent  
OFF: Off  
☰: Washer

### ▼ Rear wiper

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob on the end of the wiper control lever upward to the "INT" or "ON" position.

To turn the wiper off, return the knob on the end of the lever to the "OFF" position. With the switch turned to the "INT" position, the rear wiper will operate intermittently at intervals corresponding to the



vehicle speed (longer when the vehicle speed is low; shorter when the vehicle speed is high).

When you subsequently move the select lever to the "R" position (AT models) or the shift lever to the reverse position (MT models), the rear wiper will switch to continuous operation. When you move the select lever/shift lever from the "R"/reverse position to some other position, the rear wiper will return to intermittent operation.

#### ▼ Washer

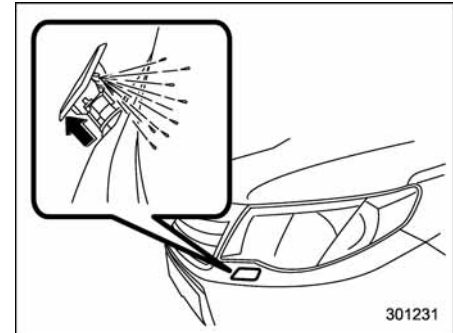
To wash the rear window while the rear wiper is operating, turn the knob on the end of the wiper control lever upward to the "⬆" position. The washer fluid sprays until you release the knob.

To wash the rear window when the rear wiper is not in use, turn the knob on the end of the wiper control lever downward to the "⬇" position. The washer fluid sprays and the wiper operates until you release the knob.

#### NOTE

**When the amount of washer fluid is getting low, the rear washer fluid will first be stopped. This means that the amount of washer fluid is low, and it should be added immediately.**

#### Headlight washer (if equipped)



With the ignition switch in the "ON" position and the headlight switch in the "⬆" position, the windshield washer operates first when you press the windshield washer button. If you continue pressing the button for more than 1 second, the headlight washer then operates together with the windshield washer. The windshield washer stops spraying washer fluid as soon as you release the windshield washer button. The headlight washer sprays the washer fluid for approximately 1 second and then stops automatically.



### CAUTION

Do not operate the washer if the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.

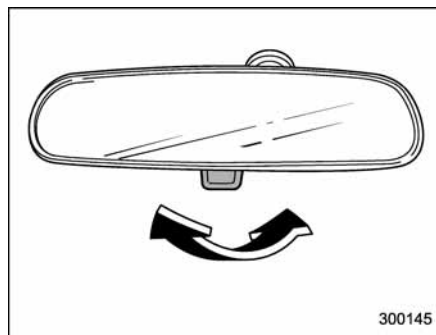
### NOTE

- When the area around the nozzle cover of the headlight washer is frozen, remove the ice before using.
- When the headlights are very dirty, perform the operation repeatedly.

## Mirrors

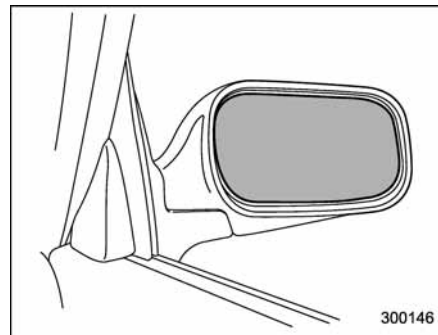
Always check that the inside and outside mirrors are properly adjusted before you start driving.

### ■ Inside mirror



The inside mirror has a day and night position. Pull the tab at the bottom of the mirror toward you for the night position. Push it away for the day position. The night position reduces glare from headlights.

### ■ Outside mirrors

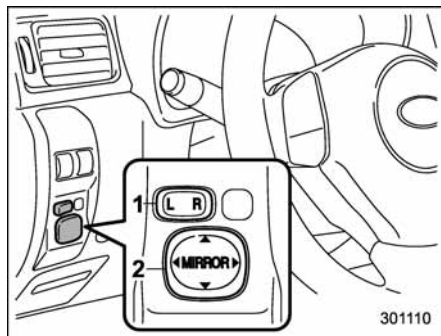


### ▼ Convex mirror (if equipped)



### WARNING

Objects look smaller in a convex mirror and farther away than when viewed in a flat mirror. Do not use the convex mirror to judge the distance of vehicles behind you when changing lanes. Use the inside mirror (or glance backwards) to determine the actual size and distance of objects that you view in convex mirror.

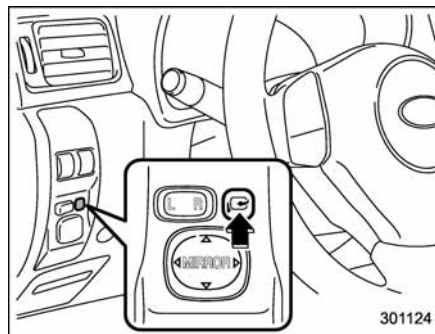
**▼ Remote control mirror switch**

- 1) Selection switch
- 2) Direction control switch

The remote control mirrors operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.

1. Press either end of the selection switch, "L" for the left, "R" for the right.
2. Move the direction control switch in the direction you want to move the mirror.
3. Return the selection switch to the neutral position to prevent unintentional operation.

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually.

**▼ Power folding mirror switch (if equipped)**

The power folding mirror switch operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.

To fold the outside mirrors, push the power folding mirror switch. To unfold the mirrors, push the switch again.

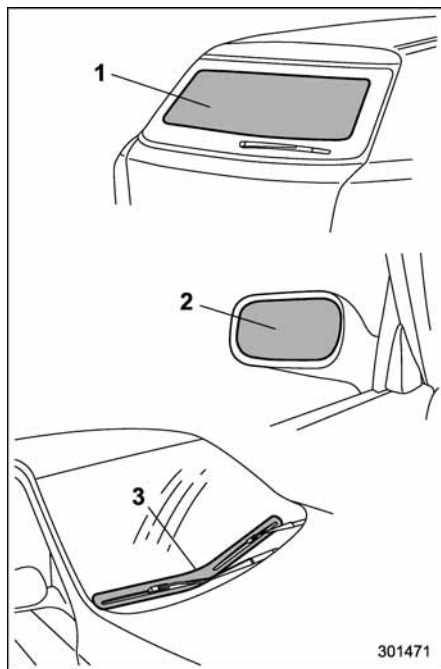
**NOTE**

- When the temperature is low, the outside mirrors may stop during operation. Push the switch again. When the outside mirrors do not work by switch operation, move them several times by manually. This makes it possible to operate them by switch operation.
- When you operate the power folding mirror switch continuously, it may not

work. This is not a malfunction. Operate after waiting for a short period of time.

- When you unfold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may become wobbly. Be sure to unfold the mirrors by switch operation. If the outside mirrors are still wobbly, fold the mirrors again and then unfold them by switch operation.

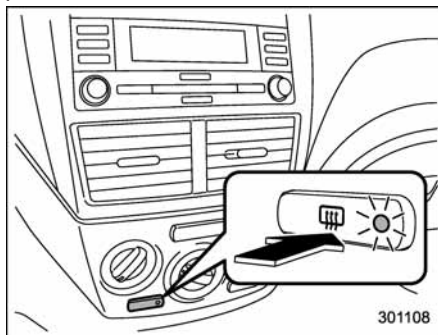
## Defogger and deicer



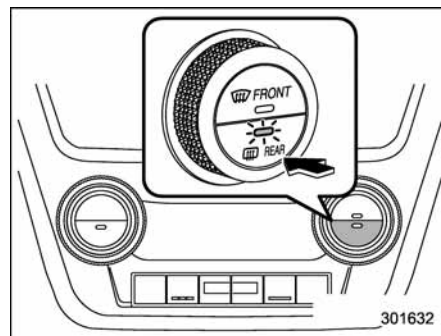
- 1) Rear window defogger
- 2) Outside mirror defogger (if equipped)
- 3) Windshield wiper deicer (if equipped)

The vehicle is equipped with a rear

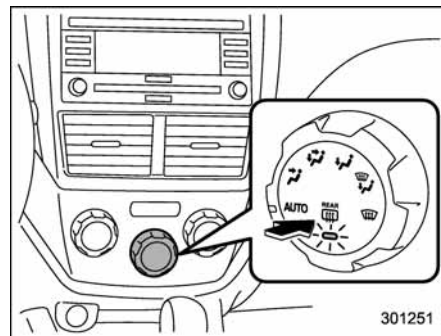
window defogger. For some models, the outside mirror defogger and/or windshield wiper deicer are/is also equipped. The defogger and deicer system is activated only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.



**Manual climate control system**



**Automatic climate control system (type A)**



**Automatic climate control system (type B)**

To activate the defogger and deicer system, push the control switch that is located on the climate control panel. The rear window defogger, outside mirror

defogger and windshield wiper deicer are activated simultaneously. The indicator light on the control switch illuminates while the defogger and deicer system is activated.

To turn them off, push the control switch again. They also turn off when the ignition switch is turned to the "Acc" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

The defogger and deicer system will automatically shut off after approximately 15 minutes. If the rear window and the outside mirrors have been cleared and the windshield wiper blades have been deiced completely before that time, push the control switch to turn them off. If defrosting, defogging or deicing is not complete, you have to push the control switch to turn them on again.

**For models with the automatic climate control system**, it is possible to set the defogger and deicer system for the continuous operation mode as follows.

- **Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:**

The settings can be changed for the continuous operation mode using the navigation monitor. For details, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.

The settings can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

- **Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:**

The settings can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.



### CAUTION

- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger and deicer system continuously for any longer than necessary.
- Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the rear window. They may damage the conductors printed on the window.

### NOTE

- Turn on the defogger and deicer system if the wipers are frozen to the windshield.
- If the windshield is covered with snow, remove the snow so that the windshield wiper deicer works effec-

tively.

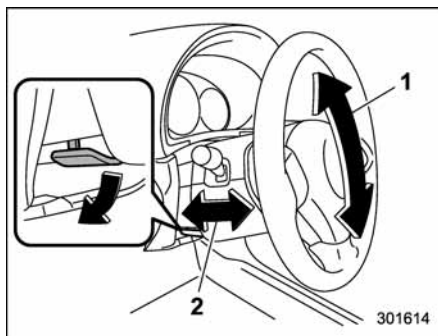
- While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the vehicle speed remains at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer automatically stops operating, though the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation in this condition.
- While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, continuous operation of the defogger and deicer system is canceled and the system stops operating.

## Tilt/telescopic steering wheel



### WARNING

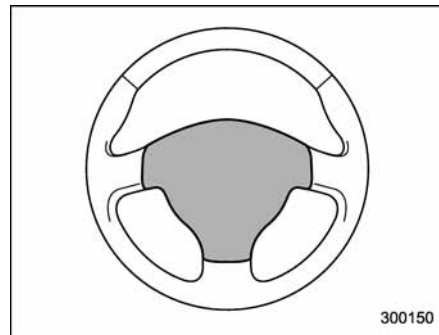
- Do not adjust the steering wheel tilt/telescopic position while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.
- If the lever cannot be raised to the fixed position, adjust the steering wheel again. It is dangerous to drive without locking the steering wheel. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.



- 1) Tilt adjustment
- 2) Telescopic adjustment

1. Adjust the seat position. Refer to "Front seats" 1-2.
2. Pull the tilt/telescopic lock lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the desired level.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.
5. Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked by moving it up and down, and forward and backward.

## Horn

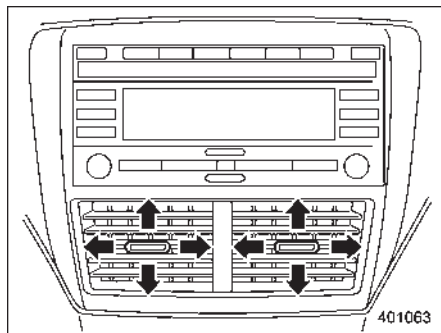


To sound the horn, push the horn pad.

|                                                 |     |                                                  |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Ventilator control</b> .....                 | 4-2 | <b>Defrosting</b> .....                          | 4-9  |
| Center ventilators.....                         | 4-2 | <b>Operating tips for heater and air</b>         |      |
| Side ventilators.....                           | 4-2 | <b>conditioner</b> .....                         | 4-10 |
| <b>Climate control panel</b> .....              | 4-3 | Cleaning ventilation grille.....                 | 4-10 |
| Type A.....                                     | 4-3 | Efficient cooling after parking in direct        |      |
| Type B.....                                     | 4-4 | sunlight.....                                    | 4-10 |
| Type C.....                                     | 4-5 | Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant   |      |
| <b>Automatic climate control system (type B</b> |     | circuit.....                                     | 4-10 |
| <b>and C) .....</b>                             | 4-6 | Checking air conditioning system before summer   |      |
| Type B.....                                     | 4-6 | season.....                                      | 4-10 |
| Type C.....                                     | 4-6 | Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and   |      |
| Temperature sensors.....                        | 4-7 | low temperature weather conditions.....          | 4-10 |
| <b>Manual climate control</b> .....             | 4-7 | Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine  |      |
| Airflow mode selection.....                     | 4-7 | is heavily loaded.....                           | 4-10 |
| Temperature control.....                        | 4-8 | Refrigerant for your climate control system..... | 4-11 |
| Fan speed control.....                          | 4-9 | <b>Air filtration system</b> .....               | 4-11 |
| Air conditioner control.....                    | 4-9 | Replacing an air filter.....                     | 4-11 |
| Air inlet selection.....                        | 4-9 |                                                  |      |

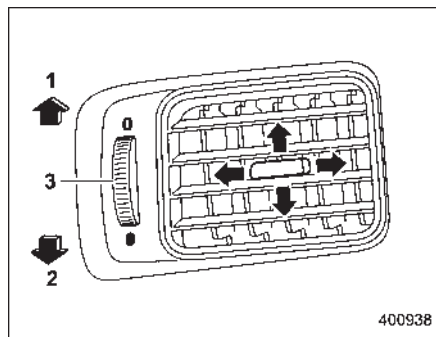
## Ventilator control

### ■ Center ventilators



Move the tab to adjust the flow direction.

### ■ Side ventilators



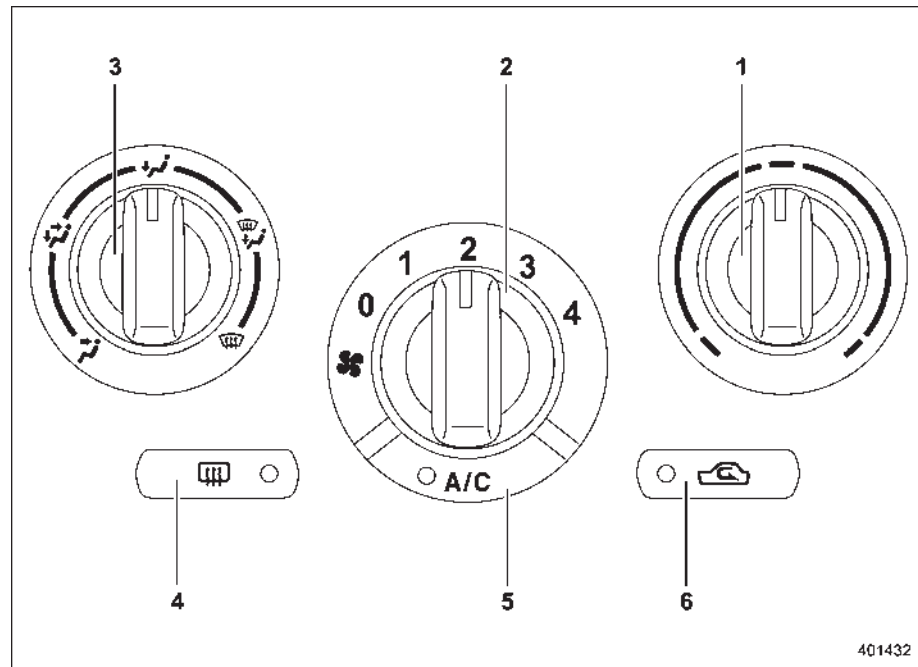
- 1) Open
- 2) Close
- 3) Thumb-wheel

Move the tab to adjust the flow direction.  
To open or close the ventilator, turn the thumb-wheel up or down.



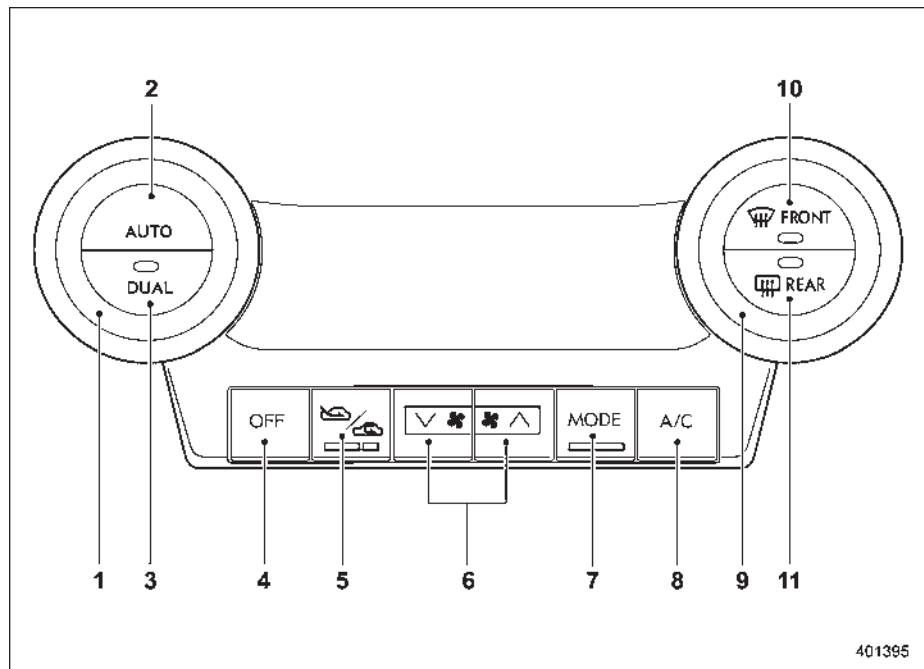
## Climate control panel

### ■ Type A



- 1) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Temperature control" ¶4-8.)
- 2) Fan speed control dial (Refer to "Fan speed control" ¶4-9.)
- 3) Airflow control dial (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" ¶4-7.)
- 4) Control switch of the defogger and deicer system (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" ¶3-50.)
- 5) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" ¶4-9.)
- 6) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" ¶4-9.)

## Type B

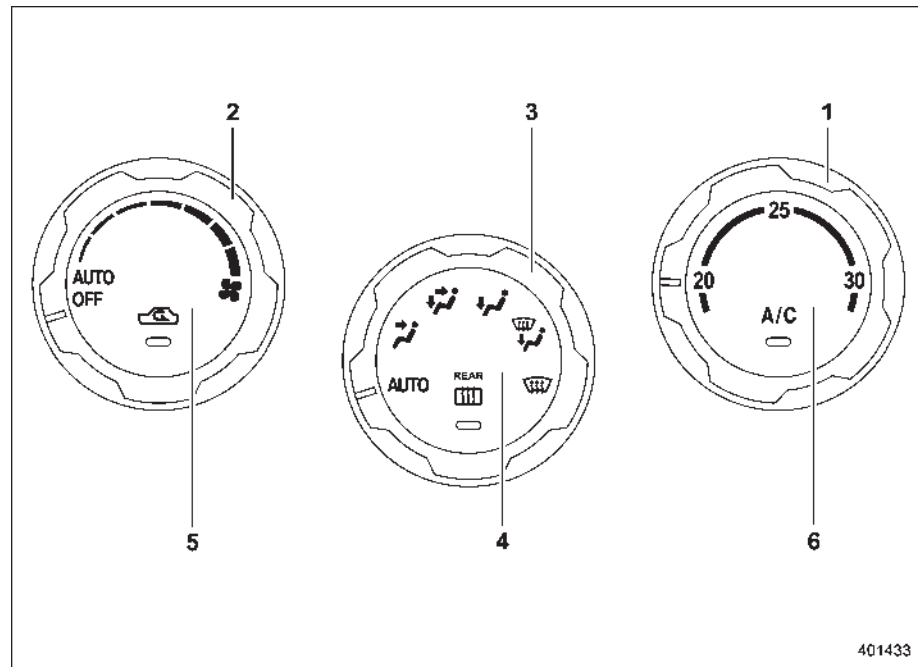


- 1) Temperature control dial (driver's side) (Refer to "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 2) AUTO button (Refer to "Automatic climate control system (type B and C)" 4-6.)
- 3) DUAL mode button (Refer to "Automatic climate control system (type B and C)" 4-6 and "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 4) OFF button (Refer to "Automatic climate control system (type B and C)" 4-6.)
- 5) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" 4-9.)
- 6) Fan speed control button (Refer to "Fan speed control" 4-9.)
- 7) Airflow mode selection button (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 8) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" 4-9.)
- 9) Temperature control dial (passenger's side) (Refer to "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 10) Defroster button (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7 and "Defrosting" 4-9.)
- 11) Rear window defogger button (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-50.)

## NOTE

For right-hand drive models, the dial positions and some of the button positions are the opposite of the illustrations.

## ■ Type C



- 1) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 2) Fan speed control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control system (type B and C)" 4-6 and "Fan speed control" 4-9.)
- 3) Airflow control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control system (type B and C)" 4-6, "Airflow mode selection" 4-7 and "Defrosting" 4-9.)
- 4) Control switch of the defogger and deicer system (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-50.)
- 5) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" 4-9.)
- 6) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" 4-9.)

### NOTE

The controllable temperature range may differ depending on the model.

## Automatic climate control system (type B and C)

When the automatic climate control mode is selected, the outlet air temperature, the fan speed, airflow distribution, air-inlet control and air conditioner compressor operation are automatically controlled.

To activate this mode, perform the following procedure.

### NOTE

**Operate the automatic climate control system when the engine is running.**

### ■ Type B

1. Set the preferred temperature using temperature control dial.
2. Press the "AUTO" button. The FULL AUTO mode is selected and the indicator light "FULL AUTO" on the display illuminates.

### NOTE

• When the "DUAL" button is pressed, separate temperature settings for the driver's side and passenger's side can be enabled (DUAL mode). To cancel the DUAL mode, press the "DUAL" button again. The temperature setting for the passenger's side becomes the same as

the setting for the driver's side.

• If you operate any of the buttons on the control panel other than the "OFF" button, rear window defogger button and temperature control dials during FULL AUTO mode operation, the indicator light "FULL" on the control panel will turn off and the indicator light "AUTO" will remain illuminated. You can then manually control the system as desired using the button you operated. To change the system back to the FULL AUTO mode, press the "AUTO" button.

3. To turn off the climate control system, press the "OFF" button.

### ■ Type C

1. Turn the airflow control dial and fan speed control dial to "AUTO" position.
2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

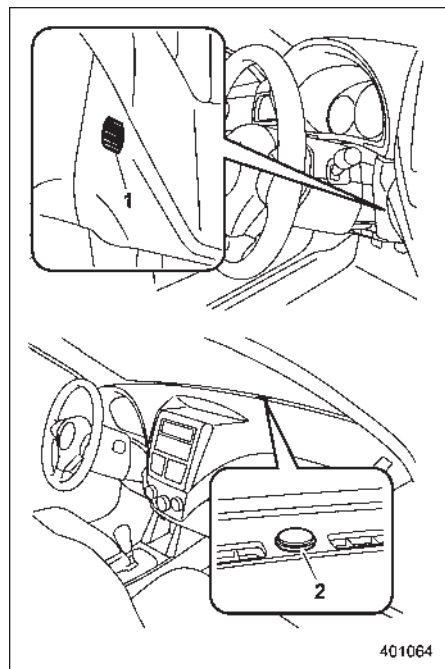
### NOTE

Each function can be individually set to AUTO mode independently of the others. Any function set to AUTO mode is controlled automatically. Any function not set to AUTO mode can be manually adjusted as desired.

3. To turn off the climate control system,

turn the fan speed control dial to the "OFF" position.

## ■ Temperature sensors



- 1) Interior air temperature sensor
- 2) Solar sensor

The automatic climate control system employs several sensors. These sensors are delicate. If they are not treated

properly and become damaged, the system may not be able to control the interior temperature correctly. To avoid damaging the sensors, observe the following precautions.

- Do not subject the sensors to impact.
- Keep water away from the sensors.
- Do not cover the sensors.

The sensors are located as follows.

- Solar sensor: beside the windshield defroster grille.
- Interior air temperature sensor: next to the steering column.
- Outside temperature sensor: behind the front grille.

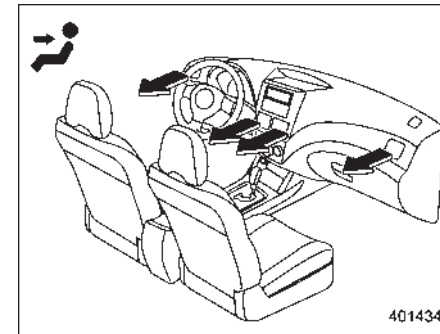
## Manual climate control

### ■ Airflow mode selection

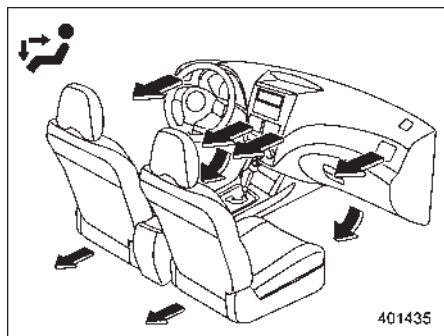
Select the preferred airflow mode by performing the following procedure.

- Turn the airflow control dial (type A and C)
- Press the airflow mode selection button or defroster button (type B)

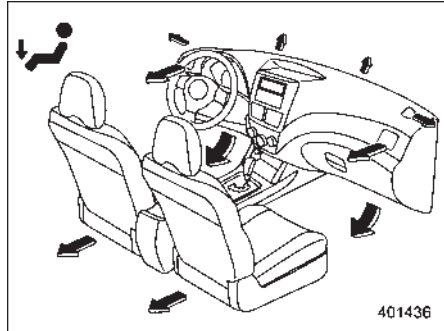
Airflow modes are as follows.



(Ventilation): Instrument panel outlets

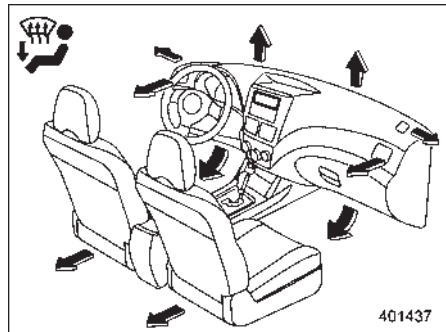


(Bi-level): Instrument panel outlets and the foot outlets

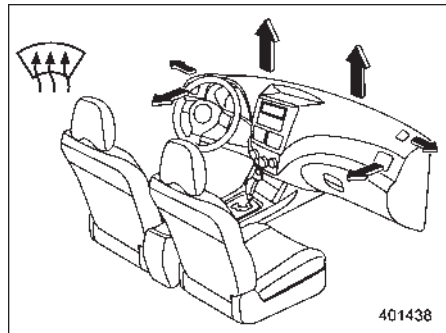


(Heat): Foot outlets, both side outlets of the instrument panel and some through windshield defroster outlets (A small amount of air flows to the windshield and

both side windows to prevent fogging.)



(Heat-def): Windshield defroster outlets, foot outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel



(Defrost): Windshield defroster outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel

## ■ Temperature control

### ▼ Type A

Turn the temperature control dial over a range from the blue side (cool) to red side (warm) to regulate the temperature of airflow from the air outlets.

### ▼ Type B and C

Turn the temperature control dial to set the preferred interior temperature. With the dial set to your preferred temperature, the system automatically adjusts the temperature of air supplied from the outlets such that the preferred temperature is achieved and maintained.

If the dial is turned fully counterclockwise, the system provides maximum cooling performance. If the dial is turned fully clockwise, the system provides maximum heating performance.

### NOTE

For type B, when the “DUAL” button is pressed, separate temperature settings for the driver’s side and passenger’s side can be enabled (DUAL mode). To cancel the DUAL mode, press the “DUAL” button again. The temperature setting for the passenger’s side becomes the same as the setting for the driver’s side.

## ■ Fan speed control

The fan operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Select the preferred fan speed by turning the fan speed control dial (type A and C), or by pressing the fan speed control buttons (type B).

## ■ Air conditioner control

The air conditioner operates only when the engine is running.

Press the air conditioner button while the fan is in operation to turn on the air conditioner. When the air conditioner is on, the "A/C" indicator light illuminates.

To turn off the air conditioner, press the button again.

### NOTE

**For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, turn on the air conditioner.**

## ■ Air inlet selection

Select the air inlet by pressing the air inlet selection button.

**ON position (recirculation):** Interior air is recirculated inside the vehicle. Press the air inlet selection button to the ON position for fast cooling with the air conditioner or

when driving on a dusty road. When the ON position is selected, the "⏏" indicator light illuminates.

**OFF position (outside air):** Outside air is drawn into the passenger compartment. Press the air inlet selection button to the OFF position when the interior has cooled to a comfortable temperature and the road is no longer dusty.



### WARNING

**Continued operation in the ON position may fog up the windows. Switch to the OFF position as soon as the outside dusty condition clears.**

## Defrosting

Select the desired "⏏" mode or "⏏" mode to defrost or dehumidify the windshield and front door windows by performing the following procedures.

For types A and C: Turn the airflow control dial and select the "⏏" mode or "⏏" mode.

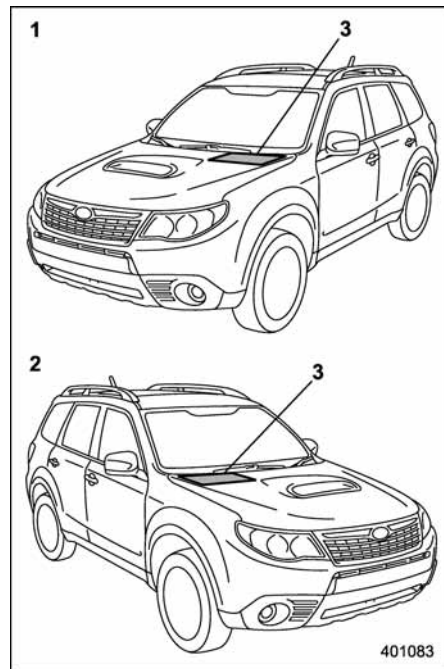
For type B: Press the airflow mode selection button to select the "⏏" mode or press the defroster button to select the "⏏" mode.

### NOTE

**When the "⏏" mode or "⏏" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defog the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode. For details, refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.**

## Operating tips for heater and air conditioner

### ■ Cleaning ventilation grille



- 1) Left-hand drive models
- 2) Right-hand drive models

### 3) Front ventilator inlet grille

Always keep the front ventilation inlet grille free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions to ensure efficient heating and defrosting. Since the condenser is located in front of the radiator, this area should be kept clean because cooling performance is impaired by any accumulation of insects and leaves on the condenser.

### ■ Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight

After parking in direct sunlight, drive with the windows open for a few minutes to allow outside air to circulate into the heated interior. This results in quicker cooling by the air conditioner. Keep the windows closed during the operation of the air conditioner for maximum cooling efficiency.

### ■ Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit

Operate the air conditioner compressor at a low engine speed (at idle or low driving speeds) a few minutes each month during the off-season to circulate its oil.

### ■ Checking air conditioning system before summer season

Check the air conditioner unit for refrigerant leaks, hose conditions, and proper operation each spring. We recommend that you have the air conditioning system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

### ■ Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions

Under certain weather conditions (high relative humidity, low temperatures, etc.) a small amount of water vapor emission from the air outlets may be noticed. This condition is normal and does not indicate any problem with the air conditioning system.

### ■ Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded

To improve acceleration and gas mileage, the air conditioner compressor is designed to temporarily shut off during air conditioner operation whenever the accelerator is fully depressed such as during rapid acceleration or when driving on a steep upgrade.



## ■ Refrigerant for your climate control system

Your air conditioner uses ozone friendly refrigerant HFC134a. Therefore, the method of adding, changing or checking the refrigerant is different from the method for CFC12 (freon). We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for service. Repairs needed as a result of using the wrong refrigerant are not covered under warranty.

## Air filtration system

Replace the filter element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3. The schedule should be followed to maintain the filter's dust collection ability. Under extremely dusty conditions, the filter should be replaced more frequently. It is recommended that you have your filter checked or replaced by your SUBARU dealer. For replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine SUBARU air filter kit.



### CAUTION

**We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if the following occurs, even if it is not yet time to change the filter.**

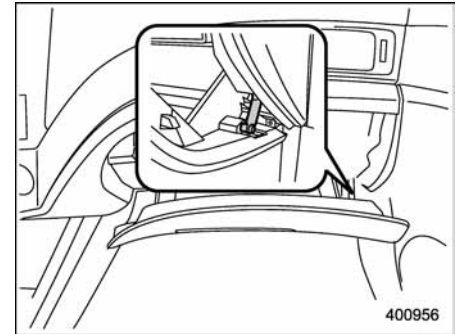
- Reduction of the airflow through the vents.
- Windshield gets easily fogged or misted.

### NOTE

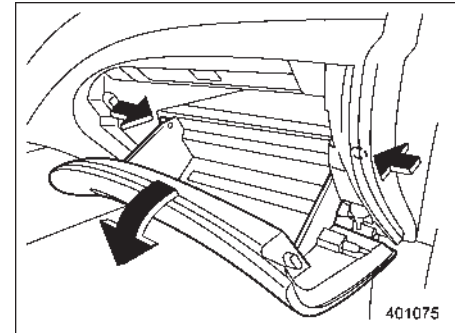
The filter can influence the air conditioning, heating and defroster performance if not properly maintained.

## ■ Replacing an air filter

1. Remove the glove box.
  - (1) Open the glove box.

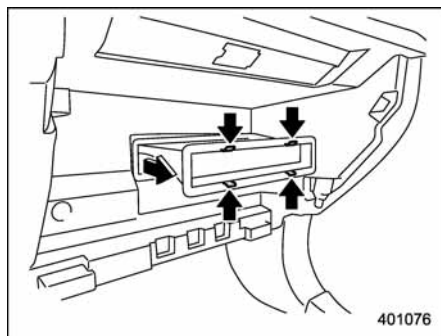


- (2) Remove the damper shaft from the glove box.

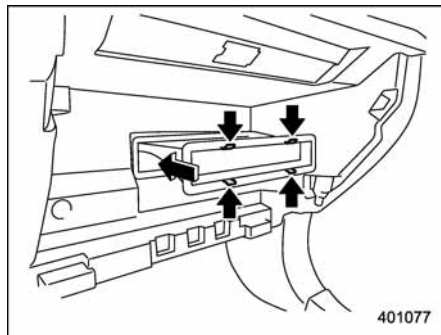


## 4-12 Climate control

(3) Push the stoppers located on the both sides of the glove box to remove the glove box.

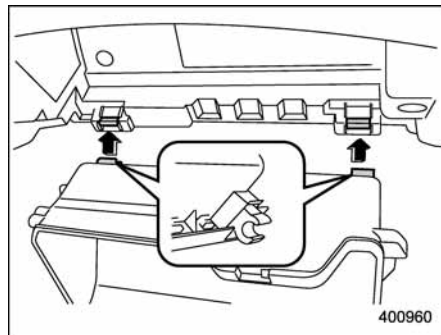


2. Remove the air filter.



3. Replace the air filter element with a

new one.

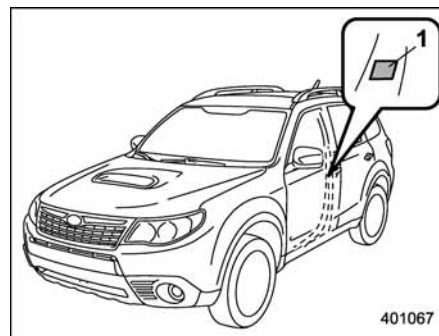


4. Reinstall the glove box, and connect the damper shaft.

5. Close the glove box.

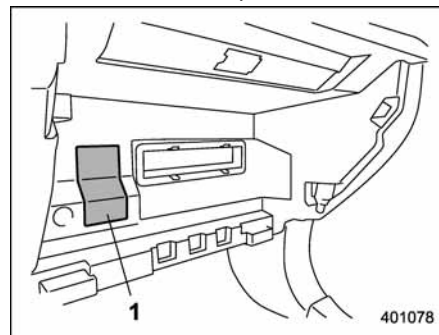
6. LABEL installation

(1) Fill out the information on the service label (small).



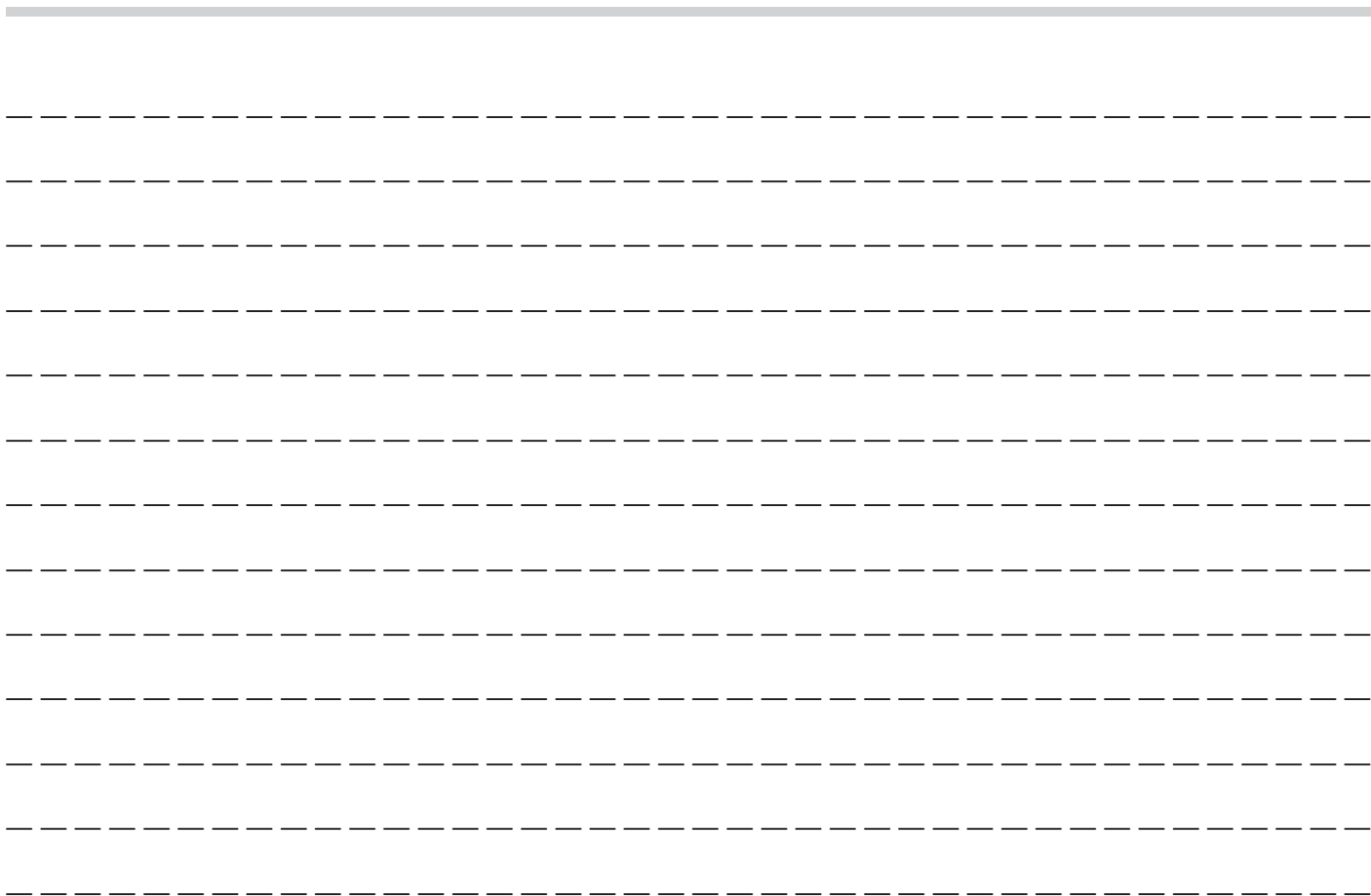
1) Service label

(2) Attach the service label to the driver's side door pillar.



1) Caution label

(3) Attach the caution label next to the air filter as shown in the illustration.



|                                                                              |      |                                                                           |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Antenna system</b> .....                                                  | 5-3  | <b>Random playback</b> .....                                              | 5-22 |
| Roof antenna .....                                                           | 5-3  | <b>Scan (type A, B, C and D audio)</b> .....                              | 5-23 |
| FM reception .....                                                           | 5-3  | <b>Display selection (type A, B, C and D audio)</b> .....                 | 5-24 |
| <b>Installation of accessories</b> .....                                     | 5-4  | <b>Folder selection</b> .....                                             | 5-24 |
| <b>Audio set</b> .....                                                       | 5-4  | <b>How to eject a CD from the player (type A, C, D and E audio)</b> ..... | 5-25 |
| Type A audio set (if equipped) .....                                         | 5-5  | <b>How to eject CDs from the player (type B audio)</b> .....              | 5-25 |
| Type B audio set (if equipped) .....                                         | 5-6  | <b>When the following messages are displayed</b> .....                    | 5-25 |
| Type C audio set (if equipped) .....                                         | 5-7  | <b>Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)</b> .....                           | 5-26 |
| Type D audio set (if equipped) .....                                         | 5-8  | <b>Precautions to observe when handling a compact disc</b> .....          | 5-27 |
| Type E audio set (if equipped) .....                                         | 5-9  | <b>USB storage device / iPod® operations (type D and E audio)</b> .....   | 5-29 |
| <b>Power and audio controls</b> .....                                        | 5-10 | Play file .....                                                           | 5-29 |
| Power switch and volume control .....                                        | 5-10 | Connectable USB storage device .....                                      | 5-29 |
| Sound controls and audio settings .....                                      | 5-10 | Connectable iPod® models .....                                            | 5-29 |
| Adjustable level of each mode .....                                          | 5-13 | Connecting USB storage device / iPod® .....                               | 5-30 |
| <b>FM/AM radio operation</b> .....                                           | 5-14 | How to play back .....                                                    | 5-31 |
| FM/AM selection (type A, B and D audio) .....                                | 5-14 | To select a track/index from its beginning .....                          | 5-31 |
| FM selection (type C and E audio) .....                                      | 5-14 | To select a chapter from its beginning when connecting iPod® .....        | 5-31 |
| AM selection (type C and E audio) .....                                      | 5-14 | Fast-forwarding and fast-reversing .....                                  | 5-31 |
| Tuning .....                                                                 | 5-14 | Repeating .....                                                           | 5-32 |
| Displaying radio PS (Program Service Name) (type A, B, C, and D audio) ..... | 5-17 | Random playback .....                                                     | 5-32 |
| Station preset .....                                                         | 5-17 | SCAN (only when connecting USB storage device) .....                      | 5-33 |
| <b>CD player operation</b> .....                                             | 5-18 | Selecting category (only when connecting iPod®) .....                     | 5-33 |
| Play file .....                                                              | 5-18 | Display selection .....                                                   | 5-33 |
| How to insert a CD (type A, C, D and E audio) .....                          | 5-19 | Folder selection (only when connecting USB storage device) .....          | 5-33 |
| How to insert a CD(s) (type B audio) .....                                   | 5-19 |                                                                           |      |
| How to play back a CD .....                                                  | 5-20 |                                                                           |      |
| To select a track from its beginning .....                                   | 5-20 |                                                                           |      |
| Fast-forwarding and fast-reversing .....                                     | 5-21 |                                                                           |      |
| Repeating .....                                                              | 5-21 |                                                                           |      |

|                                                                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Setting the playing speed (only when the audiobook is playing) (type E audio) ..... | 5-34        |
| When the following messages are displayed .....                                     | 5-34        |
| <b>Audio control buttons (if equipped).....</b>                                     | <b>5-35</b> |
| MODE button .....                                                                   | 5-35        |
| “^” and “v” buttons .....                                                           | 5-36        |
| Volume control buttons .....                                                        | 5-36        |
| MUTE button (models without Hands-free system).....                                 | 5-37        |
| <b>Bluetooth® audio (type D and E audio) .....</b>                                  | <b>5-37</b> |
| Media format.....                                                                   | 5-37        |
| Setting Bluetooth® audio .....                                                      | 5-37        |

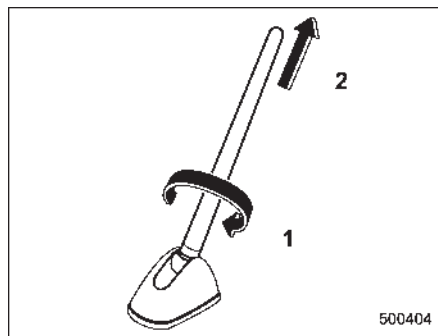
|                                              |             |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Bluetooth® audio operation .....             | 5-38        |
| <b>Hands-free system (if equipped) .....</b> | <b>5-39</b> |
| Tips for the Hands-free system .....         | 5-39        |
| Certification for the Hands-free system..... | 5-40        |
| Safety precautions.....                      | 5-40        |
| Using the Hands-free system .....            | 5-41        |
| Bluetooth® setting .....                     | 5-48        |
| <b>Screensaver (type E audio).....</b>       | <b>5-50</b> |
| Downloading picture .....                    | 5-50        |
| Selecting picture.....                       | 5-51        |
| Erasing picture .....                        | 5-51        |

## Antenna system

### ■ Roof antenna

#### CAUTION

- Be sure to lower the antenna rod before entering garages, parking towers and other locations with low ceilings.
- Remove the antenna rod before washing your car at a car wash. If the antenna rod is left attached, it may scratch the roof.
- When reinstalling the removed antenna rod, be sure to fully tighten it.



- 1) Unscrew
- 2) Remove

The roof antenna is installed in the center at the rear part of the roof.

The antenna rod can be folded down towards the front and rear of the vehicle. Extend the antenna rod when listening to the radio.

Unscrew the antenna rod base in order to remove the antenna rod.

### ■ FM reception

Although FM is normally static free, reception can be affected by the surrounding area, atmospheric conditions, station strength and transmitter distance. Buildings or other obstructions may cause momentary static, flutter or station interference. If reception continues to be unsatisfactory, switch to a stronger station.

## **Installation of accessories**

---

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a citizen band radio or other transmitting device in your vehicle. Such devices may cause the electronic control system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.

## **Audio set**

---

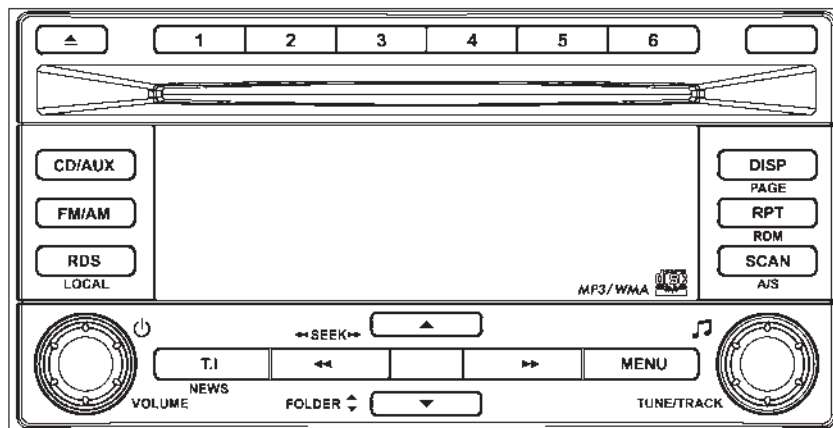
Your SUBARU may be equipped with one of the following audio sets. Refer to the pages indicated in this section for operating details.

### **NOTE**

- If a cell phone is placed near the audio set, it may cause the audio set to emit noise when the phone receives calls. This noise does not indicate an audio set malfunction. Note that a cell phone should be placed as far as possible from the audio set.
- The design may be slightly different from the following illustration depending on the model.



## ■ Type A audio set (if equipped)



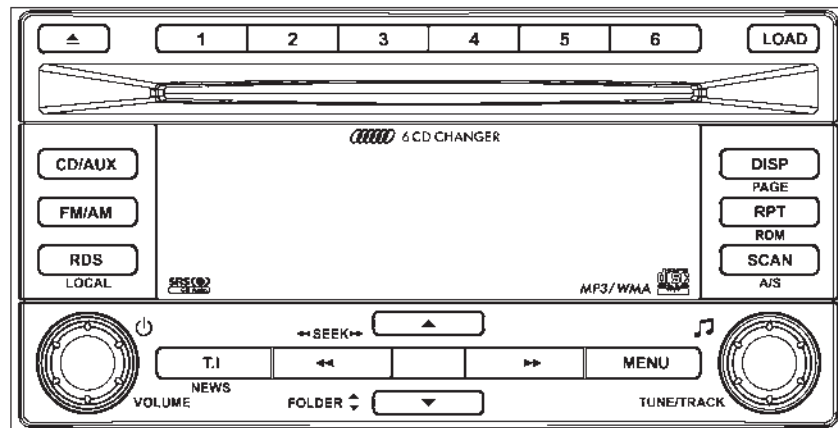
500432

The illustration shown is for a left-hand drive model. Some of the switch positions for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown.

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to page 5-10
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-14
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-18
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-26

## Type B audio set (if equipped)



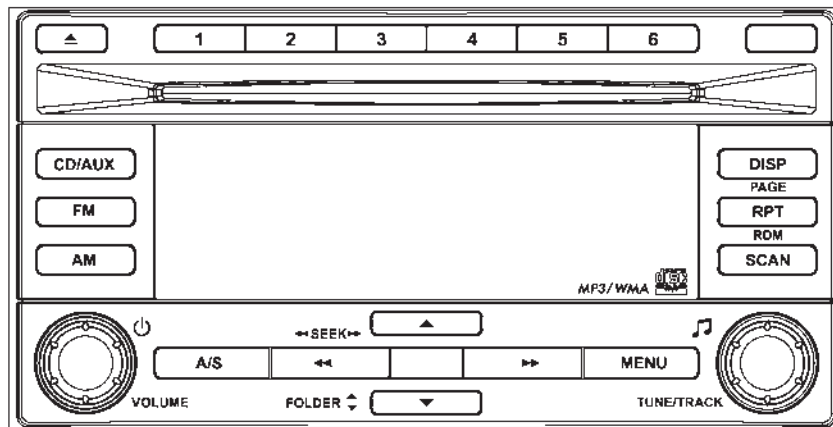
500433

The illustration above is for a left-hand drive model. Some of the switch positions for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown.

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to page 5-10
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-14
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-18
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-26

## ■ Type C audio set (if equipped)

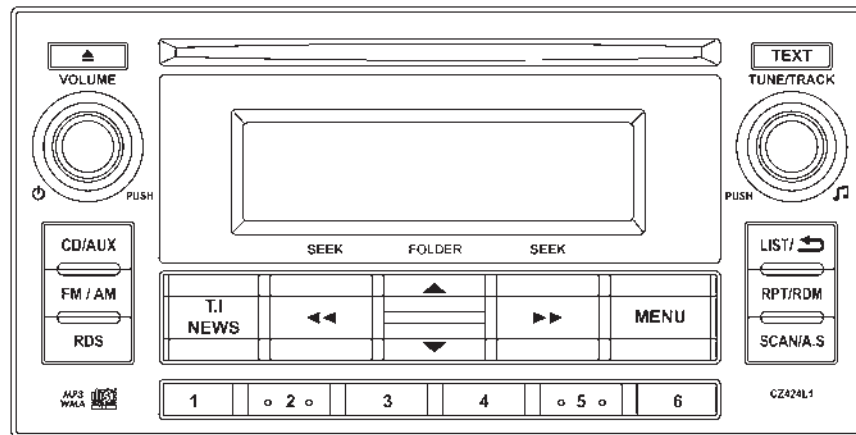


500434

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “Acc” or “ON” position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to page 5-10
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-14
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-18
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-26

## Type D audio set (if equipped)



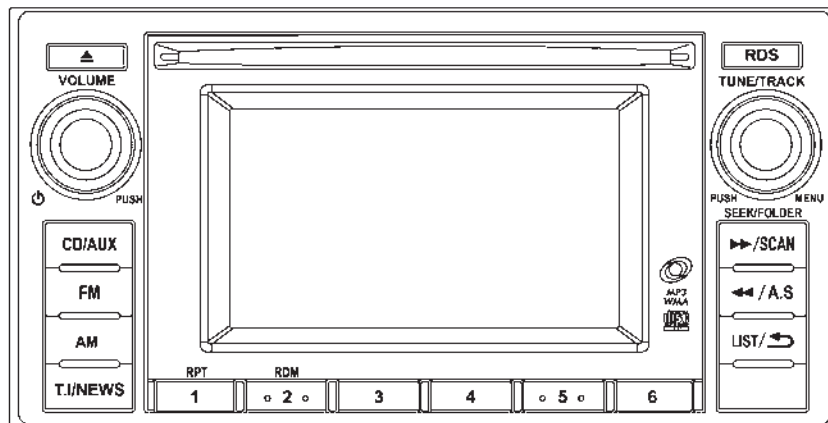
500536

The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. Some of the switch positions for right-hand drive models are the opposite of those shown.

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to page 5-10
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-14
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-18
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-26
- USB storage device/iPod® operation: refer to page 5-29
- Hands-free system: refer to page 5-39

## ■ Type E audio set (if equipped)



500588

The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. Some of the switch positions for right-hand drive models are the opposite of those shown.

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “Acc” or “ON” position.

- Power and audio controls: refer to page 5-10
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-14
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-18
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-26
- USB storage device/iPod® operation: refer to page 5-29
- Hands-free system: refer to page 5-39

## Power and audio controls

### ■ Power switch and volume control

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D and E audio    |  |

The dial is used for both power (ON/OFF) and volume control. The radio is turned ON and OFF by pushing the dial, and the volume is controlled by turning the dial.

### ■ Sound controls and audio settings

#### NOTE

● **SPEED VOLUME CONTROL** is a function that automatically adjusts the volume according to the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the audio volume automatically increases to match the vehicle speed, in order to create a pleasant listening environment even as the driving noise increases.

● For type B audio, SRS CS Auto is

equipped. SRS CS Auto creates a 5.1ch equivalent surround field using 6 or 7 speakers that are installed in the vehicle.

● For type E audio, SRS TruBass and FOCUS are equipped.

● SRS Sound features:

(1) Sound originating from door mount speakers can be heard at ear level (built in SRS FOCUS effect) (type B and E audio).

(2) Ultra rich bass sound can be obtained from standard door mount speakers (built in SRS TruBass effect) (type B and E audio).

(3) Surround sound can be obtained from 2-channel stereo sources such as CD, MP3 and FM (built in SRS Circle Surround II effect) (type B audio).

(4) SRS CS Auto can position the center channel image in the center of the vehicle's windshield. This eliminates the need for a center speaker (built in SRS Circle Surround II phantom center and SRS FOCUS effects) (type B audio).

● CS Auto, SRS and "SRS" symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

● CS Auto technology is incorporated under license from SRS Labs, inc.

● TruBass, FOCUS, SRS and "SRS" symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

● TruBass and FOCUS technologies are incorporated under license from SRS Labs, Inc.

**SRS**   
CS Auto

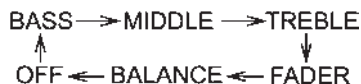
**SRS**   
TruBass

**SRS**   
FOCUS

### ▼ Tone and balance control (type A, B, C and D audio)

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

Each brief press of the “TUNE/TRACK” dial changes the control modes in the following sequence.



Choose the preferred level for each mode by turning the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.

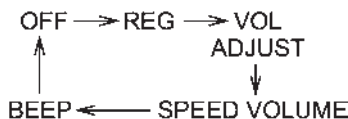
The control function returns to the tune/track/channel control mode after approximately 5 seconds.

### ▼ Other settings (type A, B, C and D audio)

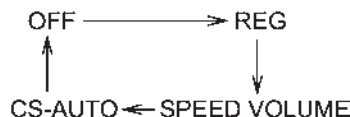
|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

Each brief press of the “MENU” button changes the control modes in the following sequence.

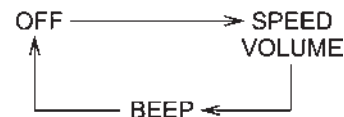
#### Type A audio:



#### Type B audio:



#### Type C audio:



#### Type D audio:



Choose the preferred settings for each mode by turning the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.

The control function returns to the tune/track control mode after approximately 5 seconds.

### ▼ Audio settings (type E audio)

1. Press the “TUNE/TRACK” dial to display “SETTING Menu”.
2. Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial to select the preferred menu. You can select the menu as shown in the following chart.

## 5-12 Audio

| First menu     | Second menu         | Third menu       |
|----------------|---------------------|------------------|
| Screen OFF     | —                   | —                |
| Sound          | Tone                | Bass             |
|                |                     | Mid              |
|                |                     | Treble           |
|                | Balance             | Balance          |
|                |                     | Fader            |
|                | SVC                 | —                |
|                | SRS Sound           | —                |
|                | Interrupt Volume    | —                |
| Screen         | Brightness          | —                |
|                | Contrast            | —                |
|                | Screen Size         | —                |
|                | Screen Saver        | Picture Select   |
|                |                     | Picture Download |
|                |                     | Picture Erase    |
| BT Audio Setup | Pair Audio Player   | —                |
|                | Select Audio Player | —                |
|                | Set Passkey         | —                |
|                | Delete Audio Player | —                |

|        |                  |   |
|--------|------------------|---|
| Others | Seek Sensitivity | — |
|        | Regional         | — |
|        | Initialize       | — |

3. Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial to select the preferred setting for each mode.

### NOTE

Only “Screen OFF” can be displayed while driving.



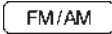
## ■ Adjustable level of each mode

| Mode             |                              | Range of levels (displayed) | Initial setting | Turn counterclockwise       | Turn clockwise              |
|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Volume           | Volume control               | 0 to 40                     | 15              | For less volume             | For more volume             |
|                  | AUX volume control*          | 0 to 40                     | 15              | For less volume             | For more volume             |
| Tone and balance | Bass control                 | -8 to +8                    | 0               | For less bass sound         | For more bass sound         |
|                  | Midrange control             | -8 to +8                    | 0               | For less midrange sound     | For more midrange sound     |
|                  | Treble control               | -8 to +8                    | 0               | For less treble sound       | For more treble sound       |
|                  | Balance                      | L9 to R9                    | 0               | Right channel attenuated    | Left channel attenuated     |
|                  | Fader                        | R9 to F9                    | 0               | Front attenuated            | Rear attenuated             |
|                  |                              |                             |                 |                             |                             |
| Other settings   | REG/Regional                 | OFF to ON                   | OFF             | OFF                         | ON                          |
|                  | VOL ADJUST (type A, D and E) | 0 to 40                     | 17              | For less volume             | For more volume             |
|                  | SPEED VOLUME                 | OFF to 2                    | OFF             | For less auto volume change | For more auto volume change |
|                  | BEEP (type A , C, D and E)   | OFF to ON                   | ON              | OFF                         | ON                          |
|                  | CS Auto (type B)             | OFF to ON                   | OFF             | OFF                         | ON                          |
|                  | SRS Sound (type E)           | OFF to ON                   | ON              | ON                          | OFF                         |
|                  | Interrupt volume (type E)    | 0 to 40                     | 17              | For less volume             | For more volume             |
|                  | Brightness (type E)          | 0 to 15                     | 8               | For less brightness         | For more brightness         |
|                  | Contrast (type E)            | 0 to 15                     | 8               | For less contrast           | For more contrast           |
|                  | Screen size (type E)         | Normal to Wide              | Wide            | Normal                      | Wide                        |
|                  | Seek sensitivity (type E)    | LO to DX                    | DX              | LO                          | DX                          |
|                  | Initialize (type E)          | Cancel to Initialize        | Cancel          | Initialize                  | Cancel                      |

\*: For type A, B and C audio, AUX volume can be adjusted only when an AUX audio product is connected.

## FM/AM radio operation

### ■ FM/AM selection (type A, B and D audio)

|                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A and B audio |  |
| Type D audio       |  |

Push the “FM/AM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

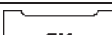
Push the “FM/AM” button when the radio is on to select the reception.

Each brief press of the “FM/AM” button changes the radio in the following sequence starting from the last radio band with you selected.

FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM (MW → LW)



### ■ FM selection (type C and E audio)

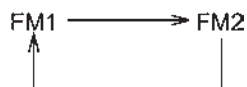
|              |                                                                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type C audio |  |
| Type E audio |  |

Push the “FM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

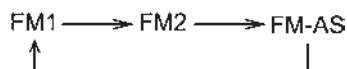
Push the “FM” button when the radio is on to select the reception.

Each time the “FM” button is briefly pressed the radio changes in the following sequence starting from the last radio band that you selected.

#### Type C audio:



#### Type E audio:



### ■ AM selection (type C and E audio)

|              |                                                                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type C audio |  |
| Type E audio |  |

Push the “AM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

#### ▼ Type C audio

Push the “AM” button when the radio is on to select AM reception starting from the last radio band and the last frequency interval that you selected.

#### ▼ Type E audio

Each time the “AM” button is briefly pressed the radio changes in the following sequence starting from the last radio band that you selected.



## ■ Tuning

### ▼ Manual tuning

|                       |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D and E audio    |  |

Turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial clockwise to increase the tuning frequency and turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial counterclockwise to decrease it.

Every time the dial is turned, the frequency interval is changed 9 kHz (10 kHz\*) in the MW mode, 3 kHz in the LW

mode and 0.05 MHz in the FM mode.

\*: For type C audio: The tuning frequency interval can be set to either 9 kHz or 10 kHz to suit the broadcasting area. Refer to "Tuning frequency interval change function for AM waveband (type C audio)" 5-15.

### ▼ Tuning frequency interval change function for AM waveband (type C audio)

Select the tuning frequency interval (9 kHz or 10 kHz) that is appropriate for the broadcasting area where the radio is used. To select an interval of 9 kHz, press the "1" preset button for 3 seconds while pressing the "AM" button. The display will show "9 kHz STEP".

To select an interval of 10 kHz, press the "2" preset button for 3 seconds while pressing the "AM" button. The display will show "10 kHz STEP".

### ▼ Stereo indicator

The stereo indicator "ST" (type A, B, C and D audio)/"STEREO" (type E audio) will illuminate when an FM stereo broadcast is received.

### ▼ Seek tuning (SEEK)

#### Type A, B and C audio:

|           |                                                                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Seek up   |  |
| Seek down |  |

#### Type D audio:

|           |                                                                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Seek up   |  |
| Seek down |  |

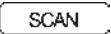
#### Type E audio:

|           |                                                                                   |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Seek up   |  |
| Seek down |  |

If you press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button briefly, the radio will automatically search for a receivable station and stop at the first one it finds. This function may not be available,

however, when radio signals are weak. In such a situation, perform manual tuning to select the desired station.

### ▼ Scan tuning (SCAN)

|                       |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |
| Type E audio          |  |

If you press the "SCAN" button briefly (type A, B, C and D audio)/continuously (type E audio), the radio will switch to the preset scan mode. In this mode, the radio scans through the preset channels until a station is found. The radio will stop at the station for 10 seconds while displaying the frequency, after which scanning will continue until all of the preset channels have been scanned.

Automatic scanning may not function properly if the station reception is weakened by distance from the station or proximity to tall buildings and hills.

### ▼ Local seek function (type A, B, D and E audio)

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and E audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

You can turn the local seek function on or off during FM, MW or LW reception by pressing the “RDS” button for at least 1.5 seconds.

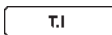
### ▼ Radio Data System (RDS) on FM

RDS is a system in which inaudible digital information is transmitted in addition to normal FM radio broadcasts. Your car radio uses the RDS information to offer you many benefits.

### ▼ Alternative Frequencies (AF)

If the vehicle moves beyond the area of the station that the radio is receiving and subsequently enters an area where the same station is available on a different frequency, the radio automatically searches that frequency. Push and hold the “RDS” button to change the ON and OFF mode of the alternative frequency (AF) searching function. The default setting is ON.

### ▼ Traffic information (T.I.) (type A, B, D and E audio)

|                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A and B audio |  |
| Type D audio       |  |
| Type E audio       |  |

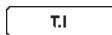
When a station begins broadcasting traffic information, this function causes the set to automatically receive it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the traffic information.

It is possible to turn the traffic information break-in function ON/OFF by pressing the “T.I./NEWS” button briefly.

When the audio power is OFF, pressing the “T.I./NEWS” button causes the audio power to turn ON and the traffic information break-in function to be turned ON.

The “TA” illuminates on the display (for “traffic announcements”) while the set is actually receiving traffic information.

### ▼ News bulletins (type A, B, D and E audio)

|                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A and B audio |  |
| Type D audio       |  |
| Type E audio       |  |

When a station begins broadcasting news, this function causes the set to automatically receive it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the news.

It is possible to turn the news bulletin break-in function ON/OFF by pressing the “T.I./NEWS” button for more than 0.5 second (type A, B and D audio)/1.5 seconds (type E audio).

When the audio power is OFF, pressing the “T.I./NEWS” button causes the audio power to turn ON and the news bulletin break-in function to be turned ON.

### NOTE

The initial setting of the break-in func-

tion is OFF.

### ▼ Emergency announcements (ALARM)

When a station begins broadcasting an emergency announcement, the set automatically receives it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the emergency announcement. This function is permanently ON.

### ■ Displaying radio PS (Program Service Name) (type A, B, C, and D audio)

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

If the PS (Program Service Name) is available, pressing the "DISP" button (type A, B and C audio)/"TEXT" button (type D audio) changes the display among PS and frequency. The initial setting is "PS".

### NOTE

The maximum number of characters that can be displayed for PS is 8.

### ■ Station preset

#### ▼ How to preset stations

1. Select FM1, FM2, FM3, AM (type A, B, C and D audio)/AM1 (type E audio) or AM2 (type E audio) reception.
2. Select the preferred station.
3. Press one of the preset buttons (from  to ) for more than 1.5 seconds to store the frequency. If the button is pressed for less than 1.5 seconds, the preceding selection will remain in the memory.

### NOTE

- UP to six FM1, FM2, FM3, AM (type A, B, C and D audio)/AM1 (type E audio) and AM2 (type E audio) stations each may be preset.
- If the connection between the radio and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or radio removal, all stations stored in the preset buttons are cleared. If this occurs, it is necessary to reset the preset buttons.
- If a cell phone is placed near the radio, it may cause the radio to emit noise when it receives calls. This noise does not indicate a radio malfunction.

#### ▼ Selecting preset stations

1. Select FM1, FM2, FM3, AM (type A, B, C and D audio)/AM1 (type E audio) or AM2 (type E audio) reception.
2. Press the desired preset button (from  to ) briefly.

#### ▼ Auto-store

##### Auto-store button:

|                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A and B audio |  |
| Type C audio       |  |
| Type D audio       |  |
| Type E audio       |  |

Using the Auto-store function, you can automatically store 6 stations on the current waveband by pressing the Auto-store button for more than 1.5 seconds. Use Auto-store to quickly find the strongest stations, for example when traveling through different reception areas.

## NOTE

● When you use Auto-store, the new stations replace any stations previously stored.

● Interrupting Auto-store: If you accidentally press the Auto-store button, you can cancel the Auto-store function before it has been completed as follows.

- switching to the other source mode
- switching to the other band
- turning the “TUNE/TRACK” dial
- pressing the “◀◀” or “▶▶” button

## ▼ Displaying and selecting preset stations (type E audio)

1. Press the  button briefly during AM/FM reception to display the radio screen.
2. Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial to select the stations.

## CD player operation

### NOTE

● Make sure to always insert a disc with the label side up. If a disc is inserted with the label side down, the player displays “CHECK DISC”. Refer to “When the following messages are displayed” 5-25.

● If a disc is inserted during a radio broadcast, the disc will interrupt the broadcast.

● After the last song finishes, the disc will automatically return to the first track on the disc (or the beginning of the next disc for type B audio) and will automatically play back.

● The player is designed to be able to play music CD-Rs and music CD-RWs, but it may not be able to play certain ones.

● CDs (i.e., 8 cm/3 inch CDs) are not supported, and if inserted, they will be immediately ejected.

● CDs that can be played back are accompanied by the following restrictions.

- Maximum number of folders: 255
- Maximum number of files in a folder: 255

– Maximum number of files on a CD: 510 (type A, B, C and D audio)/ 999 (type E audio)

## ■ Play file

### NOTE

● Copyright protected MP3/WMA/AAC files will not be played by the system. The player will automatically skip to the next file (track).

● WMA9 Lossless, WMA9 Professional and WMA9 voice cannot be played.

### MP3:

- Based on MPEG1, 2 and 2.5 Layer3
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32, 24, 22.05, 16, 12, 11.025, 8
- Bit rate (kbps): 8 to 320
- Supports variable bit rates

### WMA (type A, B, C and D audio):

- Based on Windows Media Audio 9
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32
- Bit rate (kbps): 32 to 192

### WMA (type E audio):

- Based on Windows Media Audio 7, 8 and 9
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32
- Bit rate (kbps): 32 to 192

**AAC (type D audio):**

- Based on MPEG4 AAC
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32, 24, 22.05, 16, 12, 11.025, 8
- Bit rate (kbps): 8 to 320
- Number of channels: 1 to 2ch

**AAC (type E audio):**

- Based on MPEG2 AAC and MPEG4 AAC
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32, 24, 22.05, 16, 12, 11.025, 8
- Bit rate (kbps): 8 to 320
- Number of channels: 1 to 2ch

**■ How to insert a CD (type A, C, D and E audio)**

Hold a disc with a finger in the center hole while gripping the edge of the disc, then insert it in to the slot (with the label side up) and the player will automatically pull the disc into position.

**NOTE**

**DO NOT INSERT TWO DISCS INTO THE DISC INSERTION SLOT AT THE SAME TIME.**

**■ How to insert a CD(s) (type B audio)**

1. Briefly press the **LOAD** button. If the magazine in the player has an idle position where you can insert a disc, the disc number indicator associated with the idle position will blink.

If no indicator blinks, it means that there is no idle position in the magazine.

2. When the "LOAD" indicator illuminates, insert the disc. Once you have inserted the disc, the "LOAD" indicator will turn off. The disc will then be automatically drawn in, and the player will begin to play back the first track of the disc.

- To insert more discs in succession, repeat steps 1 and 2. The magazine will be loaded with discs in the ascending order of position number.

If you do not insert any disc in 15 seconds after you have pressed the **LOAD** button, the player will begin to play back the first track of the last disc you have inserted.

- The disc indicator steadily lights up if a disc is already inserted in the corresponding position of the magazine.
- While the player is in the loading mode, if you press the **PAUSE** button, the player will enter the standby mode. Press the **CD/PAUSE** button to start playback.

**▼ Inserting a disc in a desired position**

1. Briefly press the **LOAD** button. If the magazine in the player has an idle position where you can insert a disc, the disc number indicator associated with the idle position will blink.

The positions in the magazine the indicator of which steadily lights up are already loaded with discs.

2. Press the disc select button at the position where you want to insert a disc.

3. When the "LOAD" indicator illuminates, insert the disc. Once you have inserted the disc, the "LOAD" indicator will turn off. The disc will then be automatically drawn in, and the player will begin to play the first track on the disc.

- If you wish to insert another disc, repeat the procedure beginning with step 1.

If you do not insert any disc in 15 seconds after you have pressed the **LOAD** button, the player will begin to play back the first track of the last disc you have inserted.

- While the player is in the loading mode, if you press the **PAUSE** button, the player will enter standby mode. Press the **CD/PAUSE** button to start playback.

### ▼ Loading all the magazine (full disc loading mode)

1. If you continue to press the **LOAD** button for more than 1.5 seconds, the player will produce beep sound and will enter the full disc loading mode.
2. When the disc number indicator flashes and "ALL LOAD" indicator illuminates, insert a disc within 15 seconds. If a disc is successfully loaded during this period, the disc number indicator will stop blinking and will steadily light.
3. When the loading of a disc is complete, the next disc number indicator will blink. Then repeat step 2.
4. When the magazine is filled with discs by repeating steps 2 and 3, the player will start playback of the discs, beginning with the one inserted first.

If you fail to insert any disc during each 15 seconds interval, the full disc loading mode will be canceled, and the player will start playback of the disc inserted first.

### ■ How to play back a CD

#### ▼ When there is no CD inserted

Properly insert a CD. Refer to "How to insert a CD (type A, C, D and E audio)" 5-19 / "How to insert a CD(s) (type B audio)" 5-19.

When a CD is loaded, the player will start playback of the CD, beginning with the first track.

#### ▼ When a CD is in the player (type A and C audio)

When the **CD/AUX** button is pressed, the player will start playback.

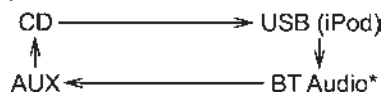
#### ▼ When there are CDs loaded (type B audio)

Press a desired one of the disc select buttons (from **1** to **6**) the disc number indicator of which steadily lights up. The player will then start playback of the selected CD, beginning with the first track.

If a disc that the player cannot read has been loaded, the player will display the message "CHECK DISC".

#### ▼ When a CD is in the player (type D and E)

Each brief press of the **CD/AUX** button changes the modes in the following sequence.



\*: For type D audio, "BT-A" is displayed.

When the CD mode is selected, the player will start playback.

### ■ To select a track from its beginning

|                       |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D and E audio    |  |

Turn the "TUNE/TRACK" dial clockwise to skip to the beginning of the next track/file (track). Each time the dial is turned, the indicated track/file (track) number will increase.

Turn the "TUNE/TRACK" dial counter-clockwise to skip to the beginning of the current track/file (track). Each time the dial is turned, the indicated track/file (track) number will decrease.

### NOTE

**With an MP3, WMA or AAC (type D and E audio):**

- **Skipping past the last track/file will take you back to the first track/file in the folder.**
- **Skipping past the first track/file will take you to the last track/file in the folder.**



## ■ Fast-forwarding and fast-reversing

### ▼ Fast-forwarding

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |
| Type E audio          |  |

Press the "▶▶" button continuously to fast-forward the disc/folder.

Release the button to stop fast-forwarding.

### NOTE

If you fast-forward to the end of the last track/file, fast-forwarding will stop and the player will start playback beginning with the first track/file. In an MP3, WMA or AAC (type D and E audio) folder, the player will start playback beginning with the first track/file of the current folder.

### ▼ Fast-reversing

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |
| Type E audio          |  |

Press the "◀◀" button continuously to fast-reverse the disc/folder.

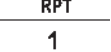
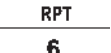
Release the button to stop fast-reversing.

### NOTE

If you fast-reverse to the beginning of the first track/file, fast-reversing will stop and the player will start playback. In an MP3, WMA or AAC folder (type D and E audio), the player will start playback beginning with the first track/file of the current folder.

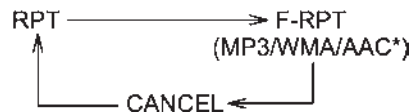
## ■ Repeating

To repeat a track/file, briefly press the following button (repeat button) while the track/file is playing.

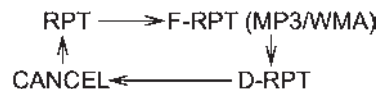
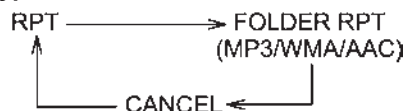
|                                        |                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio                  |  |
| Type D audio                           |  |
| Type E audio (left-hand drive models)  |  |
| Type E audio (right-hand drive models) |  |

Each time you briefly press the button, the mode changes in the following sequences.

### Type A, C and D audio:



\*: Type D audio only

**Type B audio:****Type E audio:****NOTE**

- The “RPT” (type A, B, C and D audio)/“ONE RPT” (type E audio) indication refers to the repeat playback of a single track. It repeats the track that is playing.
- The “F-RPT” (type A, B, C and D audio)/“Folder RPT” (type E audio) indication refers to the repeat playback of a folder. It repeats the all of the tracks in the folder. It is possible to select the function when the MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing.
- The “D-RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of a disc. It repeats all of the tracks on the CD. It is only possible to select this function for type B audio.

To cancel the track/file (track) repeat-play mode, briefly press the “RPT” button and select CANCEL. The “RPT” indication will

turn off, and the normal playback mode will be resumed.

**NOTE**

The repeat-play mode will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

- Press the “RPT” button and select CANCEL
- Press the “▲” button
- Press the disc select button (type B audio)
- Press the “SCAN” button (type A, B, C and D audio)
- Press the **LOAD** button when there is free space in the CD magazine (type B audio)

**Random playback**

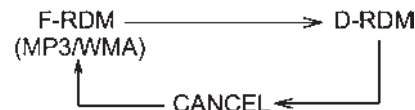
To playback a track/file(s) at random, press the following button (random button) while the track/file is playing.

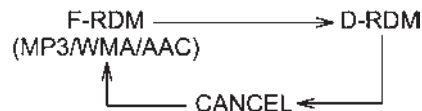
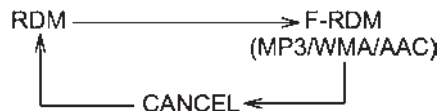
|                                          |  |
|------------------------------------------|--|
| Type A, B and C audio*1                  |  |
| Type D audio*1                           |  |
| Type E audio (left-hand drive models)*2  |  |
| Type E audio (right-hand drive models)*2 |  |

\*1: Press the button for 0.5 second or longer.

\*2: Briefly press the button.

Each time you press the button, the mode changes in the following sequences.

**Type A, B and C audio:**

**Type D audio:****Type E audio:****NOTE**

- The “RDM” (type A, B, C and D audio)/“Track RDM” (type E audio) indication refers to random playback of tracks. The system randomly repeats the tracks on the CD. It is possible to select the function when formats other than the MP3/WMA/AAC format CD is playing.
- The “F-RDM” (type A, B, C and D audio)/“Folder RDM” (type E audio) indication refers to random playback in the folder. The system randomly repeats the tracks in the folder. It is possible to select the function when an MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing.
- The “D-RDM” indication refers to the random playback of a disc. It randomly repeats all of the tracks on the CD. It is possible to select the function when an

**MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing.**

To cancel the random playback mode, press the “RDM” button again and select CANCEL.

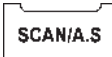
The “RDM” indication will turn off, and the normal playback mode will be resumed.

**NOTE**

Random playback will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

- Press the “RPT” button and select CANCEL
- Press the “▲” button
- Press the disc select button (type B audio)
- Press the “SCAN” button (type A, B, C and D audio)
- Press the  button when there is free space in the CD magazine (type B audio)

### ■ Scan (type A, B, C and D audio)

|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

The scan mode lets you listen to the first

10 seconds of each track/file in succession. Press the “SCAN” button to start scanning upward beginning with the track/file(s) following the currently selected one. After all track/file(s) in the disk/folder have been scanned, normal playback will be resumed. To cancel the scan mode, press the “SCAN” button again.

**NOTE**

The scan mode will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

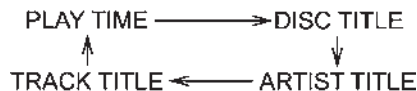
- Press the “RPT” button
- Turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial
- Press the “▼” or “▲” side of the “FOLDER” button
- Press the “▲” button
- Press the disc select button (type B audio)
- Select a mode other than CD mode
- Press the  button when there is free space in the CD magazine (type B audio)
- Turn off the power of the audio equipment
- Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position

## ■ Display selection (type A, B, C and D audio)

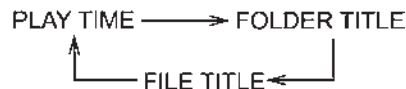
|                       |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D audio          |  |

If you press the “DISP” (type A, B and C audio) or “TEXT” button (type D audio) during playback, the indication will change to the next one in the following sequence.

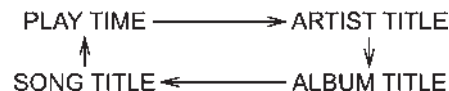
### For CD-DA:



### For MP3/WMA/AAC:



### For iPod®:



## ▼ Page (track/folder title) scroll

If you press the “DISP” (type A, B and C audio) or “TEXT” button (type D audio) again for at least 0.5 second, the title will be scrolled so you can see all of it.

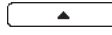
## NOTE

- For type A, B and C audio, the display is designed to show titles for up to 24 characters.
- For type D audio, the display is designed to show titles as shown in the following items.
  - When playing a CD-DA: 256 characters
  - When playing an MP3/WMA/AAC: 64 characters
  - When playing an iPod®: 255 characters
- If no operations are performed for 10 seconds, the screen that was displayed before pressing the “DISP” (type A, B and C audio) or “TEXT” (type D audio) button for more than 0.5 second will be shown.

## ■ Folder selection

Press the following buttons briefly.

### Type A, B and C audio:

|                                   |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To select the next folder         |  |
| To go back to the previous folder |  |

### Type D audio:

|                                   |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To select the next folder         |  |
| To go back to the previous folder |  |

### Type E audio:

|                                   |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To select the next folder         |  |
| To go back to the previous folder |  |

## NOTE

- Selecting folders in this way is possible only within a single disc.
- Only MP3/WMA/AAC folders are recognized when an attempt to select the next or previous folder is made. If no

appropriate folder exists on the disc, pressing the “▲” or “▼” side of the “FOLDER” button starts playback beginning with the first track/file (track).

### ■ How to eject a CD from the player (type A, C, D and E audio)

When a disc is being played back or when a disc is in the player, press the eject button . The disc will be ejected.

#### NOTE

- Avoid driving the vehicle with a CD sticking out, because vibration might make it fall out.
- If the disc is left ejected for more than approximately 15 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, a disc protection function will operate, automatically reloading the disc. In this case, the disc is not played.

### ■ How to eject CDs from the player (type B audio)

#### ▼ Ejecting a CD from the player

Of the discs loaded, you can select and remove only one disc.

1. Use the disc select button (from )

to ) to select the disc to be ejected.

2. Briefly press the  button. The selected disc will be ejected. The disc number indicator will flash at this time. When you remove the ejected disc, the disc number indicator will turn off.

To remove more discs in succession, repeat steps 1 and 2.

#### ▼ Ejecting all discs from the player (all disc ejection mode)

1. If you continue to press the  button, the player will produce beep sound and will enter the all disc ejection mode. At this time, the disc number indicator and “ALL EJECT” indicator will flash.
2. Remove the disc that has been ejected. The other discs loaded will then be ejected one after another. If you do not remove the disc that has been ejected, the “All disc ejection mode” will be canceled.

#### NOTE

- Avoid driving the vehicle with a CD sticking out, because vibration might make it fall out.
- If you press the  button while the player is in all disc ejection mode, the mode will be cancelled following ejection of the disc that is currently being ejected.

- If you press the  button or  button while the player is in all disc ejection mode, the player will draw in the discs that have been ejected and play them.

### ■ When the following messages are displayed

If one of the following messages is displayed while operating the CD player, determine the cause based on the following information. If you cannot clear those messages, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

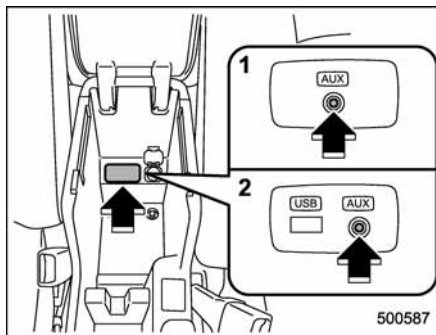
#### ▼ When “PUSH EJECT” is displayed

Press the  button to unload the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation, and also check that the correct disc is inserted. Do not try to unload the disc forcibly. Single CDs (i.e., 8 cm/3 inch CDs) are not supported, and if inserted, they will be immediately ejected and this message will be displayed. If the disc cannot be unloaded or this message remains displayed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## ▼ When “CHECK DISC” is displayed

Press the  button to unload the discs. Check that the disc is not damaged or scratched, and also check that the disc is inserted correctly. This message may appear when using some CD-RW discs. Check that the disc type (i.e., 8 cm/3 inch CDs are not supported) and data format are correct. This player can only play MP3, WMA (all models) and AAC (type D and E audio) data formats. If the disc cannot be unloaded or this message remains displayed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)



- 1) Models without Hands-free system
- 2) Models with Hands-free system

By connecting a commercial audio product to the vehicle, such as a portable audio player, you can hear its sound via the vehicle's speakers.

An auxiliary (AUX) input jack is present in the center console. A stereo mini pin plug (3.5ø) can be inserted in this jack. The connection cable is available at electrical appliance or similar stores.

### To use the AUX input jack:

1. Connect a portable audio player to the AUX input jack.

|                       |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type A, B and C audio |  |
| Type D and E audio    |  |

2. Press the “CD/AUX” button on the audio control panel to turn on the auxiliary audio input.

3. Play back the portable audio player. Refer to the Owner's Manual for the portable audio player.

## NOTE

- The AUX input jacks of models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system are the RCA type. For detailed information, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.

- The output sound of the portable audio player is not loud, and the sound via the vehicle's speakers that are connected to the vehicle audio set may be very low. If you turn up the volume of the audio set, the volume becomes louder. However, when you change from one portable audio player to another one, the volume levels via the vehicle's speakers may be significantly louder compared to the prior

device. To avoid a large volume difference, turn down the volume when you change between portable audio players.

- In some cases, when the sound volume of the portable audio player is low, the sound becomes bad when you turn up the volume of the vehicle audio system. In this case, adjust the sound volume of the portable audio player.

- In some cases, noise occurs because of a bad connection between the portable player and the vehicle audio system. Try cleaning the stereo jack and audio plug.

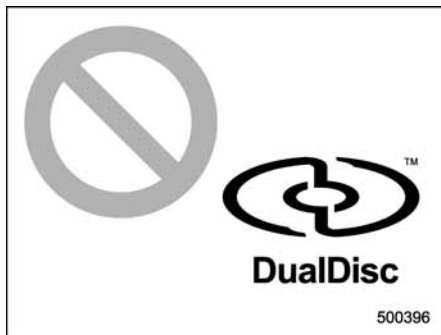
- If noise is not reduced, check for disconnection of the cord or malfunctions of the portable player.

## **Precautions to observe when handling a compact disc**

Use only compact discs (CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs) that have the mark shown in the following. Also, some compact discs cannot be played.



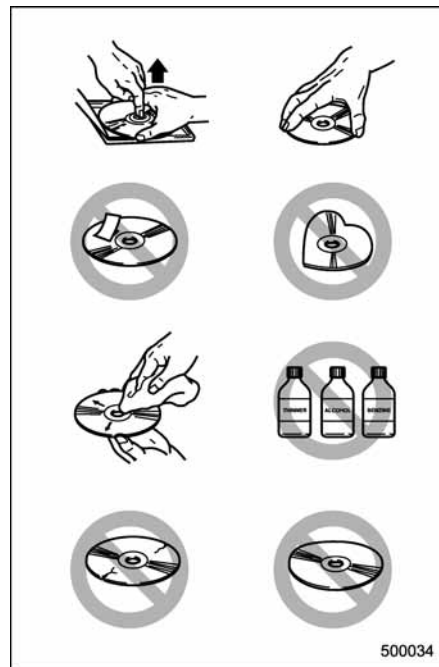
500090



- You cannot use a DualDisc in the CD player. If you insert a DualDisc into the player, the disc may not come out again, possibly causing the player to malfunction.
- In cold and/or rainy weather, dew can form inside the CD player, preventing normal operation. If this happens, eject the CD and wait for the player to dry out.
- Skipping may occur when the CD player is subjected to severe vibration (for example, when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface).
- To remove a disc from the case, press the center of the case and hold both edges of the disc. If the disc surface is touched directly, contamination could cause poor tone quality. Do not touch the disc surface.
- Use a clean disc whenever possible. If

there are deposits, wipe the disc surface from the center outward with a dry, soft cloth. Be sure not to use a hard cloth, thinner, benzine, alcohol, etc.

- Do not use any disc that is scratched, deformed, or cracked. Also, do not use any disc that has a non-standard shape (for example, a heart shape). Malfunctions or problems might result.
- A disc is vulnerable to heat. Never keep it in places exposed to direct sunlight or near heaters. Also, never leave a disc in a vehicle that is parked in the sun or outside on hot days.
- Insert discs one by one into the CD player (type B audio).





## USB storage device / iPod® operations (type D and E audio)

### ■ Play file

Refer to “Play file” 5-18.

### ■ Connectable USB storage device

Mass storage class USB memory can be connected. USB storage devices that can be played back are accompanied by the following restrictions.

- Maximum directory layers: 8 layers (including the ROOT)
- Maximum number of files in a folder: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 512 (type D audio)/255 (type E audio) (including the ROOT)
- Maximum number of files in the device: 130,560 (type D audio)/2,500 (type E audio)

### NOTE

- HUB class USB memory cannot be played.
- ATAPI subclass USB cannot be played.
- For type D audio, High Speed USB 2.0 cannot be played.

- A USB memory that is powered by a source other than the USB power supply (for example, an AC power adapter, etc.) cannot be operated.
- A USB memory that is connected to the memory card reader or multi card reader cannot be operated.
- If the USB memory consists of two drives or more, the system will recognize only one of the drives after connecting the USB memory.
- The contents stored in the USB memory may not be played in the same order as they appear on a personal computer.
- A personal computer cannot be used even if it is connected to the system using a USB cable.
- If the USB memory has a security function, the contents stored in the USB memory cannot be played by the system.
- A USB memory and an iPod® cannot be connected to the system at the same time.

## ■ Connectable iPod® models Type D audio:

| Model   |          | Firmware version |
|---------|----------|------------------|
| iPod®   | 5G       | 1.3              |
|         | 5.5G     | 1.3              |
|         | classic  | 2.0.4            |
|         | nano 2G  | 1.1.3            |
|         | nano 3G  | 1.1.3            |
|         | nano 4G  | 1.0.4            |
|         | nano 5G  | 1.0.2            |
|         | touch 1G | 3.1.2            |
| iPhone® | touch 2G | 3.1.2            |
|         | 1G       | 3.1.2            |
|         | 3G       | 3.1.2            |
|         | 3G S     | 3.1.2            |

## Type E audio:

|         | Model    | Firmware version |
|---------|----------|------------------|
| iPod®   | 5G       | 1.3              |
|         | classic  | 2.0.4            |
|         | nano     | 1.3.1            |
|         | nano 2G  | 1.1.3            |
|         | nano 3G  | 1.1.3            |
|         | nano 4G  | 1.0.4            |
|         | touch    | 3.1.3            |
|         | touch 2G | 3.1.3            |
| iPhone® | 1G       | 3.1.3            |
|         | 3G       | 3.1.3            |
|         | 3G S     | 3.1.3            |

**CAUTION**

Do not connect an iPod® other than the previously stated models. Doing so may result in a malfunction or, depending on conditions, cause a fire.

**NOTE**

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- You are only permitted to personally copy and play copyright-free material

or material that is legally permitted to be copied and played by using an iPod® and iTunes. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.

- To check the firmware version of an iPod®, connect it to a computer and check the device manager. For further information, see the User's Guide that comes with the iPod®
- To update the firmware version of an iPod®, visit the Apple Inc. website.
- Depending on the model and firmware version of an iPod®, it may not work properly or not operate at all.

### ■ Connecting USB storage device / iPod®

**WARNING**

Do not operate an iPod® while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident.

**CAUTION**

- If the data stored in an iPod® is deleted while it is connected to the in-vehicle system, the data cannot be recovered.

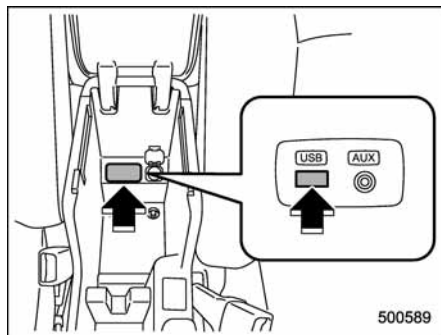
- Do not store an iPod® in the vehicle. If an iPod® is left in the vehicle for a long period of time, it may be deformed, discolored or damaged by high temperature.

**NOTE**

- Even if a USB storage device or iPod® is connected, it cannot be played unless the CD/AUX button is pressed.
- A movie cannot be played while an iPod® is connected.
- While an iPod® is connected, the iPod® cannot be operated using the click wheel on the iPod® (except some models).
- When using an iPod® by connecting it to in-vehicle equipment, the order of the list items displayed on the in-vehicle equipment may be different from that on the iPod®. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.
- An iPod® battery that is connected to in-vehicle equipment will be charged when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position. However, activation of the iPod® may be delayed if the battery charge of the iPod® is low.
- If an iPod® does not activate after operation, disconnect the connection cable from the iPod® and reset it. For the resetting procedure, see the User's

Guide that comes with the iPod®.

- If an iPod® and the connection cable are connected improperly, the iPod® cannot be powered on or will not be recognized by in-vehicle equipment. In this case, disconnect the connection cable from the iPod®, and then connect it again.

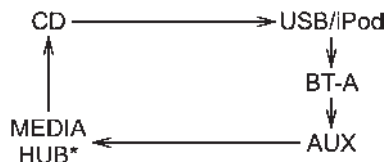


The USB connector is located in the center console. Use the connector to connect a USB storage device/iPod®.

## ■ How to play back

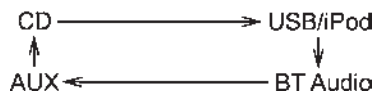
1. Connect a USB storage device/iPod®.
2. Press the **CD/AUX** button. Each time you briefly press the button, the mode changes in the following sequence.

Type D audio:



\*: Only when a Media Hub is connected.

Type E audio:



When the USB/iPod® mode is selected, the player will start playback of the USB storage device/iPod®.

## NOTE

- Depending on the number of files stored in an iPod® and the firmware version, the iPod® may not activate smoothly after operation or not work properly.
- Do not disconnect the connector from an iPod® during iPod® operation.

## ■ To select a track/index from its beginning

Select a track/index in the same way that a track is selected when a CD is played. For details, refer to “To select a track from its beginning” 5-20.

## ■ To select a chapter from its beginning when connecting iPod®

While podcasts or audiobooks are playing, select a chapter in the same way that a track is selected when a CD is played. For details, refer to “To select a track from its beginning” 5-20.

## ■ Fast-forwarding and fast-reversing

Fast forward or reverse is operated in the same way a CD is played. For details, refer to “Fast-forwarding and fast-reversing” 5-21.

## NOTE

When connecting iPod®:

- When the end of an index is reached while fast forwarding, fast forwarding ends and play begins from the beginning of the next index.
- When the beginning of an index is reached while rewinding, rewinding

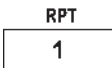
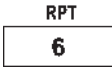
ends and play begins from the beginning of the index.

## ■ Repeating

### ▼ When connecting USB storage device

Repeating is operated in the same way a CD is played. For details, refer to “Repeating” 5-21.

### ▼ When connecting iPod®

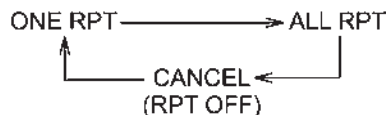
|                                        |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type D audio                           |  |
| Type E audio (left-hand drive models)  |  |
| Type E audio (right-hand drive models) |  |

Each time you briefly press the “RPT” button, the mode changes in the following sequence.

#### Type D audio:

ALL RPT ↔ SONG RPT

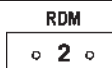
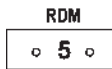
#### Type E audio:



### NOTE

- The “ALL RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of all indexes in the entire iPod®.
- The “SONG RPT” (type D audio)/“ONE RPT” (type E audio) indication refers to the repeat playback of a single index. It repeats the index that is playing.
- When an audiobook is playing, the mode does not change even if you press the “RPT” button.

## ■ Random playback

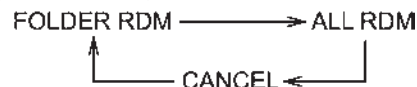
|                                        |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Type D audio                           |  |
| Type E audio (left-hand drive models)  |  |
| Type E audio (right-hand drive models) |  |

To playback a track/index/file(s) at random, press the “RDM” button for 0.5

second or longer (type D audio)/briefly (type E audio) while the track/index/file is playing.

Each time you press the button, the mode changes in the following sequence.

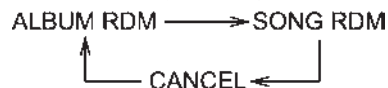
#### When connecting USB storage device (type D audio):



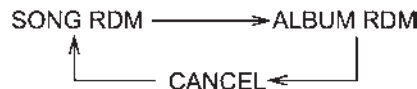
#### When connecting USB storage device (type E audio):



#### When connecting iPod® (type D audio):



#### When connecting iPod® (type E audio):



### NOTE

- The “FOLDER RDM” indication refers to the random playback in the

folders. It randomly repeats all of the tracks in the folder.

- The “ALL RDM” indication refers to the random playback in the entire USB storage device. It randomly repeats all of the tracks in the USB storage device.

- The “ALBUM RDM” indication refers to the shuffle playback of the album. It sequentially plays back all of the indexes in the album.

- The “SONG RDM” indication refers to the shuffle playback in the entire iPod®. It randomly repeats all of the indexes in the iPod®.

- When an iPod® is connected, the files are played back at random by the shuffle function of the iPod®. Therefore, iPod® operation may be different depending on the model of the connected iPod®.

- When an audiobook or a podcast is playing, the mode does not change even if you press the “RDM” button for 0.5 second or longer (type D audio)/briefly (type E audio).

To cancel the random playback mode, press the “RDM” button for more than 0.5 second (type D audio)/briefly (type E audio) and select CANCEL. The “RDM” indication will turn off, and the normal playback mode will resume.

## ■ SCAN (only when connecting USB storage device)

Scan is operated in the same way a CD is played. For details, refer to “Scan (type A, B, C and D audio)” 5-23.

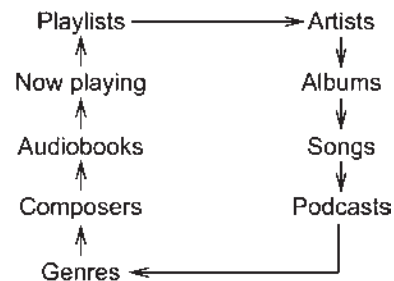
### NOTE

When an iPod® is connected, you cannot select the SCAN mode.

## ■ Selecting category (only when connecting iPod®)

When the  button is pressed for less than 1.5 seconds, the iPod® menu is displayed.

Each time you turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial clockwise, the displayed category changes in the following sequence. Each time you turn the dial counterclockwise, the displayed category changes in the opposite sequence.



To select the category, press the dial. To close the iPod® menu, press the  button for more than 1.5 seconds. To return to the previous screen, briefly press the  button.

## ■ Display selection

Refer to “Display selection (type A, B, C and D audio)” 5-24.

### ▼ Page scroll

Refer to “Page (track/folder title) scroll” 5-24.

## ■ Folder selection (only when connecting USB storage device)

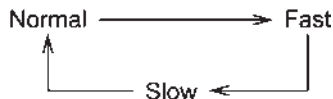
Refer to “Folder selection” 5-24.

**NOTE**

When an iPod® is connected, you cannot select a folder.

### ■ Setting the playing speed (only when the audiobook is playing) (type E audio)

Each time you briefly press the “RPT” button while the audiobook is playing, the playing speed changes in the following sequence.



### ■ When the following messages are displayed

If one of the following messages is displayed while connecting the USB storage device/iPod®, determine the cause based on the following information. If you cannot clear those messages, please contact your SUBARU dealer.

#### ▼ When “CHECK DEVICE” is displayed

This message is displayed under the following conditions.

- When there is a short in the USB bus

- When a non-corresponding device (for example a USB mouse) is connected
- When a non-corresponding iPod® is connected
- When a connected iPod® is frozen
- When a transmission malfunction occurs
- When an iPod® confirmation malfunction occurs
- When a HUB class USB storage device is connected

Disconnect the USB storage device/iPod® and check it.

#### ▼ When “NO USB” is displayed (type E audio)

This message is displayed under the following conditions.

- No USB storage devices/iPod® are connected.
- A non-connectable USB storage device/iPod® is connected.

Connect a connectable USB storage device/iPod®.

#### ▼ When “No song” is displayed (type E audio)

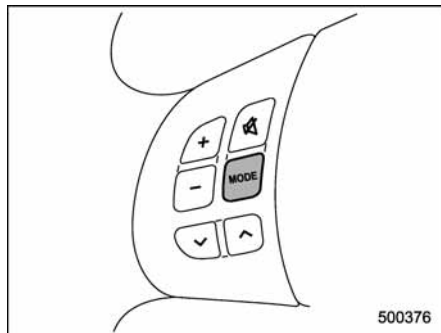
This message is displayed when no playable audio files are in the connected USB storage device/iPod®. Connect a USB storage device/iPod® that has play-

able audio files stored in it.

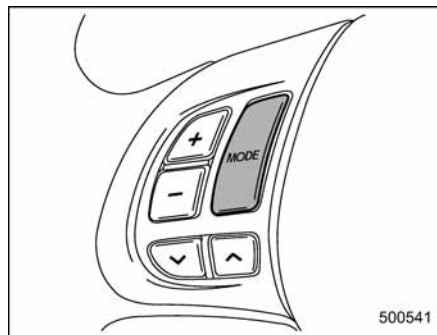
## Audio control buttons (if equipped)

These buttons are located on the spokes of the steering wheel. They allow the driver to control audio functions without taking his/her hands off the steering wheel.

### ■ MODE button



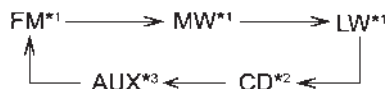
Models without Hands-free system



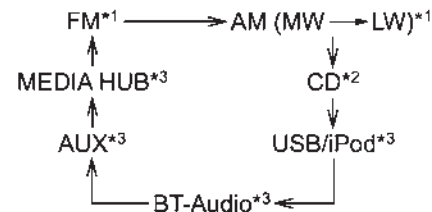
### Models with Hands-free system

This button is used to select the desired audio mode. Each time it is pressed, the mode changes to the next one in the following sequence:

#### Type A, B and C audio:



#### Type D and E audio:



\*1: The frequency last received in the selected waveband will be displayed.

\*2: Only when a CD is in the player.

\*3: Only when the device is connected.

## NOTE

The “MW” and “LW” modes are displayed on the type A, B and D audio. For the type C and E audio those are displayed as “AM” mode.

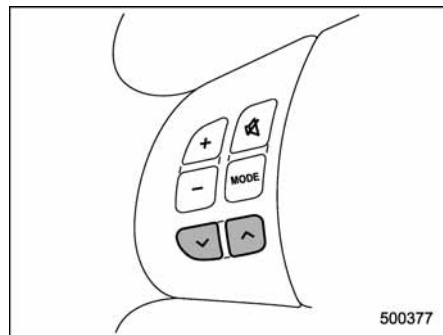
### ▼ Models with Hands-free system

Press this button for more than 1.5 seconds if you wish to immediately cut the volume to zero.

The audio display will show “MUTE”.

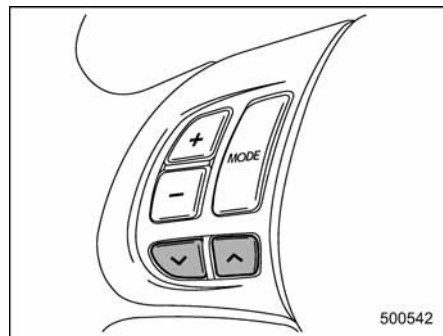
If you press the button for more than 1.5 seconds again, the original sound volume will return and “MUTE” turns off.

## ■ “^” and “v” buttons



500377

Models without Hands-free system



500542

Models with Hands-free system

### ▼ With radio mode selected

Briefly press the “^” button or “v” button to select a preset channel.

Press and hold the “^” button or “v” button. The radio will seek the next receivable station and stop on it.

That station’s frequency will be shown on the audio display.

### ▼ With CD mode selected

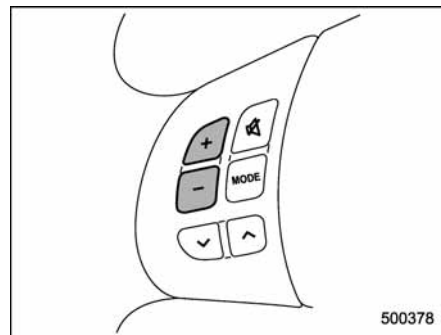
Press the “^” button to skip forward in the track/file (track) order. Press the “v” button to skip backward in the track/file (track) order. The track/file (track) number will be shown on the audio display.

When the MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing, press the “^” button continuously to select the next folder. Press and hold the “v” button to go back to the previous folder.

### ▼ With USB/iPod® mode selected

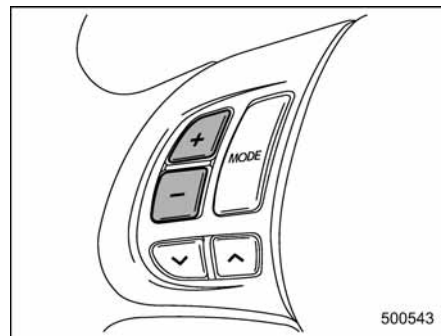
Press the “^” button to skip forward in the track/file (track) order. Press the “v” button to skip backward in the track/file (track) order. The track/file (track) number will be shown on the audio display.

## ■ Volume control buttons



500378

Models without Hands-free system



500543

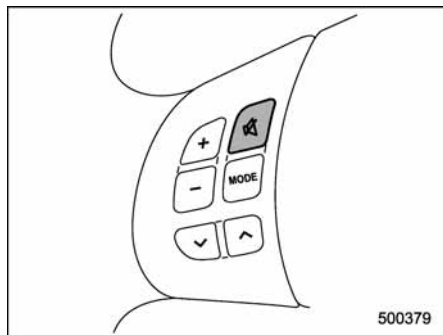
Models with Hands-free system

Press the “+” button to increase the volume. Press the “-” button to reduce the volume.



A number indicating the volume will be shown on the audio display.

### ■ MUTE button (models without Hands-free system)



Press this button if you wish to immediately cut the volume to zero.

The audio display will show "MUTE".

If you press the button again, the original sound volume will return and "MUTE" turns off.

## Bluetooth® audio (type D and E audio)

This function enables you to play back audio sources from **Bluetooth®** audio devices. You need to register the **Bluetooth®** audio device in the system before using it.

### ■ Media format

**Bluetooth®** audio devices cannot be connected if they are not compatible with the following **Bluetooth®** profiles.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)

### ■ Setting Bluetooth® audio

1. Select "BT-A SETUP" by pressing the "MENU" button (type D audio)/Select "BT Audio Setup" by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial (type E audio).
2. Perform the following procedure by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial while "BT-A" (type D audio)/"BT Audio" (type E audio) is displayed.

## NOTE

You cannot set a **Bluetooth®** audio while driving.

### ▼ Registering (pairing) device

1. Select the "PAIR AUDIO" (type D audio)/"Pair Audio Player" (type E audio) menu. If a device is already registered, "MEMORY FULL" is displayed and the mode changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.
2. After the passkey is shown on the display, input the passkey into the cell phone. If you input the correct passkey, "PAIRED" is displayed and the registering procedure is finished. If you input an incorrect passkey, "FAILED" is displayed, the registering procedure was not successful and the mode changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

## NOTE

**After the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the registered device is not automatically connected to the system even if the ignition switch is turned to the "Acc" or "ON" position.**

### ▼ Selecting device

1. Select the "SELECT AUDIO" (type D audio)/"Select Audio Player" (type E

audio) menu. If no devices are registered, "EMPTY" is displayed and the mode changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. If the device is connected, "SELECTED" is displayed and the selecting procedure is finished. If the device cannot be connected, "FAILED" is displayed and the selecting procedure was not successful.

### ▼ Setting passkey

1. Select the "SET PASSKEY" menu. After the currently set passkey is displayed, a new passkey can be entered.

2. Input the new passkey by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.

3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. The new passkey is displayed, the passkey is changed and the mode changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

### ▼ Deleting device

1. Select the "DELETE AUDIO" (type D audio)/"Delete Audio Player" (type E audio) menu. If no devices are registered, "EMPTY" is displayed and the mode changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. "DELETED" is displayed and the mode

changes to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

## ■ Bluetooth® audio operation NOTE

**Depending on the connected device, it may not activate as per the following items or not work smoothly.**

### ▼ How to play back

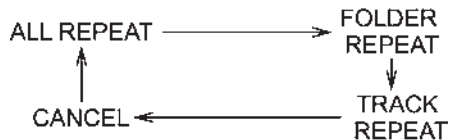
Press the **CD/PAUSE** button and select the "BT-A" (type D audio)/"BT Audio" (type E audio) mode.

### ▼ To select a track from its beginning

Select a track in the same way that a track is selected when a CD is played. Refer to "To select a track from its beginning" 5-20.

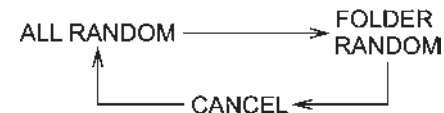
### ▼ Repeating

Repeating is operated in the same way a CD is played. Refer to "Repeating" 5-21. Each time you briefly press the "RPT" button, the mode changes in the following sequence.



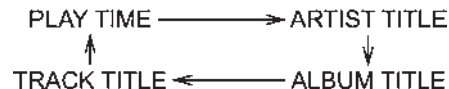
### ▼ Random playback

Random playback is operated in the same way a CD is played. Refer to "Random playback" 5-22. Each time you press the "RDM" button for 0.5 second or longer (type D audio)/briefly (type E audio), the mode changes in the following sequence.



### ▼ Display selection (type D audio)

Select an item to be displayed using the same method as when a CD is played. Refer to "Display selection (type A, B, C and D audio)" 5-24. Each time you briefly press the **TEXT** button, the indication changes in the following sequence.



### ▼ Folder selection

Select a folder in the same way a folder is selected when a CD is played. Refer to "Folder selection" 5-24.

## Hands-free system (if equipped)

### NOTE

- For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.
- When selling your vehicle, make sure that you initialize the Hands-free system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed.

The Hands-free system operates while the ignition switch is in the "Acc" or "ON" position.

## ■ Tips for the Hands-free system

### ▼ Bluetooth®



500481

### NOTE

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

It is possible to connect a cell phone to the in-vehicle equipment through the **Bluetooth®** format (wireless) to make a phone call from the in-vehicle equipment or take an incoming phone call.

Since the **Bluetooth®** format is wireless, a connection between the in-vehicle equipment and the cell phone can be made without placing them in close proximity of each other. The cell phone can be used

with it left in the breast pocket or bag.

### NOTE

- The Hands-free system may not operate properly under the following conditions.
  - The cell phone is turned off.
  - The cell phone is not in the phone call area.
  - The battery of the cell phone has run down.
  - The cell phone is not connected to the Hands-free system.
  - The cell phone is behind the seat or in the glove box.
  - A metal material covers or touches the cell phone.
- Depending on the type of cell phone that is used, the screen on the cell phone may remain illuminated while the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. If this occurs, turn the illumination off by adjusting the cell phone settings.
- Depending on the setting of the cell phone, the dial lock function may be activated after making a call. Deactivate the automatic dial lock function of the cell phone before using the Hands-free system.
- Depending on the type of cell phone that is used, operation and the sound

– CONTINUED –

volume may be different from those of cell phones currently used.

- When the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position during a call, the call may be disconnected or continued on the cell phone depending on the type of cell phone that is used. Note that operation of the cell phone may be necessary if the call is continued on the cell phone.

- Do not speak at the same time as the other party during a call. If you and the party speak at the same time, it may be difficult for the other party to hear your voice and vice versa. This is normal.

- The receiver sound volume should be set as low as possible. Otherwise, the party you are calling may notice an undesirable echo sound.

- Speak clearly and loudly.

- Your voice may be difficult to be heard by the party under the following conditions.

- Driving on a rough road.
- Driving at a high speed.
- Driving with a window open.
- When air from the ventilator blows directly towards the microphone.
- When the sound coming from the ventilator is loud.

- When the cell phone is too close to the microphone.

- The sound quality may degrade due to the influence of the cell phone that is connected to the system or the circumstances of the Bluetooth network.

- When another Bluetooth® device is simultaneously connected, noise may be heard in the voice coming from the hands-free phone.

#### ▼ Corresponding profiles for the cell phone

- HFP (Hands Free Profile): Ver. 1.0
- OPP (Object Push Profile): Ver. 1.1

### ■ Certification for the Hands-free system

Hereby, Clarion Co., Ltd., declares that these PF-3298, PF-3299, PF-3303 and PF-3304 are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### ■ Safety precautions

#### WARNING

- For safety reasons, avoid operating the cell phone while driving.
- Do not make a phone call while

driving. When you have an incoming call, stop the vehicle in a safe location before taking the incoming phone call. When you have to absolutely take a phone call, tell the caller "I'll call you back". And then call the caller back after stopping the vehicle in a safe location.



#### CAUTION

- Do not leave the cell phone in the vehicle. The temperature in the vehicle may become extremely high and cause a malfunction of the cell phone.
- When using the cell phone, be careful not to get it close to the in-vehicle equipment. Getting it too close to the in-vehicle equipment may result in deterioration in tone quality or a poor connecting condition.
- In the frequency band used by this equipment, along with industrial, scientific and medical equipment such as a microwave oven, radio stations (a license is required) to be used by the production line in the factory to

identify movable bodies, specific small power radio stations (a license is not required) and amateur radio stations (a license is required) are being operated. (These three types of radio stations are hereinafter referred to as "other radio stations.") Before using this equipment, be sure to check to see if "other radio stations" are being operated in the vicinity. If there is detrimental radio interference from this equipment to "other radio stations," move the equipment to another location as soon as possible to avoid radio interference. The frequency band used by this equipment is in the 2.4 GHz zone. The FH-SS modulation is employed as a modulation method. The expected inflicting interference distance is less than 10 m (33 ft). This equipment uses a full band and can avoid a band used by a movable body identification device.

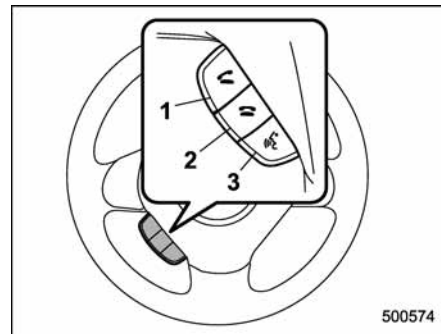
### ▼ Italy models

Questo prodotto è conforme al DM 28/8/1995, N.548, ottemperando alle prescrizioni di cui al DM 25/6/1985 (par. 3, All. A) e DM 27/8/1987 (All. I).

500519

## ■ Using the Hands-free system

### ▼ Turning on/off the Hands-free mode



- 1) OFF hook switch
- 2) ON hook switch
- 3) Talk switch

To turn on the Hands-free mode, press the OFF hook switch . To turn off the Hands-free mode, press the ON hook switch .

### ▼ Preparation for using the Hands-free system

Before using the Hands-free system, it is necessary to register a cell phone in the system. Perform the following procedure to register a cell phone.

1. Press the OFF hook switch .
2. Press the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or the

talk switch .

3. Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
4. Say the name to be registered.
5. Select the “CONFIRM” menu. After “CAR M\_MEDIA” is displayed, a pass key is displayed.
6. Input the displayed pass key into the cell phone while “PKY: \*\*\*\*” (type D audio)/“PASS KEY: \*\*\*\*” (type E audio) is displayed. If you input the correct pass key, “PAIRED” is displayed and the registration procedure is finished. If you input an incorrect pass key, “FAILED” is displayed and the registration procedure was not successful.

## **NOTE**

**When the ignition switch is turned to the “Acc” or “ON” position, the registered cell phones are automatically connected to the system.**

### **▼ Menu list of the Hands-free system**

Turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial to select a menu, and then press the dial to enter the selected menu.

| First menu  | Second menu                    | Third menu   | Details                                                        | Page |
|-------------|--------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| PHONE BOOK* | ADD ENTRY                      | BY PHONE     | Adding a new number by cell phone                              | 5-45 |
|             |                                | MANUAL INPUT | Adding a new number by inputting manually                      | 5-45 |
|             |                                | CALL HISTORY | Adding a new number from the call history                      | 5-45 |
|             |                                | GO BACK      |                                                                |      |
|             | LIST NAMES                     | —            | Showing the list of the names registered in the phonebook      | 5-46 |
|             | CHANGE NAME                    | —            | Changing a name registered in the phonebook                    | 5-46 |
|             | SET SPD DIAL/SET SPEED DIAL    | —            | Registering a speed dial                                       | 5-46 |
|             | DELETE ENTRY                   | —            | Deleting phonebook data                                        | 5-46 |
|             | DEL SPD DIAL/DELETE SPEED DIAL | —            | Deleting a registered speed dial                               | 5-46 |
|             | GO BACK                        | —            |                                                                |      |
| REDIAL      | DIAL                           | —            | Redialing                                                      | 5-47 |
|             | STORE                          | —            | Adding a new number stored in the outgoing call history memory | 5-45 |
|             | DELETE                         | —            | Deleting a number stored in the outgoing call history memory   | 5-47 |
|             | GO BACK                        | —            |                                                                |      |
| CALLBACK    | DIAL                           | —            | Dialing a number stored in the incoming call history memory    | 5-47 |
|             | STORE                          | —            | Adding a new number stored in the incoming call history memory | 5-45 |
|             | DELETE                         | —            | Deleting a number stored in the incoming call history memory   | 5-47 |
|             | GO BACK                        | —            |                                                                |      |

\*: If a cell phone is not registered, the menu described in the chart is not indicated.

| First menu | Second menu  | Third menu                               | Details                                        | Page |
|------------|--------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------|
| SETUP      | SECURITY     | SET PIN                                  | Setting a PIN code                             | 5-48 |
|            |              | PHBK LOCK*/<br>PHONE BOOK<br>LOCK*       | Locking the phonebook                          | 5-48 |
|            |              | PHBK UNLOCK*/<br>PHONE BOOK UN-<br>LOCK* | Unlocking the phonebook                        | 5-48 |
|            |              | GO BACK                                  |                                                |      |
|            | PHONE SETUP  | PAIR PHONE                               | Registering a new cell phone                   | 5-41 |
|            |              | SELECT PHONE                             | Selecting a cell phone to be used              | 5-48 |
|            |              | CHANGE NAME                              | Changing the registered name of the cell phone | 5-49 |
|            |              | LIST PHONES                              | Showing the list of the registered cell phones | 5-49 |
|            |              | SET PASSKEY                              | Changing the pass key                          | 5-49 |
|            |              | DELETE                                   | Deleting the registered cell phone             | 5-49 |
|            |              | GO BACK                                  |                                                |      |
|            | SYSTEM SETUP | GUIDANCE VOL/<br>GUICANCE VOLUME         | Setting the volume of the voice guidance       | 5-49 |
|            |              | INITIALIZE                               | Initialization                                 | 5-49 |
|            |              | GO BACK                                  |                                                |      |
|            | GO BACK      | —                                        |                                                |      |

\*: If a PIN code is not registered, the menu described in the chart is not available.



## ▼ Updating phonebook data

### NOTE

The maximum number of phonebook entries that can be registered in the phonebook is 50.

### ▽ Registering by phone

1. Select the "BY PHONE" menu.
2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "TRANSFER" is displayed.
3. Transfer the data from the cell phone. For details about transferring the data, refer to the Owner's Manual of the cell phone.
4. Select the "RECORD NAME" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or press the talk switch .
5. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
6. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "STORED" is displayed and the mode changes to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-46.

### ▽ Registering by inputting manually

1. Select the "MANUAL INPUT" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
2. Input the phone number to be registered.

3. Select the "RECORD NAME" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or press the talk switch .

4. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.

5. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "STORED" is displayed and the mode changes to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-46.

### NOTE

**While inputting the phone numbers, if "GO BACK" (type D audio)/"BS" (type E audio) is chosen using the "TUNE/TRACK" dial, the character that was input last is deleted.**

### ▽ Registering from call history

1. Select the "CALL HISTORY" menu.
2. Select "OUTGOING" or "INCOMING" by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
4. Select the "RECORD NAME" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or press the talk switch .
5. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
6. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "STORED" is displayed and the mode

changes to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-46.

### ▽ Registering from redial

1. Select the "REDIAL" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "STORE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
5. Select the "RECORD NAME" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or press the talk switch .
6. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
7. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "STORED" is displayed and the mode changes to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-46.

### ▽ Registering from call back

1. Select the "CALL BACK" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "STORE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
5. Select the "RECORD NAME" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or press the talk switch .

6. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.

7. Select the “CONFIRM” menu. Then “STORED” is displayed and the mode changes to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to “Registering speed dial” 5-46.

### ▽ Registering speed dial

1. After registering phonebook data, select the “SPEED DIAL” menu.

2. Press the preset button (from 1 to 6) in which you want to register the phone number.

### NOTE

If the number to be used is already registered in speed dial, “OVER-WRITE?” will be displayed.

### ▽ List names function

The voice tags registered in the phonebook are spoken by using the list names function. To use the list names function, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the “LIST NAMES” menu.
2. Choose the registered data by pressing the talk switch  or by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial. Then “SELECTED” is displayed. You can choose the following menus.

- “DIAL” to make a phone call
- “CHANGE NAME” to change the name (voice tag)
- “SET SPD DIAL”/“SET SPEED DIAL” to set the speed dial
- “DELETE ENTRY” to delete the name (voice tag) from the phonebook
- “GO BACK” to go back to the menu mode

### NOTE

• After “LIST NAMES” is selected, if the OFF hook switch  is pushed, the selected number is called.

• After “LIST NAMES” is selected, if no operation is performed, the memories are displayed and voice tags are spoken. After all memories/voice tags are displayed/spoken, “END OF LIST” is displayed and the mode changes to the “PHONE BOOK” menu mode.

### ▽ Changing voice tag

1. Select the “CHANGE NAME” menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial/by pressing the talk switch  and saying the voice tag.
3. Select the “CONFIRM” menu (only after saying the voice tag). Then the selected phone number/name is displayed.
4. Press the talk switch .

5. Say the new voice tag.

6. Select the “CONFIRM” menu. Then “CHANGED” is displayed.

### ▽ Set speed dial

1. Select the “SET SPD DIAL”/“SET SPEED DIAL” menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial/by pressing the talk switch  and saying the voice tag.
3. Select the “CONFIRM” menu (only after saying the voice tag).
4. Press the preset button (from 1 to 6) in which you want to register the phone number.

### ▽ Deleting the phonebook data

1. Select the “DELETE ENTRY” menu.
2. Select the phone number by performing either of the following procedures.
  - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial
  - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag
3. Select the “CONFIRM” menu. Then “DELETED” is displayed and the selected phonebook data is deleted.

### ▽ Deleting the speed dial

1. Select the “DEL SPD DIAL”/“DELETE SPEED DIAL” menu.

2. Press the preset button (from  to ) in which you want to delete the speed dial.
3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "DELETED" is displayed and the selected speed dial is deleted.

#### ▽ Deleting the redial data

1. Select the "REDIAL" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "DELETE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "DELETED" is displayed and the selected redial data is deleted.

#### ▽ Deleting the callback data

1. Select the "CALLBACK" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "DELETE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. Then "DELETED" is displayed and the selected callback data is deleted.

#### ▼ Making a phone call

##### ▽ Making a phone call from speed dial

It is possible to select a phone number from speed dial registered with the in-vehicle equipment to make a phone call.

1. Select the top menu (phone menu).
2. Press the preset button (from  to ) in which the desired number is registered.
3. Press the OFF hook switch .

### NOTE

**When a preset button for which numbers are not registered is pressed, an error message is indicated on the audio screen.**

#### ▽ Redial

1. Select the "REDIAL" menu.
2. Press the OFF hook switch .
3. Select the desired number by turning the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
4. Perform either of the following procedures.
  - Press the OFF hook switch .
  - Press the "TUNE/TRACK" dial, then select the "DIAL" menu.

#### ▽ Callback

1. Select the "CALL BACK" menu.
2. Press the OFF hook switch .
3. Select the desired number by turning the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
4. Perform either of the following procedures.

- Press the OFF hook switch .
- Press the "TUNE/TRACK" dial, then select the "DIAL" menu.

#### ▽ Making a phone call from list name

It is possible to select a phone number from the list name registered with the in-vehicle equipment to make a phone call. For details, refer to "List names function" 5-46.

#### ▽ Top redial

1. Select the top menu (phone menu).
2. Press the OFF hook switch  and load the outgoing call history.
3. Select the "DIAL" menu.

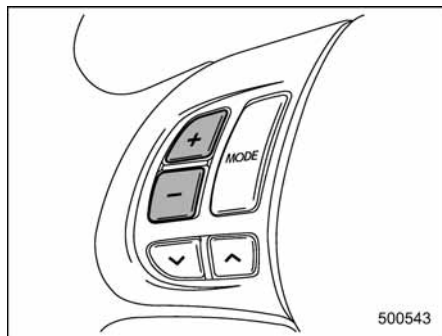
#### ▼ Taking a phone call and declining an incoming call

**To take a phone call:** Press the OFF hook switch .

**To put an incoming call on hold:** Press the ON hook switch  briefly.

**To decline an incoming call:** Press the ON hook switch  for more than 1.5 seconds.

## ▼ Volume control



You can adjust the phone call volume, the voice volume and the voice guidance volume. Refer to "Volume control buttons" 5-36.

## ▼ Adjustable level of each volume

| Volume         | Range   | Initial setting |
|----------------|---------|-----------------|
| Phone call     | 0 to 14 | 7               |
| Voice          | 0 to 14 | 7               |
| Voice guidance | 0 to 6  | 3               |

## ■ Bluetooth® setting

## ▼ Security setting

## ▽ Setting PIN code

The PIN code is a 4-digit number and is used when locking the phonebook.

1. Select the "SET PIN" menu. Then "CURRENT PIN?" is displayed.
2. Input the current PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the number.
3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
4. Input the new PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the number.
5. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.

## ▽ Locking the phonebook

1. Select the "PHBK LOCK"/"PHONE-BOOK LOCK" menu. Then "CURRENT PIN?" is displayed.
2. Input the PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the number.
3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. If the inputted PIN code is correct, "LOCKED" is displayed and the phonebook is locked.

**NOTE**

**While the phonebook is locked, if the operation restricted menu is selected,**

**"PHBK LOCK" is displayed.**

## ▽ Unlocking the phonebook

1. Select the "PHBK UNLOCK"/"PHONE-BOOK UNLOCK" menu. Then "CURRENT PIN?" is displayed.

**NOTE**

**If the phonebook is not locked, "UNLOCK" is displayed and the mode changes to the security mode.**

2. Input the PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the number.
3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. If the inputted PIN code is correct, "UNLOCKED" is displayed and the phonebook is unlocked.

## ▼ Phone setup

## ▽ Setting pair phone

Refer to "Preparation for using the Hands-free system" 5-41.

## ▽ Selecting phone

To select the registered cell phone for connecting to the in-vehicle equipment, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the "SELECT PHONE" menu. If no cell phones are registered, "EMPTY" is displayed and the mode changes to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.

2. Select the cell phone by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the voice tag.

3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu (only after saying the voice tag). "SELECTED" is displayed, the selected cell phone is connected to the in-vehicle equipment and the mode changes to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.

#### ▽ Changing the voice tag of the cell phone

1. Select the "CHANGE NAME" menu. If no cell phones are registered, "EMPTY" is displayed and the mode changes to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.

2. Select the cell phone by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the voice tag.

3. Register the voice tag. For details, refer to "Preparation for using the Hands-free system" 5-41.

#### ▽ List phones function

The cell phone voice tags saved in the cell phone list are spoken by using the list phones function.

1. Select the "LIST PHONES" menu. If no cell phones are registered, "EMPTY" is displayed and the mode changes to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.

2. Registered cell phones are displayed on the saved side. While displayed, if the "TUNE/TRACK" dial is turned, the next registered cell phone is displayed. Press the ON hook button  to close the Hands-free menu.

3. Select a cell phone by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or pressing the talk switch . Then "SELECTED" is displayed.

4. Select the following menus.

- "SELECT PHONE" to connect the selected cell phone
- "CHANGE NAME" to change the voice tag
- "DELETE" to delete the selected cell phone from the list
- "GO BACK" to go back to the "PHONE SETUP" mode

#### ▽ Setting passkey

1. Select the "SET PASSKEY" menu. After the currently set passkey is displayed, a new passkey can be entered.

2. Input the new passkey by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying the passkey.

3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. The new passkey is displayed, the passkey is changed and the mode changes to the

"PHONE SETUP" mode.

#### ▽ Deleting registered cell phone from the list

1. Select the "PHONE SETUP" menu.
2. Select the "DELETE" menu.
3. Select a cell phone to be deleted by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial or saying a voice tag.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. "DELETED" is displayed, the data is deleted and the mode changes to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.

#### ▼ System setup

You can select the following menus only by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.

#### ▽ Setting guidance volume

To set the guidance volume, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the "GUIDANCE VOL"/"GUIDANCE VOLUME" menu.
2. Set the guidance volume by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.

#### ▽ Initializing the registered data

To initialize the registered data, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the "INITIALIZE" menu.
2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu. First

“PLEASE WAIT”, then “INITIALIZED” is displayed. The registered data is initialized and the mode changes to the last mode.

## Screensaver (type E audio)

If the following operations are not performed for more than 30 seconds while the audio is ON, the screensaver will be displayed.

- Operate any button or dial
- Shift the shift lever/select lever to the “R” position
- A cell phone registered in the Hands-free system is called

If one of the following operations is performed, the screensaver turns off and the operation screen will be displayed.

- A cell phone registered in the Hands-free system is called

If one of the following operations is performed, the screensaver turns off. However, the operation screen will not be displayed.

- Operate any button or any dial in a condition other than the following conditions
  - Pressing the  button while a mode other than the CD mode is selected
  - Pressing the volume control buttons of the audio control buttons
  - Pressing the power switch
- Insert a CD (except reloading a CD)

- Connect a USB storage device or an iPod®

## NOTE

**The screensaver is not displayed under the following conditions.**

- While the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” position
- While the audio is OFF
- While the screen is OFF
- While talking on a cell phone registered in the Hands-free system
- While setting the audio
- While seek tuning, scan tuning or auto-storing while the FM/AM radio is on.
- While the rear view camera is being used

## ■ Downloading picture

Perform the following procedure to download a picture to be used as screensaver.

1. Connect a USB storage device. Refer to “Connecting USB storage device / iPod®” 5-30.
2. Select the “Picture Download” menu by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial. For details, refer to “Audio settings (type E audio)” 5-11.
3. Select the preferred JPEG file by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.

4. Select "Wide" or "Normal" by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.

## NOTE

- JPEG files that are 10 MB or less can be saved.
- If the file name is too long, the file may not be saved.
- Up to two JPEG files can be saved in the in-vehicle equipment.
- If the aspect ratio of the displayed picture is 16:9, "Wide" cannot be selected.
- If the aspect ratio of the displayed picture is 4:3, "Normal" cannot be selected.

## ■ Selecting picture

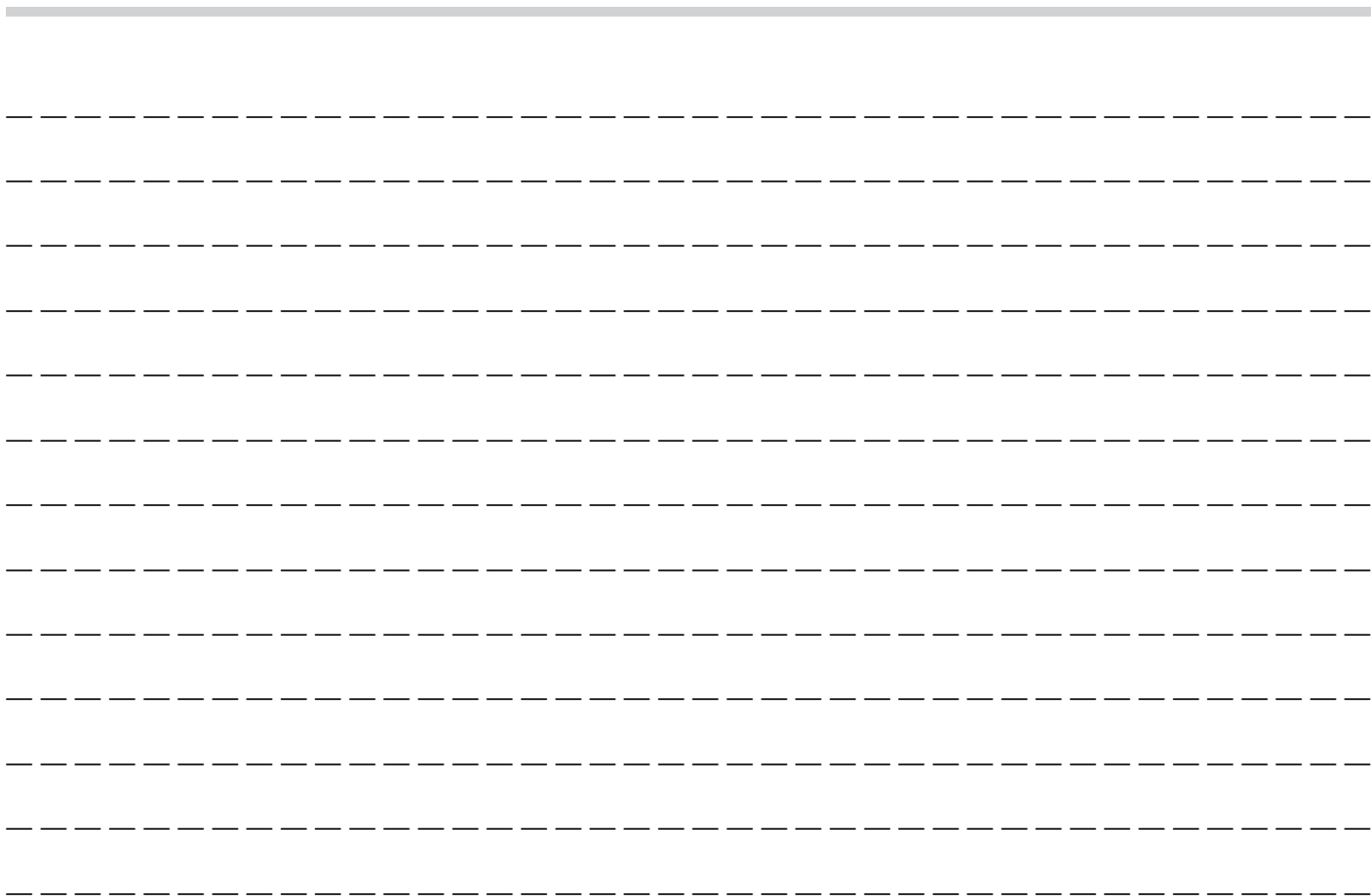
1. Select the "Picture Select" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial. For details, refer to "Audio settings (type E audio)" 5-11. If no pictures are saved, "No Data" is displayed. Press the  button to return to the "Screen Saver" mode.
2. Select the preferred picture by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.

## ■ Erasing picture

1. Select the "Picture Erase" menu by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial. For

details, refer to "Audio settings (type E audio)" 5-11. If no pictures are saved, "No Data" is displayed. Press the  button to return to the "Screen Saver" mode.

2. Select the preferred picture by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Operate the "TUNE/TRACK" dial to select "OK" to erase the picture or "Cancel" to cancel the operation.





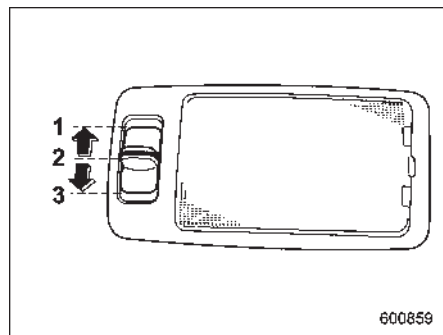
|                                                 |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| Interior light .....                            | 6-2  |
| Dome light .....                                | 6-2  |
| Cargo area light .....                          | 6-3  |
| Map light.....                                  | 6-3  |
| Sun visors .....                                | 6-5  |
| Vanity mirror .....                             | 6-5  |
| Storage compartment .....                       | 6-5  |
| Glove box .....                                 | 6-5  |
| Center console.....                             | 6-6  |
| Overhead console .....                          | 6-7  |
| Rear seat center table (if equipped) .....      | 6-7  |
| Coin tray.....                                  | 6-8  |
| Cup holders .....                               | 6-8  |
| Front passenger's cup holder .....              | 6-8  |
| Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped) ..... | 6-9  |
| Bottle holders .....                            | 6-10 |

|                                                 |      |
|-------------------------------------------------|------|
| Accessory power outlets .....                   | 6-10 |
| Use with a cigarette lighter (if equipped)..... | 6-12 |
| Ashtray (if equipped).....                      | 6-12 |
| Floor mat (if equipped).....                    | 6-13 |
| Shopping bag hook .....                         | 6-14 |
| Coat hook.....                                  | 6-14 |
| Cargo area cover (if equipped) .....            | 6-14 |
| Using the cover .....                           | 6-14 |
| To remove the cover .....                       | 6-15 |
| To install the cover housing .....              | 6-15 |
| Cargo tie-down hooks .....                      | 6-16 |
| Rear view camera (if equipped).....             | 6-16 |
| How to use the rear view camera .....           | 6-17 |
| Viewing range on the screen.....                | 6-18 |
| Help line.....                                  | 6-19 |

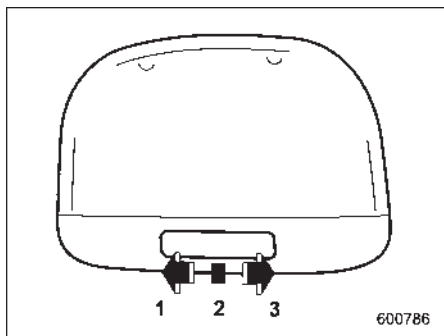
### Interior light

When leaving your vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.

#### ■ Dome light



Type A



Type B

- 1) ON
- 2) DOOR
- 3) OFF

The dome light switch has the following three positions.

**ON:** The light remains on continuously.

**OFF:** The light remains off.

**DOOR:** The dome light illuminates automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors or the rear gate is opened.
- The doors or the rear gate are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "Locking and unlocking with "keyless access" entry function" 2-11.
- The doors or the rear gate are un-

locked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" 2-16.

- The ignition switch is turned from the "Acc" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

The automatically illuminated dome light remains on for several seconds and then gradually turns off after all doors and the rear gate are closed.

While the light is on, if any of the following operations are performed, the dome light turns off immediately.

- The ignition switch is turned from the "LOCK"/"OFF" position to the "Acc" or "ON" position.
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry system.

The setting of the period for which the light remains on (OFF delay timer) can be changed as follows.

#### ● Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:

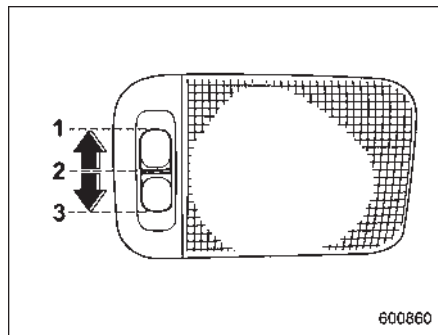
The setting can be changed using the navigation monitor. For details, please refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system. Also, the setting

can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

● **Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:**

The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

## ■ Cargo area light



- 1) DOOR
- 2) OFF
- 3) ON

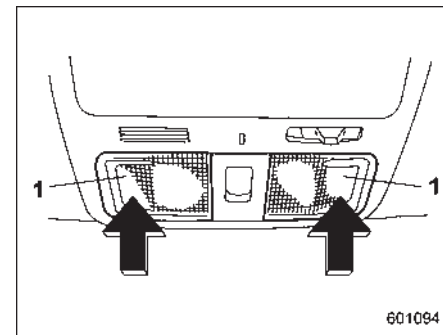
The cargo area light switch has the following positions.

**DOOR:** The light illuminates when the rear gate is opened. The light remains illuminated for several seconds and gradually turns off after the rear gate is closed.

**OFF:** The light remains off.

**ON:** The light remains illuminated continuously.

## ■ Map light

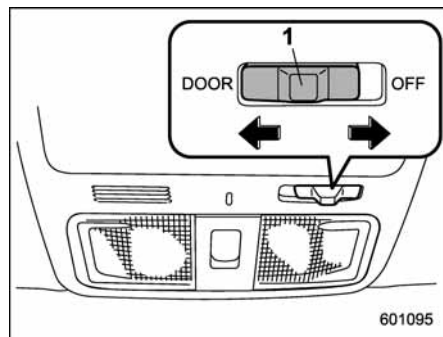


- 1) Map light switch (lens)

To turn on the map light, push the lens.  
To turn it off, push the lens again.

When leaving the vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.

### ▼ Door interlock switch



1) Door interlock switch

Although the map light switches (lenses) are in the OFF position (manually off), the map lights can be set to illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening, etc. by use of the door interlock switch. The door interlock switch has the following positions.

**OFF:** The map lights do not illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening. But, the lights can be turned on manually by pushing the map light switches (lenses).

**DOOR:** The map lights illuminate automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors other than the rear gate is opened. (The map lights do not

illuminate when only the rear gate is opened.)

- The doors are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "Locking and unlocking with "keyless access" entry function" 2-11.
- The doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" 2-16.
- The ignition switch is turned from the "Acc" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

The automatically illuminated map lights remain on for several seconds and then gradually turn off after all doors are closed. While the lights are on, if any of the following operations are performed, the map lights turn off immediately.

- The ignition switch is turned from the "LOCK"/"OFF" position to the "Acc" or "ON" position.
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The setting of the period for which the lights remain on (OFF delay timer) can be changed as follows.

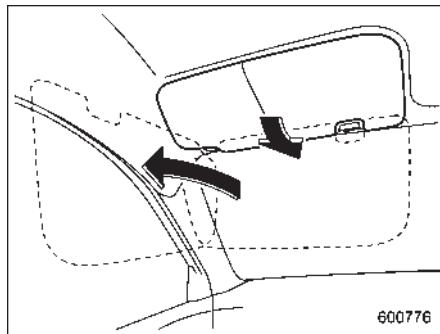
### ● Models with genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The setting can be changed using the navigation monitor. For details, please refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system. Also, the setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

### ● Models without genuine SUBARU navigation system:

The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

## Sun visors

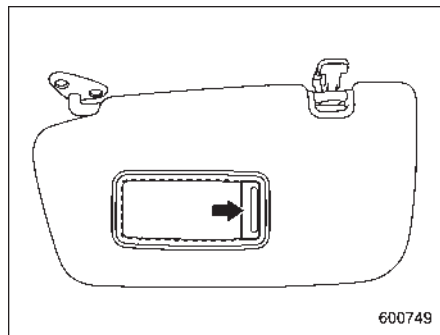


To block out glare, swing down the visors. To use the sun visor at a side window, swing it down and move it sideways.

## Vanity mirror

### CAUTION

Keep the vanity mirror cover closed while the car is being driven to avoid dazzle.



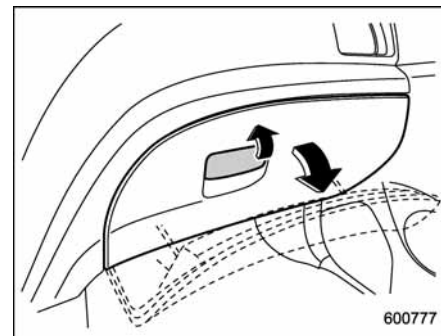
To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover.

## Storage compartment

### CAUTION

- Always keep the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stops or an accident.
- Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.

## Glove box



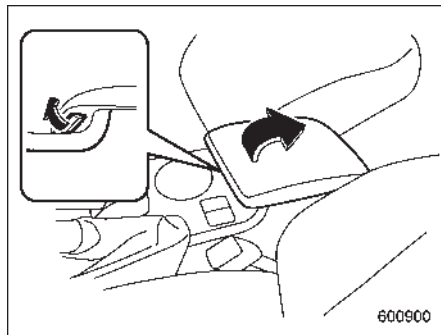
To open the glove box, pull the handle. To

## 6-6 Interior equipment

close it, push the lid firmly upward.

### ■ Center console

#### ▼ Models with the dual range

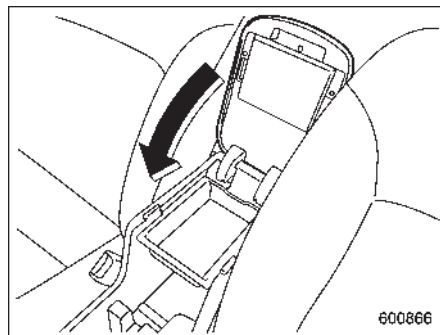


To open the lid, pull up the release button.

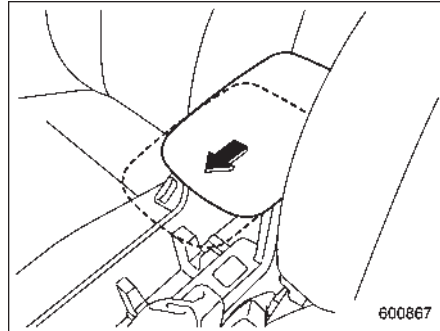
#### ▼ Models without the dual range

The center console box provides storage space. In addition, the top of the console can be used as an armrest.

#### To use as armrest:



1. Tip the console top forward from its vertical position.



2. Push the armrest part of the console top forward to the desired position. Adjust the position of the armrest to suit your

driving position. Make sure the armrest is securely retained.

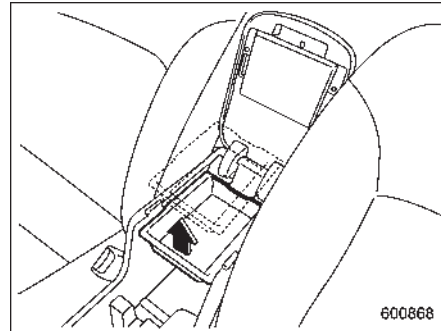
To return the console top to the vertical position, raise the console top.



### CAUTION

Do not step or sit on the armrest, and do not place heavy objects on it. The armrest could break, and you could get hurt.

#### To use as storage space:

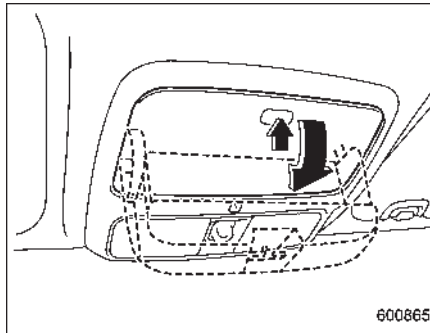


Raise the console top to the vertical position. Then, remove the lid.

When installed, the lid can be used as a tray for placing small items in it.

**CAUTION**

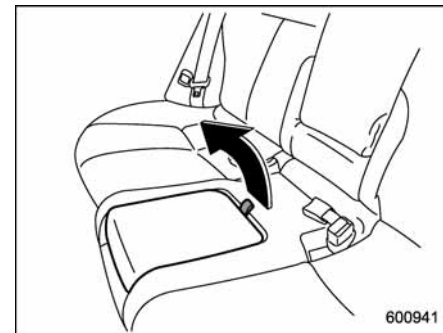
- Before removing the lid of the console box, raise the console top completely to the vertical position. Otherwise, the lid may be damaged and an injury may occur.
- Be careful not to trap your hands between the console top and console box when raising and tipping the console top.
- When there is an object on the console box lid, do not tip the console top forward. Otherwise, the console top or lid could be damaged, and an injury could occur.

**Overhead console**

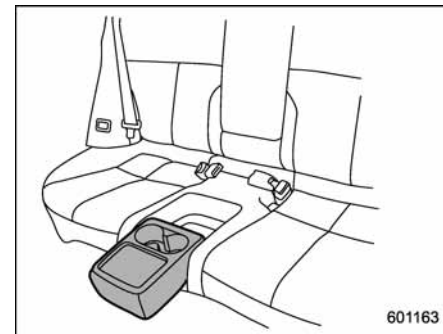
To open the console, push on the console lid lightly and the lid will automatically open.

**CAUTION**

When your vehicle is in the sun or on a warm day, the inside of the overhead console heats up. Avoid storing plastic or other heat-vulnerable or flammable articles such as a lighter in the overhead console.

**Rear seat center table (if equipped)**

To use the rear seat center table, pull the strap up.



The rear seat center table can be used as a storage space and as rear passenger's

– CONTINUED –

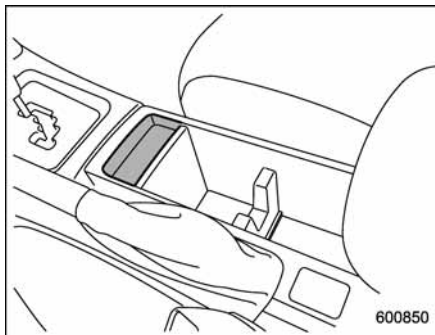
cup holders.



**CAUTION**

- Do not step or sit on the rear seat center table, and do not place heavy objects on it. The rear seat center table could break, and you could get hurt.
- When pulling out or returning the rear seat center table, make sure not to pinch fingers or other body parts.
- Do not use the rear seat center table while driving.
- When folding down the rear seat-back, return the rear seat center table.

■ **Coin tray**



A coin tray is built in the center console.



**CAUTION**

Take care to avoid spills. Beverages, if hot, might burn you or your passengers. Spilled beverages may also damage upholstery, carpets or audio equipment.

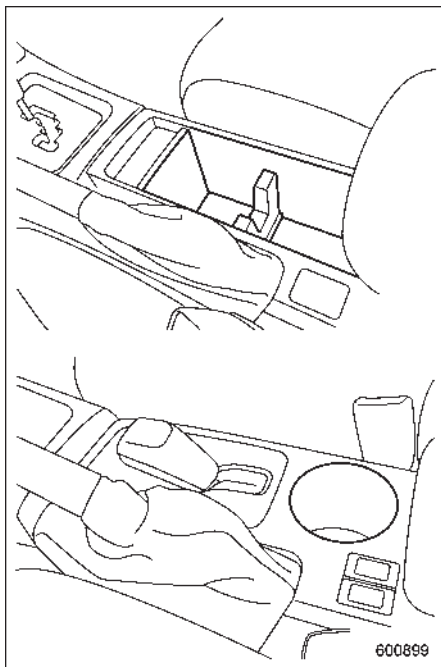
■ **Front passenger's cup holder**



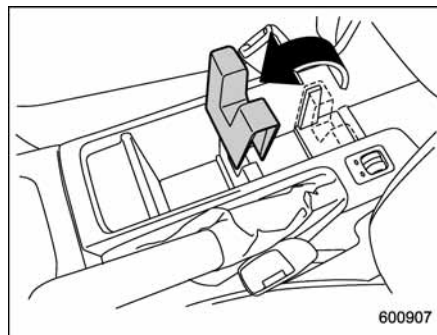
**CAUTION**

Do not pick up a cup from the cup holder or put a cup in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.



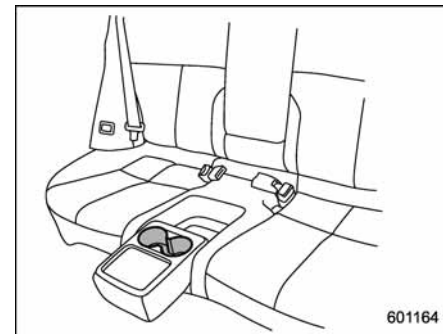


One or two cup holders is/are built in the center console, beside the parking brake lever.



If two cup holders are built in the center console, the cup holder rear partition can be removed and placed on the front partition. This space can be used to store small items.

### ■ Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped)

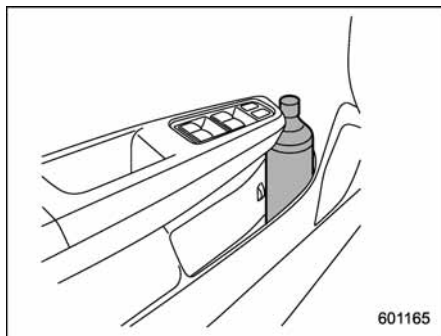


A dual cup holder is located on the rear seat center table.

## Bottle holders

### CAUTION

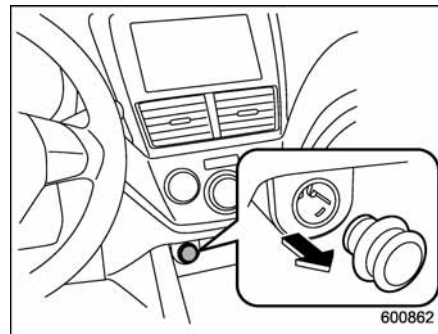
- Do not pick up a bottle from the bottle holder or put a bottle in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.
- When placing a beverage in a door pocket, make sure it is capped. Otherwise, the beverage could spill when opening/closing the door or while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could scald you.



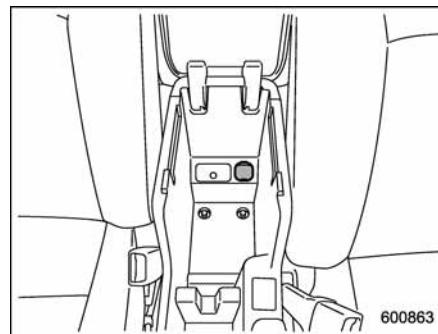
The door pocket equipped on each door

trim can be used to hold beverage bottles and other items.

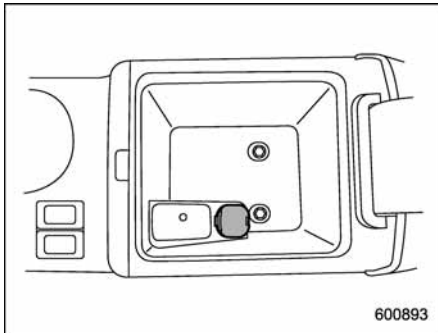
## Accessory power outlets



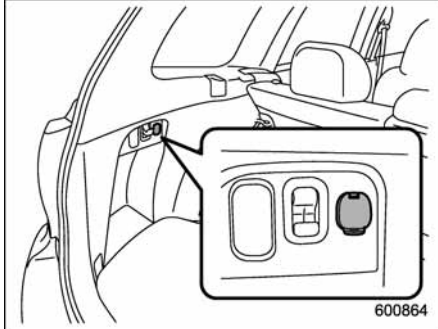
Power outlet below the climate controls



Power outlet in the center console (type A)



600893

**Power outlet in the center console (type B)**

600864

**Power outlet in the cargo area**

Accessory power outlets are provided below the climate controls, in the center console and in the cargo area. Electrical power (12V DC) from the battery is

available at any of the outlets when the ignition switch is in either the "Acc" or "ON" position.

You can use an in-vehicle electrical appliance by connecting it to an outlet.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W.

**CAUTION**

- Do not attempt to use a cigarette lighter in the accessory power outlets.
  - Do not place any foreign objects, especially metal ones such as coins or aluminum foil, into the accessory power outlet. That could cause a short circuit. Always put the cap on the accessory power outlet when it is not in use.
  - Use only electrical appliances which are designed for 12V DC.
- The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance

which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W. Overloading the accessory power outlet can cause a short circuit. Do not use double adapters or more than one electrical appliance.

- If the plug on your electric appliance is either too loose or too tight for the accessory power outlet, this can result in a poor contact or cause the plug to get stuck. Only use plugs that fit properly.
- Use of an electric appliance in the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.

- Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the plug and the cord on your electrical appliance will not interfere with your shifting gears and operating the accelerator and brake pedals. If they do, do not use the electrical appliance while driving.

### ■ Use with a cigarette lighter (if equipped)

To use the accessory power outlet as a cigarette lighter socket, purchase the cigarette lighter plug that is an optional accessory.

A cigarette lighter plug is available from your SUBARU dealer.

The cigarette lighter operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "Acc" position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push in the knob and wait a few moments. It will automatically spring up when ready for use.



#### **WARNING**

To avoid being burned, never grasp the lighter by the end with the heating element. Doing so could result in injury and could also damage the heating element.



#### **CAUTION**

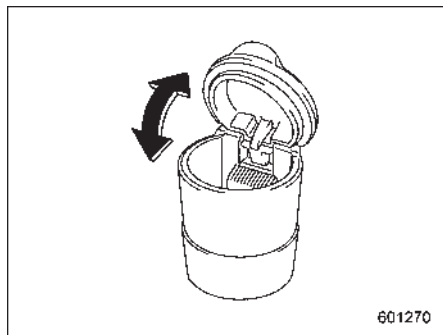
- Do not hold the lighter pushed in, because it will overheat.
- Do not use non-genuine cigarette lighter plugs in the socket. Doing so may cause a short-circuit and overheating, resulting in a fire.
- If the socket is ever used for a plug-in accessory such as a cell phone, that may damage the portion of the socket's internal mechanism that causes a cigarette lighter plug to "pop out" after its lighter element is heated. Therefore, do not place a cigarette lighter plug in a socket that has been used, even once, to power a plug-in accessory. Doing so may cause the plug to stick and overheat, creating a potential fire hazard.

### **Ashtray (if equipped)**



#### **CAUTION**

- Do not use ashtrays as waste receptacles or leave a lighted cigarette in an ashtray. This could cause a fire.
- Always extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them into the ashtray, and then close the ashtray securely. If you keep the ashtray open, the fire of the cigarette may spread to another cigarette butt and start a fire.
- Do not put flammable material in the ashtray.
- Do not leave a lot of cigarette butts in the ashtray.



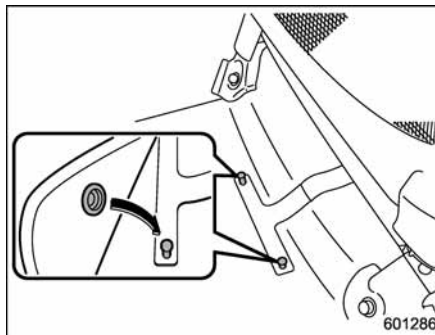
601270

The portable ashtray can be installed in each cup holder. For the locations of the cup holders, refer to "Cup holders" 6-8. When using the ashtray, open the lid of the ashtray. When removing the ashtray from a cup holder, pull the ashtray upwards. Fully close the lid after using the ashtray to help reduce residual smoke.

### NOTE

Particles of ash and tobacco will accumulate around the hinges of the ashtray's inner lid. Clean them off using a toothbrush or a similar narrow-ended implement.

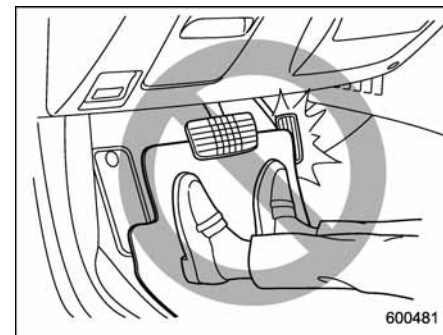
### Floor mat (if equipped)



601286

Retaining pins are located on the driver's side floor.

The floor mat is secured using the built-in grommets, by placing the grommets over the pins and pushing them downward.



600481



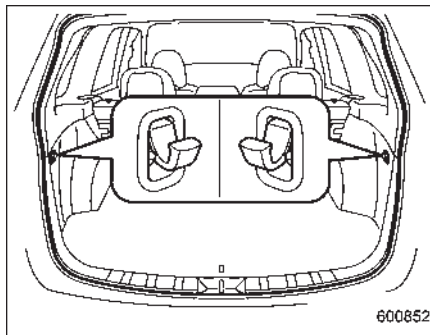
### CAUTION

**Make sure the driver's floor mat is placed back in its proper location and correctly secured on its retaining pins. Also, do not use more than one floor mat. If the floor mat slips forward and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it could cause an accident.**

## Shopping bag hook

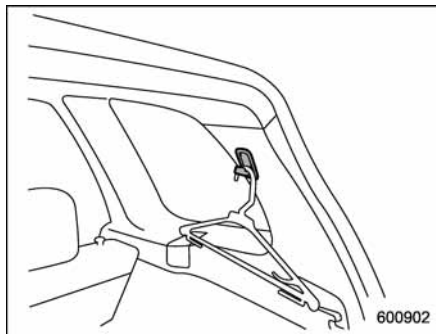
### CAUTION

Do not hang items on the shopping bag hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more.



A shopping bag hook is attached to each side of the cargo area.

## Coat hook



A coat hook is attached to each side of the cargo area.

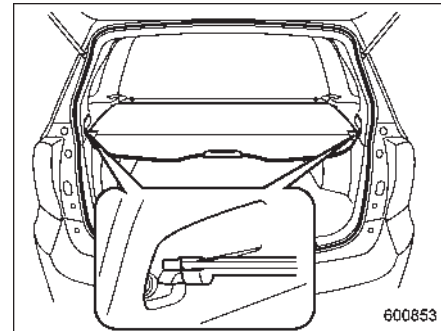
### CAUTION

- Never hang anything on the coat hook that might obstruct the driver's view or that could cause injury in sudden stops or in a collision.
- Do not hang items on the coat hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more.

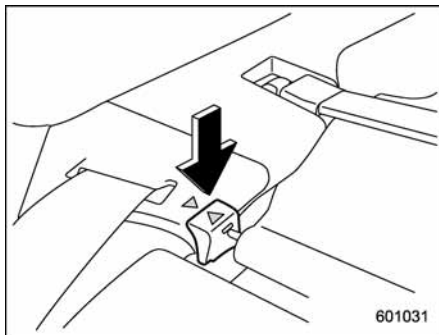
## Cargo area cover (if equipped)

The cargo area cover is provided for covering the cargo area and to protect its contents from direct sunlight. This cover is detachable to make room for additional cargo.

### ■ Using the cover



To extend the cover, pull the end of the cover out of the housing, then insert its hooks into the catches as shown. To rewind it, unhook it from the catches and it will rewind automatically. You should hold on to the cover and guide it back into the cover housing while it is rewinding.



Install the front cover behind the rear seatback.



### **WARNING**

Do not place anything on the extended cover. Putting excessive weight on the extended cover can break it and an object on the cover could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or collision. This could cause serious injury.



### **CAUTION**

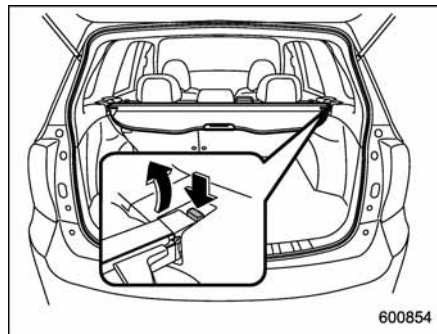
- Be careful not to scratch the rear gate stays while extending and rewinding the cover. Scratches on the stays could cause leakage

of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.

- When reclining the rear seatback, move the front cover backward so that the cover is not damaged.

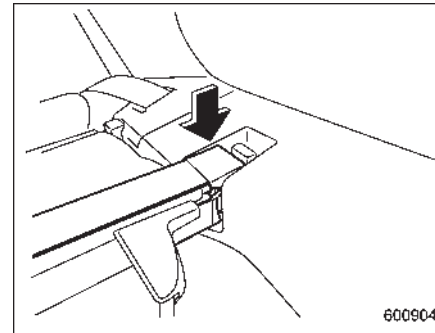
### ■ To remove the cover

1. Rewind the cover.



2. Push the switch that is next to the right end of the cover housing.
3. Take it off the retainer.

### ■ To install the cover housing



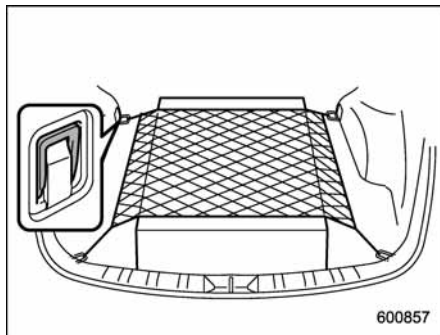
Insert the projections located on both ends of the cover housing into the recesses of the retainers.



### **WARNING**

Make sure to install the cover housing to the recess of the retainers. Otherwise, there is a risk of being injured.

## Cargo tie-down hooks



The cargo area is equipped with four tie-down hooks so that cargo can be secured with a cargo net or ropes.

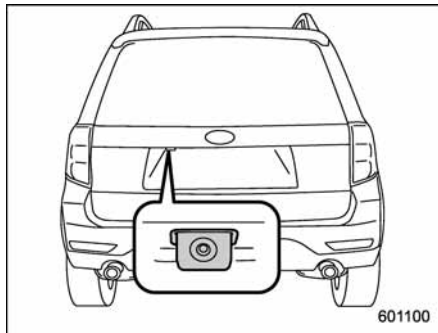
When using the tie-down hooks, turn them down out of the storing recesses. When not in use, put the hooks up into the storing recesses.



### CAUTION

The cargo tie-down hooks are designed only for securing light cargo. Never try to secure cargo that exceeds the capacity of the hooks. The maximum load capacity is 20 kg (44 lbs) per a hook.

## Rear view camera (if equipped)



A rear view camera is attached to the rear gate. When the ignition switch is "ON" and the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (AT models) is set to "R", the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image behind the vehicle on the navigation monitor.



### WARNING

- Since the rear view camera uses a wide-angle lens, the image on the monitor is different from the actual view in terms of distance.
- Since the range of the image on the monitor is limited, you should

always check the rear view and the surrounding area with your eyes and mirrors, and move backward at a slow speed. Moving backward only by checking the rear view image from the camera could cause an accident.

- Do not disassemble or modify the camera, switch or wiring. If smoke comes out or you smell a strange odor, stop using the rear view camera immediately. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Continued use may result in accident, fire or electric shock.



### CAUTION

- If your vehicle is washed with a high-pressure washer, do not allow water to contact the camera directly. Entry of water in the camera lens may result in condensation, malfunction, fire or electric shock.
- Since the camera is a precision device, do not subject it to strong impacts. Otherwise, malfunction, fire or electric shock may occur.



- If mud or snow sticks to or is frozen on the camera, you must be very careful removing it. Otherwise, damage done to the camera may cause a fire or electric shock. Pour water or lukewarm water over the camera to remove mud and ice, and wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not put a flame close to the camera or wiring. Otherwise, damage or fire may occur.
- When replacing the fuse, be sure to use a fuse with the specified rating. Use of a fuse with a different rating may result in a malfunction.
- If the rear view camera is used for a long time while the engine is not operated, the battery may become completely discharged.

## NOTE

- Do not wipe the camera with alcohol, benzine or paint thinner. Otherwise, discoloration may occur. To remove contamination, wipe the camera with a cloth moistened with a diluted neutral detergent and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.
- When waxing the vehicle, be careful

not to apply the wax to the camera. If it comes in contact with the camera, moisten a clean cloth with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the wax.

- The camera lens has hard coating to help prevent scratches. However, when washing the vehicle or cleaning the camera lens, be careful not to scratch the camera lens. Do not use a washing brush directly on the camera lens. The monitor screen may be adversely affected.
- Strong light shined on the camera lens may develop white light stripes around the light source. This is not a malfunction.
- Under the fluorescent light, the display may flicker. However, this is not a malfunction.
- The image of the rear view camera may be slightly different from the actual color of the objects.

## ■ How to use the rear view camera

When the shift lever/select lever is set to "R", the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image from the vehicle. When the lever is set to other positions, the image before setting to "R" is displayed.

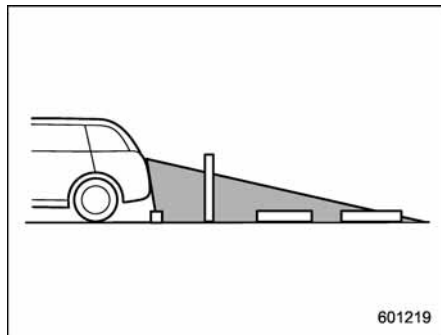
1. Set the ignition switch to "ON".

2. Set the shift lever/select lever to "R".

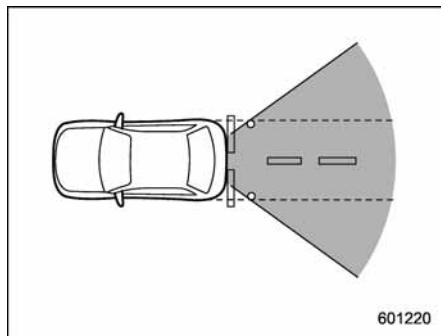
## NOTE

- For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, the image of the rear view camera has priority over other screen displays. (However, while the navigation system is activated, the image of the rearview camera is not displayed.)
- The image of the rear view camera is horizontally reversed as is the case with the vehicle rearview mirror or the side view mirror.
- It may be difficult to see the image of the rearview camera in the following cases. This is not a malfunction of the camera.
  - The vehicle is in a dark place (at night, in a tunnel, etc.).
  - The vehicle is in an extremely hot or cold place.
  - An object (such as raindrops, snow, dirt, etc.) that disturbs the view of the rear view camera sticks to the lens of the camera.
  - Strong light shined directly on the camera lens (occasionally, there are vertical lines on the screen).

## ■ Viewing range on the screen



Range of view



Range of view

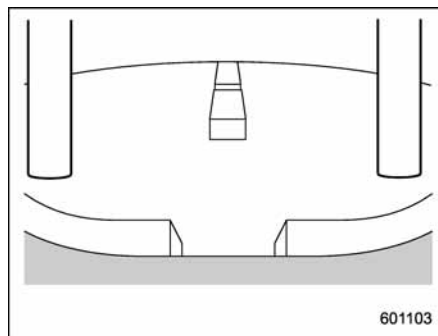


Image from camera

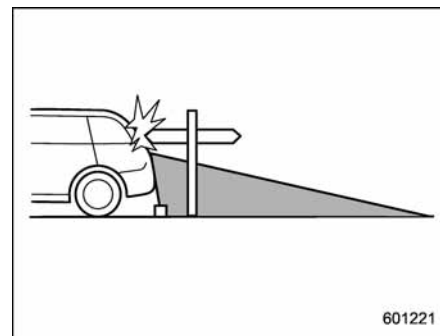
The area from the rear end of the bumper can be viewed. Areas at both ends of the bumper and areas just under the bumper cannot be viewed.

Also, the image from the rear view camera looks shorter than the actual distance.



### CAUTION

**The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.**



Range of view

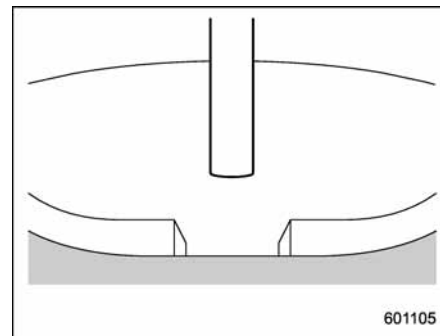


Image from camera

The area above the camera cannot be viewed. If there is an object that has a wide projection on its upper part such as a sign pole behind the vehicle, the projec-

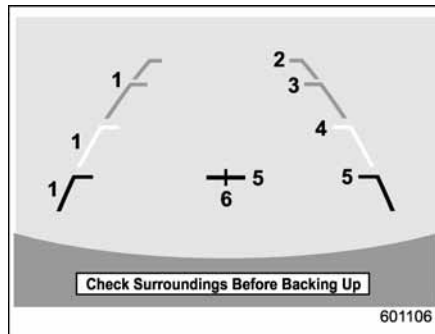
tion cannot be seen on the screen.

### **CAUTION**

The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.

### ■ **Help line**

The help line (distance marker and vehicle width line) is a guide to help you realize the actual distance from the screen.



- 1) Vehicle width line (oblique vertical line)
- 2) Approx. 3 m (10 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
- 3) Approx. 2 m (6.5 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
- 4) Approx. 1 m (3 feet) from the bumper (yellow horizontal line)
- 5) Approx. 0.5 m (1.5 feet) from the bumper (red horizontal line)
- 6) Vehicle centerline

When the select lever is set to position "R", the monitor screen displays the help lines together with the rear view image.

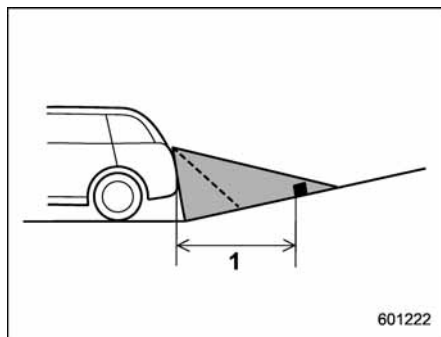
### **CAUTION**

- When moving backward, always check the back with your eyes without relying on the help lines.
- The actual position may be different from the indication of the help lines.
- Differences may occur due to number of passengers or loaded cargo.
- When the vehicle is on a slope or when the vehicle is inclined against the road, the indication is different from the actual position.

### ▼ **Difference between screen and actual road**

The distance markers show the distance for a level road when the vehicle is not loaded. It may be different from the actual distance depending on the loading conditions or road conditions.

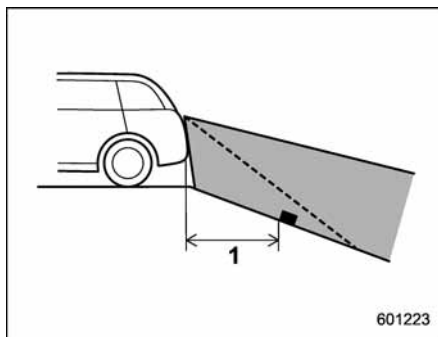
▽ When there is an upward slope at the back



- 1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance.

▽ When there is a downward slope at the back



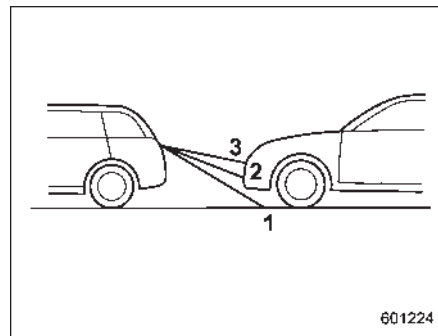
- 1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks nearer than the actual distance.

**NOTE**

**When cargo is loaded, the rear view distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance as in an upward slope.**

▼ Feature of distance marker



- 1) 1 m (3 feet) line  
2) 2 m (6.5 feet) line  
3) 3 m (10 feet) line

The distance marker shows the distance on the road. If there is a car or other object close behind, distance cannot be correctly displayed.

|                                                                                     |      |                                                               |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <b>Fuel</b> .....                                                                   | 7-2  | <b>Power steering</b> .....                                   | 7-24 |
| Fuel requirements for petrol engine .....                                           | 7-2  | 2.0 L models.....                                             | 7-24 |
| Fuel requirements for diesel engine .....                                           | 7-2  | 2.5 L models.....                                             | 7-24 |
| Fuel filler lid and cap.....                                                        | 7-3  | <b>Braking</b> .....                                          | 7-25 |
| <b>Preparing to drive</b> .....                                                     | 7-5  | Braking tips.....                                             | 7-25 |
| <b>Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)</b> ..... | 7-6  | Brake system .....                                            | 7-25 |
| Starting engine.....                                                                | 7-6  | Disc brake pad wear warning indicators .....                  | 7-26 |
| Stopping engine.....                                                                | 7-8  | <b>ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)</b> .....                     | 7-27 |
| <b>Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)</b> .....    | 7-8  | ABS system self-check .....                                   | 7-27 |
| Safety precautions .....                                                            | 7-8  | ABS warning light.....                                        | 7-27 |
| Operating range for push-button start system .....                                  | 7-8  | <b>Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system</b> ..... | 7-27 |
| Starting engine.....                                                                | 7-8  | Steps to take if EBD system malfunctions .....                | 7-28 |
| Stopping engine.....                                                                | 7-11 | <b>Vehicle Dynamics Control system</b> .....                  | 7-29 |
| When access key does not operate properly .....                                     | 7-11 | Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor.....                  | 7-30 |
| <b>Manual transmission – 5 speeds</b> .....                                         | 7-11 | Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch .....                     | 7-30 |
| Shifting speeds .....                                                               | 7-12 | <b>Parking your vehicle</b> .....                             | 7-31 |
| Driving tips .....                                                                  | 7-13 | Parking brake .....                                           | 7-31 |
| <b>Manual transmission – 6 speeds</b> .....                                         | 7-14 | Parking tips .....                                            | 7-32 |
| Shifting speeds .....                                                               | 7-15 | <b>Hill start assist system (MT models)</b> .....             | 7-33 |
| Driving tips .....                                                                  | 7-15 | Hill start assist warning light.....                          | 7-34 |
| <b>Dual range (if equipped)</b> .....                                               | 7-16 | <b>Cruise control (if equipped)</b> .....                     | 7-34 |
| <b>Automatic transmission</b> .....                                                 | 7-17 | To set cruise control .....                                   | 7-34 |
| Select lever.....                                                                   | 7-18 | To temporarily cancel the cruise control .....                | 7-36 |
| Shift lock function .....                                                           | 7-19 | To turn off the cruise control.....                           | 7-36 |
| Selection of manual mode .....                                                      | 7-21 | To change the cruising speed .....                            | 7-36 |
| Driving tips .....                                                                  | 7-22 | Cruise control indicator light.....                           | 7-37 |
| SPORT mode .....                                                                    | 7-23 | Cruise control set indicator light .....                      | 7-37 |

## Fuel

### Fuel requirements for petrol engine

#### CAUTION

- Use of a fuel which is low in quality or use of an inappropriate fuel additive may cause engine damage.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.
- The neck of the fuel filler pipe is designed to accept only an unleaded petrol filler nozzle. Under no circumstances should leaded petrol be used because it will damage the emission control system and may impair driveability and fuel economy. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.

### Non-turbo petrol engine models

#### 2.0 L models

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

If unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 95 or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 90 or higher may be used.

#### 2.5 L models

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **90 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

### Turbo petrol engine models

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol** with an octane rating of **95 or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

### Fuel requirements for diesel engine

Your engine is designed to use only **diesel** fuel that conforms to the specification of **EN590** or an equivalent.

#### CAUTION

- Never use fuels other than those that conform to the specification of **EN590** or an equivalent for your vehicle. If an inappropriate fuel is used, it could cause not only lower engine performance but also serious damage to the engine and fuel system. To avoid damaging the engine, you must conform to the following instructions.
  - Never use petrol or a diesel fuel mixed with petrol.
  - Never use paraffin, heating oils, etc.
  - Never use marine diesel fuel.
  - Never add any fuel additives or cleaning agents to the diesel fuel.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel

**quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.**

### ▼ Winter diesel

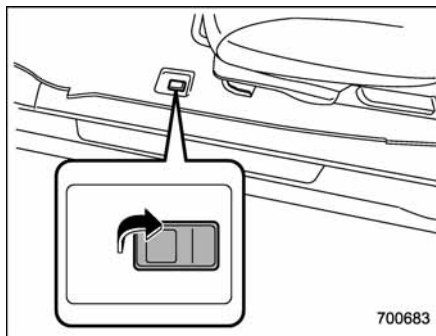
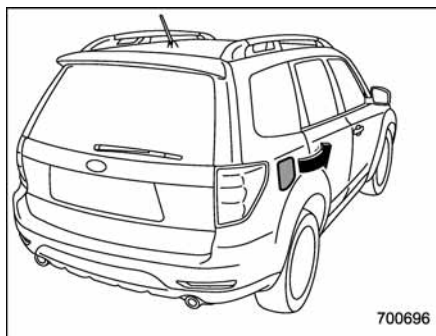
In order to avoid operational problems at low fuel temperatures, diesel fuels with improved cold flow qualities are available during the winter season. However, the specification of the diesel fuel for the winter season depends on the climate of the area where the vehicle is driven. For more details about the winter diesel fuel, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

## ■ Fuel filler lid and cap

### ▼ Refueling

For your safety, you should confirm to the following instructions.

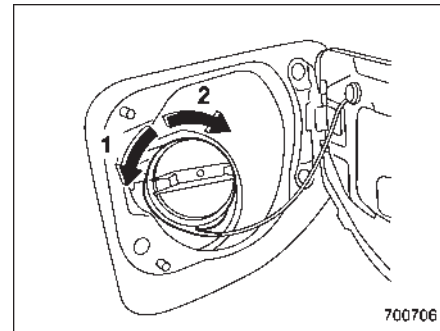
- Only one person should be involved in refueling.
- Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.
- Be sure to observe any other precautions that are posted at the service station.



1. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the lid release lever up. The lever is on the floor of the driver's seat.

### **WARNING**

Before opening the fuel filler cap, first touch the vehicle body or a metal portion of the fuel pump or similar object to discharge any static electricity that may be present on your body. If your body is carrying an electrostatic charge, there is a possibility that an electric spark could ignite the fuel, which could burn you. To avoid acquiring a new static electric charge, do not get back into the vehicle while refueling is in progress.

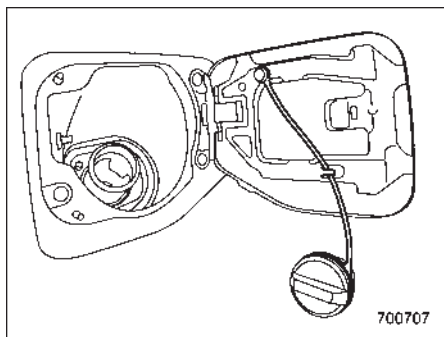


- 1) Open
- 2) Close

2. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it slowly counterclockwise.

**WARNING**

- Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Before refueling, always first stop the engine and close all vehicle doors and windows. Make sure that there are no lighted cigarettes, open flames or electrical sparks in the adjacent area. Only handle fuel outdoors. Quickly wipe up any spilled fuel.
- When opening the cap, grasp it firmly and turn it slowly to the left. Do not remove the cap quickly. Fuel may be under pressure and spray out of the fuel filler neck, especially in hot weather. If you hear a hissing sound while you are removing the cap, wait for the sound to stop and then slowly open the cap to prevent fuel from spraying out and creating a fire hazard.



3. Hook the cord that is attached to the fuel filler cap onto the hook inside the fuel filler lid.

**WARNING**

- When refueling, insert the fuel nozzle securely into the fuel filler pipe. If the nozzle is lifted or not fully inserted, its automatic stopping mechanism may not function, causing fuel to overflow the tank and creating a fire hazard.
- Stop refueling when the automatic stop mechanism on the fuel nozzle activates. If you continue to add fuel, temperature changes or other conditions may cause fuel to overflow from

**the tank and create a fire hazard.**

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel filler pump automatically stops. Do not add any more fuel.
5. Put the cap back on, turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise. Be certain not to catch the tether under the cap while tightening.
6. Close the fuel filler lid completely.
- If you spill any fuel on the painted surface, rinse it off immediately. Otherwise, the painted surface could be damaged.

**CAUTION**

- Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.
- After refueling, turn the cap to the right until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel may leak out while the vehicle is being driven or fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be



sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.

- We recommend that you always use a genuine SUBARU fuel filler cap. If you use the wrong cap, it may not fit or have proper venting and your fuel tank and emission control system may be damaged. It could also lead to fuel spillage and a fire.
- Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

## NOTE

- You will see the  sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.
- If the fuel filler cap is not tightened until it clicks or if the tether is caught under the cap, the malfunction indicator lamp  may illuminate. Refer to “Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light)”  3-17.

## Preparing to drive

You should perform the following checks and adjustments every day before you start driving.

1. Check that all windows, mirrors, and lights are clean and unobstructed.
2. Check the appearance and condition of the tires. Also check tires for proper inflation.
3. Look under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
4. Check that the hood and rear gate are fully closed.
5. Check the adjustment of the seat.
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors.
7. Fasten your seatbelt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
8. Check the operation of the warning and indicator lights when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
9. Check the gauges, indicator and warning lights after starting the engine.

## NOTE

**Engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid and other fluid levels should be checked daily, weekly or at fuel stops.**

## Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)

### Starting engine



#### CAUTION

Do not operate the starter motor continuously for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start after operating the starter for 5 to 10 seconds, wait for 10 seconds or more before trying again.

### NOTE

It may be difficult to start the engine when the battery has been disconnected and reconnected (for maintenance or other purposes). This difficulty is caused by the electronically controlled throttle's self-diagnosis function. To overcome it, keep the ignition switch in the "ON" position for approximately 10 seconds before starting the engine.

### ▼ MT models

#### ▽ Petrol engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" 3-14.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the following procedure.

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly applied, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.
- (2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the "LOCK"

position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the "START" position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

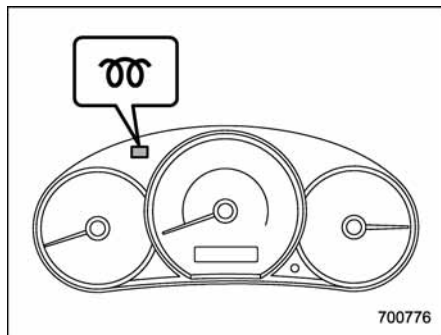
(3) If this does not start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the "LOCK" position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

#### ▽ Diesel engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.



4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” 3-14.

5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

## NOTE

**You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.**

### ▼ AT models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the “P” or “N” position (preferably “P” position).
4. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to “Warning and indicator lights” 3-14.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the “START” position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the following procedure.

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly applied, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position while depressing the accelerator pedal

slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

(2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the “LOCK” position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the “START” position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the “LOCK” position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the “START” position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the “P” or “N” position and that the parking brake is applied.



**CAUTION**

If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the “N” position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the “P” position.

**■ Stopping engine**

The ignition switch should be turned off only when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.



**WARNING**

Do not stop the engine when the vehicle is moving. This will cause loss of power to the power steering and the brake booster, making steering and braking more difficult. It could also result in accidental activation of the “LOCK” position on the ignition switch, causing the steering wheel to lock.

**Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)**

**■ Safety precautions**

Refer to “Safety precautions” 2-8.

**■ Operating range for push-button start system**

Refer to “Operating range for push-button start system” 3-5.

**■ Starting engine**



**WARNING**

- Never start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may result in an unexpected accident.
- If the engine is stopped during driving, the catalyst may overheat and burn.
- Do not leave the engine running in locations with poor ventilation, such as a garage and indoors. The exhaust gas may enter the vehicle or indoors, and it may result in carbon monoxide poisoning.
- If the indicator on the push-

button ignition switch flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle. The steering is still locked, and it may result in an unexpected accident.



**CAUTION**

- When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in orange, there may be a malfunction with the vehicle. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in green after the engine has started, it means that the steering is still locked. While moving the steering wheel right and left, depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch.
- When starting the engine, be sure to sit in the driver’s seat.
- Do not continue pushing the push-button ignition switch for more than 10 seconds. Doing so could cause a malfunction of the starter motor. If the engine does

not start, turn the push-button ignition switch to the "OFF" position, wait for 10 seconds and then push the push-button ignition switch again to start the engine.

- After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the engine coolant temperature gauge is halfway between H and L (if equipped) or the coolant temperature low indicator light turns off (if equipped).

## NOTE

- When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (AT models), the engine starter operates for a maximum of 10 seconds and after starting the engine, the starter stops automatically.
- Avoid rapid racing and rapid acceleration immediately after the engine has started.
- For a short time after the engine has started, the engine speed is kept high. When the warm-up is completed, the engine speed lowers automatically.
- On rare occasions, it may be difficult to start the engine depending on the

fuel and the usage condition (repeated driving of a distance in which the temperature gauge does not move (if equipped) or the coolant temperature low indicator light does not turn off (if equipped)). In such a case, it is recommended to change the fuel to a different brand.

- On rare occasions, transient knocking may be heard from the engine when the accelerator is operated rapidly such as a rapid start-up and a rapid acceleration. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine starts more easily when the headlights, air conditioner and rear window defogger are turned off.
- When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (AT models), the engine can be started regardless of the power status.
- If the immobilizer indicator light illuminates when you attempt to start the engine but the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch to switch the power to "OFF" and then try to start the engine again.
- If the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (AT models) to switch the power to "OFF". Then, while

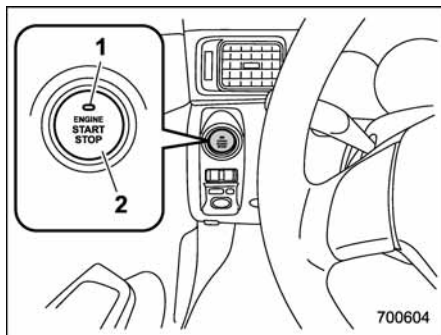
depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (AT models) more forcefully, press the push-button ignition switch.

- The engine start procedures may not function depending on the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, refer to "Starting engine" 9-16.

- If the vehicle battery is discharged, the steering cannot be unlocked. Charge the battery.
- After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, it may require initialization of the steering lock system to start the engine. In such a case, initialize the steering lock.\*

### \*Initialization of steering lock

Switch the power to "OFF". Open and close the driver's door and then wait for approximately 10 seconds. When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.



- 1) Operation indicator
- 2) Push-button ignition switch

When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models)/brake pedal (AT models), the engine will start. The start procedure of the engine is as follows.

### ▼ MT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Make sure that the parking brake is engaged.
3. Make sure that the shift lever is in neutral.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Depress the clutch pedal until the indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green.

6. While depressing the clutch pedal, press the push-button ignition switch and hold down the clutch pedal until the engine starts.

### NOTE

- In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the shift lever to the neutral position, and switch the power to "Acc". Depress the clutch pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.

- For diesel engine models, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.

- For diesel engine models, you may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.

### ▼ AT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Make sure that the parking brake is engaged.

3. Make sure that the select lever is in the "P" position. The engine can also start when the select lever is in the "N" position, however, for safety reasons, start in the "P" position.

4. Depress the brake pedal until the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green. When starting with the select lever in the "N" position, the indicator does not turn green.

5. While depressing the brake pedal, press the push-button ignition switch and hold down the brake pedal until the engine starts.

### NOTE

- In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the select lever to the "P" position, and switch the power to "Acc". Depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.

- When the engine is not started, the brake pedal may feel stiff. In such a case, depress the brake pedal more forcefully than usual. Check that the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green, and press the push-button ignition switch to start

the engine.

## ■ Stopping engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Move the select lever to the "P" position (AT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch. The engine will stop, and the power will be switched to "OFF".



### WARNING

- Do not touch the push-button ignition switch during driving.

When the push-button ignition switch is pressed for 3 seconds or longer, the engine will stop. When the engine stops, the brake booster will not function. A greater foot pressure will be required on the brake pedal.

The power steering system will not operate either. A greater force will be required to steer, and it may result in an unexpected accident.

- If the engine stops during driving, do not operate the push-button ignition switch or open any of the doors until the vehicle is stopped in a safe location. It is dangerous

because the steering lock may be activated. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, and we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.



### CAUTION

For AT models:

- Do not stop the engine while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.
- If the engine is stopped while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position, the power will be in "Acc". If the vehicle is left in this condition, the battery may be discharged.

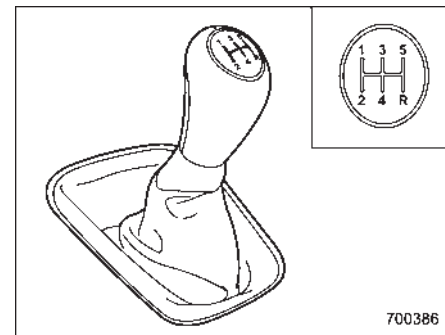
## NOTE

By pressing the push-button ignition switch for 3 seconds or longer during driving, the engine can be stopped. Do not stop the engine during driving except in an emergency.

## ■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" 9-15.

## Manual transmission – 5 speeds



700386

The manual transmission is a fully synchromeshed, 5-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob. When shifting from 5th gear to reverse gear, first return the shift lever to the neutral position then shift into reverse gear.

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever, and gradually let up on the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.



### WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these conditions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.
- Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.



### CAUTION

Shift into reverse **ONLY** when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.

## ■ Shifting speeds

### ▼ Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up at the speeds listed in the following table.

| Shift up (dual range<br>HI position) | km/h (mph) |
|--------------------------------------|------------|
| 1st to 2nd                           | 24 (15)    |
| 2nd to 3rd                           | 40 (25)    |
| 3rd to 4th                           | 64 (40)    |
| 4th to 5th                           | 72 (45)    |

### ▼ Maximum allowable speeds

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer's needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer's needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.



|      |              |           |                        |           | km/h (mph)         |
|------|--------------|-----------|------------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Gear | 2.0 L models |           | 2.5 L non-turbo models |           | 2.5 L turbo models |
|      | AWD          |           | AWD                    |           | AWD                |
|      | Dual range   |           | Dual range             |           |                    |
|      | LO           | HI        | LO                     | HI        |                    |
| 1st  | 27 (17)      | 58 (36)   | 39 (24)                | 56 (35)   | 53 (33)            |
| 2nd  | 46 (28)      | 97 (60)   | 66 (41)                | 94 (58)   | 94 (58)            |
| 3rd  | 66 (41)      | 138 (86)  | 94 (58)                | 134 (83)  | 135 (84)           |
| 4th  | 88 (54)      | 184 (114) | 125 (77)               | 179 (111) | 190 (118)          |
| 5th  | 110 (68)     | Top speed | 174 (108)              | Top speed | Top speed          |

Never exceed posted speed limits.



### WARNING

When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not traveling at a speed exceeding the **Maximum Allowable Speed** for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage.

In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is traveling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.

### ■ Driving tips

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a

– **CONTINUED** –

## 7-14 Starting and operating

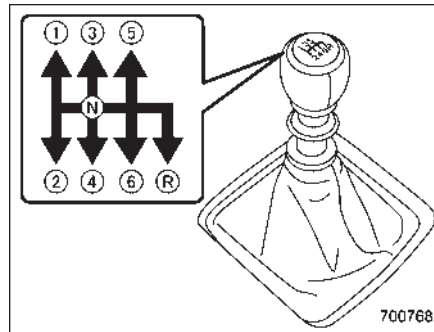
lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you “ride” (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

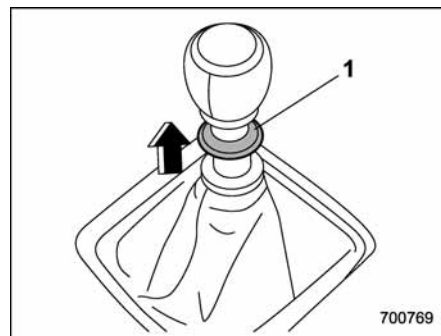
The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

### Manual transmission – 6 speeds



The manual transmission is a fully synchromeshed, 6-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob.



1) Slider

You must raise the slider and hold it in that position before you can move the shift lever to the “R” position.

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever, and gradually let up on the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.



#### WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these condi-

tions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.

- Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.



### CAUTION

Shift into reverse **ONLY** when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.

## ■ Shifting speeds

### ▼ Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up at the speeds listed in the following table.

| Shift up   | km/h (mph) |
|------------|------------|
| 1st to 2nd | 24 (15)    |
| 2nd to 3rd | 40 (25)    |
| 3rd to 4th | 64 (40)    |
| 4th to 5th | 72 (45)    |
| 5th to 6th | 80 (50)    |

### ▼ Maximum allowable speeds

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer's needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer's needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.

| Gear | km/h (mph) |
|------|------------|
| 1st  | 38 (24)    |
| 2nd  | 76 (47)    |
| 3rd  | 126 (78)   |
| 4th  | 170 (105)  |
| 5th  | 211 (131)  |
| 6th  | Top speed  |

Never exceed posted speed limits.



### WARNING

When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not travelling at a speed exceeding the **Maximum Allowable Speed** for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage.

In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is travelling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.

## ■ Driving tips

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle

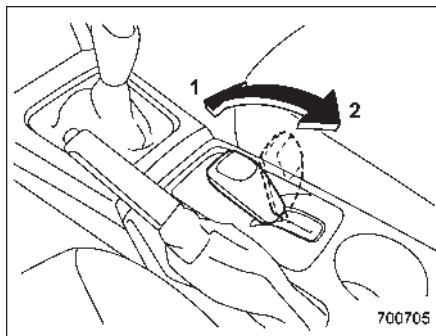
speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 5th, 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you “ride” (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a problem.

### Dual range (if equipped)



- 1) **HI position:**  
For normal driving.
- 2) **LO position:**  
Used for driving up a steep grade or driving on sand requiring more driving force than that available in the HI position.

To change from HI to LO or vice versa, press the clutch pedal fully to the floor, move the select lever, and gradually let the pedal up.

It is recommended that the LO position should be used when starting the vehicle on an uphill slope with a trailer attached.



### CAUTION

- If the select lever stops in the “neutral” position between “HI” and “LO”, release the accelerator pedal and shift the select lever firmly.
- To prevent the overheating of the engine and transmission, do not use the LO position for continuous driving.

## Automatic transmission

The automatic transmission is electronically controlled and provides 4 forward speeds/5 forward speeds and 1 reverse speed. Also, it has a manual mode and a SPORT mode.



### WARNING

Do not shift from the “P” or “N” position into the “D” or “R” position while depressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause the vehicle to jump forward or backward.



### CAUTION

- Shift into the “P” or “R” position only after the vehicle is completely stopped. Shifting while the vehicle is moving may cause damage to the transmission.
- Do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the “N” or “P” position when the brake is set or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the automatic transmission fluid to overheat.
- Avoid shifting from one of the

forward driving positions into the “R” position or vice versa until the vehicle has completely stopped. Such shifting may cause damage to the transmission.

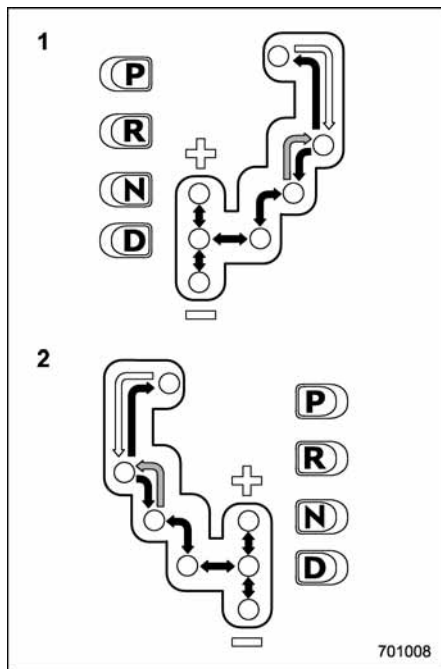
- When parking the vehicle, first securely apply the parking brake and then place the select lever in the “P” position. Avoid parking for a long time with the select lever in any other position as doing so could result in a dead battery.

## NOTE

- When the engine coolant temperature is still low, the automatic transmission will upshift to higher engine speeds than when the coolant temperature is sufficiently high in order to shorten the warm-up time and improve driveability. The gearshift timing will automatically shift to the normal timing after the engine has warmed up.
- Immediately after ATF (automatic transmission fluid) is replaced, you may feel that the automatic transmission operation is somewhat unusual. This results from invalidation of data which the on-board computer has

collected and stored in memory to allow the transmission to shift at the most appropriate times for the current condition of your vehicle. Optimized shifting will be restored as the vehicle continues to be driven for a while.

## ■ Select lever



➤: Shifting is possible with the brake pedal depressed.

➡: Shifting is possible whether the brake pedal is depressed or not. However, while the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "Acc" position, shifting is not

possible if the brake pedal is not depressed. Depress the brake pedal and move the select lever.

➡: Shifting is possible whether the brake pedal is depressed or not.

- 1) Left-hand drive models
- 2) Right-hand drive models

The select lever has four positions, "P", "R", "N", "D" and also has manual gate for using "SPORT" mode or manual mode.

### ▼ P (Park)

This position is for parking the vehicle and starting the engine.

In this position, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

When you park the vehicle, first set the parking brake fully, then shift into the "P" position. Do not hold the vehicle with only the transmission.

To shift the select lever from the "P" to any other position, you should depress the brake pedal fully then move the select lever. This prevents the vehicle from lurching when it is started.

### ▼ R (Reverse)

This position is for backing the vehicle.

To shift from the "N" to "R" position, stop the vehicle completely then move the lever to the "R" position.

When the ignition switch has been turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, movement of the select lever from the "N" position to the "R" position is possible for a limited time period by depressing the brake pedal, and then it becomes impossible. For details, refer to "Shift lock function" 7-19.

### ▼ N (Neutral)

This position is for restarting a stalled engine.

In this position the wheels and transmission are not locked. In this position, the transmission is neutral; the vehicle will roll freely, even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or foot brake is applied.

Avoid coasting with the transmission in neutral. During coasting, there is no engine braking effect.



## WARNING

**Do not drive the vehicle with the select lever in the "N" (neutral) position. Engine braking has no effect in this condition and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.**

**NOTE**

If the select lever is in the “N” position when you stop the engine for parking, you may not subsequently be able to move it to the “R” or “P” position. If this happens, turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position. You will then be able to move the select lever to the “P” position. For details, refer to “Shift lock function” 7-19.

**▼ D (Drive)**

This position is for normal driving.

The transmission automatically shifts into a suitable gear according to the vehicle speed and the acceleration you require.

When more acceleration is required in this position, depress the accelerator pedal fully to the floor and hold that position. The transmission will automatically downshift. When you release the pedal, the transmission will return to the original gear position.

To use the “SPORT” mode, move the lever from this position into the manual gate. To use the manual mode, move the lever from this position into the manual gate then move it toward the “+” and “-” ends.

**▼ While climbing a grade**

When driving up a hill, undesired upshift is prevented from taking place when the

accelerator is released. This minimizes the chance of subsequent downshifting to a lower gear when accelerating again. This prevents repeated upshifting and downshifting resulting in a smoother operation of the vehicle.

**NOTE**

The transmission may downshift to 2nd or 1st gear, depending on the way the accelerator pedal is pressed to accelerate the vehicle again.

**▼ While going down a hill**

When you are descending a hill or any other slope while braking with the “SPORT” mode selected, the transmission may downshift depending on how hard you depress the brake pedal, causing engine braking to work. Reacceleration for a short time will cause the transmission to upshift normally.

**NOTE**

● For 4-speed AT models, a 4th-to-3rd automatic downshift will not occur at speeds above 80 km/h (50 mph) and a 3rd-to-2nd automatic downshift will not occur at speeds above 38 km/h (24 mph).

● For 5-speed AT models, a 5th-to-4th automatic downshift will not occur at speeds above 126 km/h (78 mph) and a

4th-to-3rd automatic downshift will not occur at speeds above 86 km/h (53 mph).

● Automatic downshifts may occur even when driving on a level road depending on conditions, such as how hard you depress the brake pedal.

**■ Shift lock function**

The shift lock function helps prevent the improper operation of the select lever.

● The select lever cannot be operated unless the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position and the brake pedal is depressed.

● The select lever cannot be moved from the “P” position to any other position before the brake pedal is depressed. Depress the brake pedal first, and then operate the select lever.

● Only the “P” position allows you to turn the key from the “Acc” position to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and remove the key from the ignition key cylinder.

● If the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position while the select lever is in the “N” position, the select lever may not be moved to the “P” position after a period of time. Therefore, move the select lever to the “P” position with the brake pedal depressed soon after the

ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

### ▼ Shift lock release

If the select lever cannot be operated, turn the ignition switch back to the "ON" position then move the select lever to the "P" position with the brake pedal depressed.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, perform the following steps.

#### ● When the select lever cannot be shifted from "P" to "N":

Refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" 7-20.

#### ● When the select lever cannot be shifted from "N" to "R" or "P":

Within 60 seconds after placing the ignition switch in the "Acc" position, move the select lever to the "R" or "P" position with the brake pedal depressed.

If you must perform the above procedure, the shift lock system (or the vehicle control system) may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

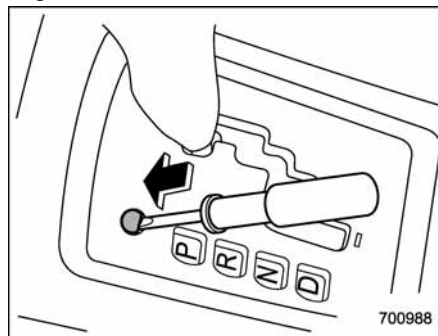
If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, refer to

"Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" 7-20.

### ▼ Shift lock release using the shift lock release button

Perform the following procedure to release the shift lock.

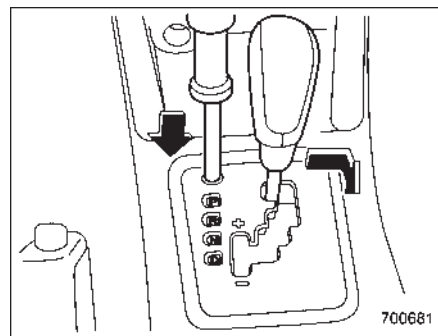
1. Apply the parking brake and stop the engine.



2. Remove the shift lock cover using a flat-head screwdriver. The shift lock release button is located under the shift lock cover.

### NOTE

To prevent damage to the shift lock cover, wrap the tip of the flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth before removing the cover.



3. While depressing the brake pedal, insert a screwdriver into the hole, press the shift lock release button using a screwdriver, and then move the select lever.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, the shift lock system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

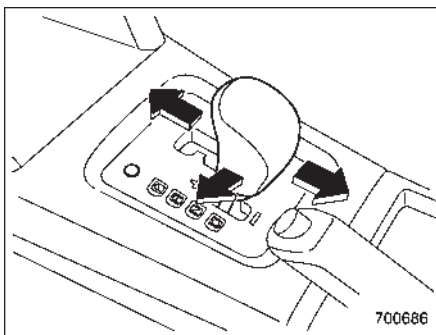


## ■ Selection of manual mode

### NOTE

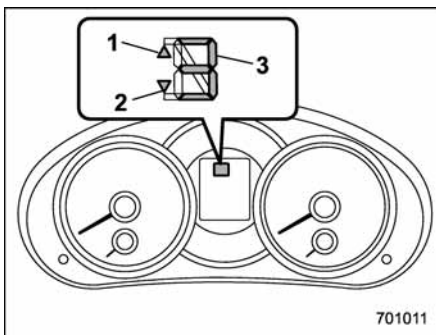
Please read the following points carefully and bear them in mind when using the manual mode.

- If you attempt to shift down when the engine speed is too high, i.e., when a downshift would push the tachometer needle beyond the red zone, beeps will be emitted to warn you that the downshift is not possible.
- If you attempt to shift up when the vehicle speed is too low, the transmission will not respond.
- You can perform a skip-shift (for example, from 4th to 2nd) by operating the select lever twice in rapid succession.
- The transmission automatically selects 1st gear when the vehicle stops moving.
- If the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid becomes too high, the "AT OIL TEMP" warning light will illuminate and upshifts to 4th gear (4-speed AT models) or 5th gear (5-speed AT models) will not be possible. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.



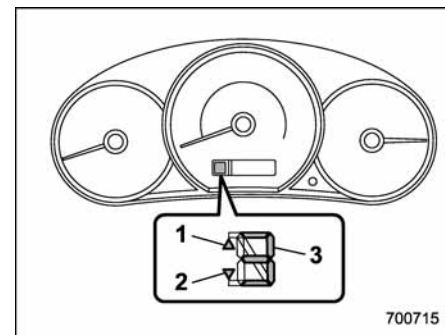
700686

With the vehicle either moving or stationary, move the select lever from the "D" position to the manual gate then move it to the "+" end or "-" end of the manual gate to select manual mode.



701011

Type A and B



700715

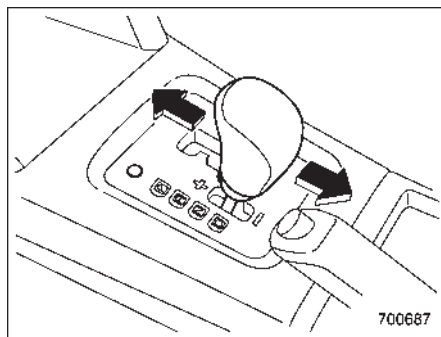
### Type C and D

- 1) Upshift indicator
- 2) Downshift indicator
- 3) Gear position indicator

When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator and upshift indicator and/or downshift indicator on the combination meter illuminate. The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear in the 1st-to-4th-gear range (4-speed AT models) or 1st-to-5th-gear range (5-speed AT models). The upshift and downshift indicators show when a gear shift is possible. When the upshift indicator "▲" illuminates, upshifting is possible. When the downshift indicator "▼" illuminates, downshifting is possible. When both indicators illuminate, upshifting and downshifting are both possible. When

the vehicle stops (for example, at traffic signals), the downshift indicator turns off. Gear shifts can be performed by using the select lever (all models) or the paddle shift switch behind the steering wheel (5-speed AT models).

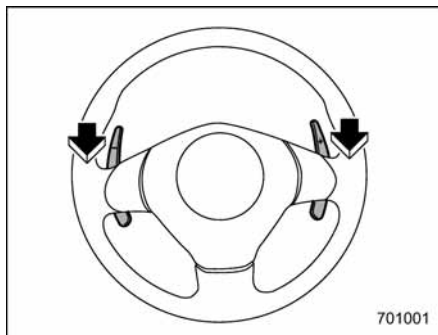
### ▼ Using the select lever



Shift to the next-higher gear by briefly pushing the select lever toward the "+" end of the manual gate.

Shift to the next-lower gear by briefly pulling the select lever toward the "-" end of the manual gate.

### ▼ Using the paddle shift (5-speed AT models)



Pull the "+" of the paddle shift to upshift one level. Also pull the "-" of the paddle shift to downshift one level.

To deselect the manual mode, return the select lever to the "D" position from the manual gate.

While driving, if you change the gear by paddle shifting, the gear position indicator illuminates and shows the current gear condition. At this time, the normal mode temporarily changes to the manual mode, and after driving for a short period of time, the transmission mode returns to the normal mode. (The timing of the gear change and return is different, depending on the driving condition when paddle

shifting.)

Also, if you subsequently ease off the accelerator pedal and then accelerate again, the transmission will automatically switch back from manual mode to normal mode.



### CAUTION

The paddle shift lever could be accidentally changed if accessories or other materials are placed on the paddle shift. Do not place accessories and other materials on the paddle shift lever.

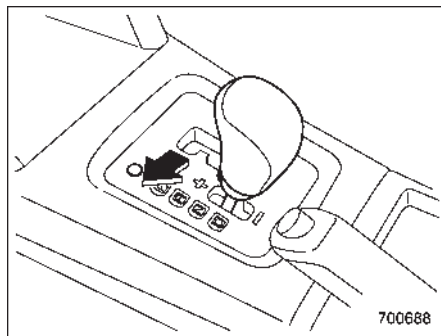
### ■ Driving tips

- On a road surface where there is a risk of wheelspin (for example, a snow- or gravel-covered road), you can pull away from a standstill (safely and easily) by first selecting the 2nd gear of the manual mode.
- Always apply the foot or parking brake when the vehicle is stopped in the "D" or "R" position.
- Always set the parking brake when parking your vehicle. Do not hold the vehicle with only the transmission.
- Do not keep the vehicle in a stationary position on an uphill grade by using the

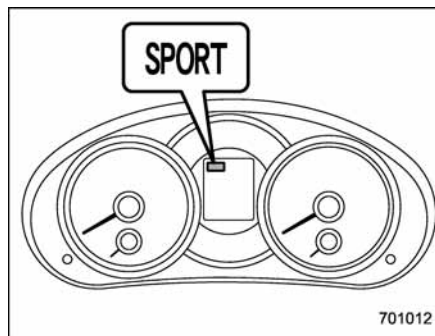
"D" position. Use the brake instead.

- The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

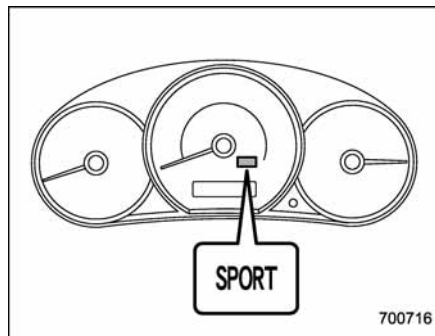
## ■ SPORT mode



SPORT mode is used when power is needed for rapid acceleration or for uphill driving. To select this mode, move the select lever from the "D" position to the manual gate.



Type A and B



Type C and D

When selected, the SPORT mode indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

To deselect SPORT mode, move the

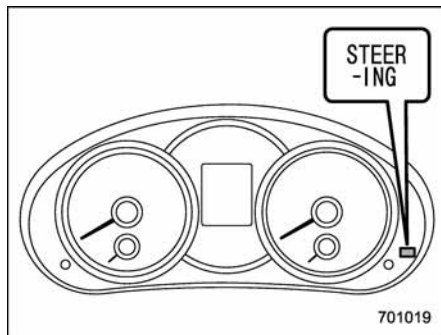
select lever to the "D" position or select manual mode.

To subsequently reselect SPORT mode, move the select lever to the "D" position and from there to the manual gate.

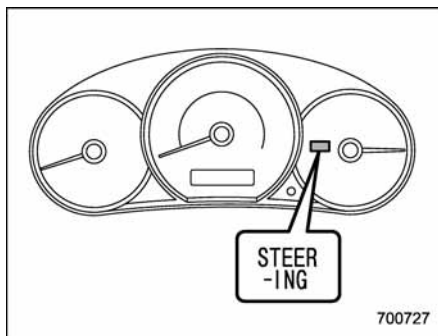
In this mode, the transmission shifts up at higher vehicle speeds and shifts down more responsively than in normal mode.

## Power steering

### ■ 2.0 L models



Power steering warning light (type A and B)



Power steering warning light (type C and D)

2.0 L models are equipped with an electric power steering system. When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the power steering warning light on the combination meter illuminates to inform the driver that the warning system is functioning properly. Then, if the engine started, the warning light turns off to inform the driver that the steering power assist is operational.



### CAUTION

When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the near-

est SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

### NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated frequently and widely while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system from overheating. At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. The normal steering force will be restored after a short time.

### ■ 2.5 L models

2.5 L models are equipped with a hydraulic power steering system. The power steering system operates only when the engine is running.

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system fails to function, you can steer but it will take much more effort.



### CAUTION

Do not hold the steering wheel at the

fully locked position left or right for more than 5 seconds. This may damage the power steering pump.

## NOTE

Right after the engine has been started and before it has warmed up, you may hear a noise coming from areas adjacent to the power steering pump which is located at the right-front area of the engine compartment. This noise is normal. It does not indicate power steering system trouble.

## Braking

### ■ Braking tips



### WARNING

Never rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause dangerous overheating of the brakes and needless wear on the brake pads and linings.

#### ▼ When the brakes get wet

When driving in rain or after washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

#### ▼ Use of engine braking

Remember to make use of engine braking in addition to foot braking. When descending a grade, if only the foot brake is used, the brakes may start working improperly because of brake fluid overheating, caused by overheated brake pads. To help prevent this, shift into a lower gear to get stronger engine braking.

#### ▼ Braking when a tire is punctured

Do not depress the brake pedal suddenly when a tire is punctured. This could cause

a loss of control of the vehicle. Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

### ■ Brake system

#### ▼ Two separate circuits

Your vehicle has two separate circuit brake systems. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle. If one circuit of the brake system should fail, the other half of the system still works. If one circuit fails, the brake pedal will go down much closer to the floor than usual and you will need to press it down much harder. And a much longer distance will be needed to stop the vehicle.

#### ▼ Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine manifold vacuum to assist braking force. Do not turn off the engine while driving because that will turn off the brake booster, resulting in poor braking power.

The brakes will continue to work even when the brake booster completely stops functioning. If this happens, however, you will have to push the pedal much harder than normal and the braking distance will increase.

▼ **Brake assist system**



**WARNING**

Do not be overconfident about the brake assist. It is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its braking capability. Always use the utmost care when driving regarding vehicle speed and safe distance.



**CAUTION**

When you need to brake suddenly, continue depressing the brake pedal strongly to bring the effect of the brake assist.

Brake assist is a driver assistance system. It assists the brake power when the driver cannot depress the brake pedal strongly and the brake power is insufficient.

Brake assist generates the brake power according to the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal.

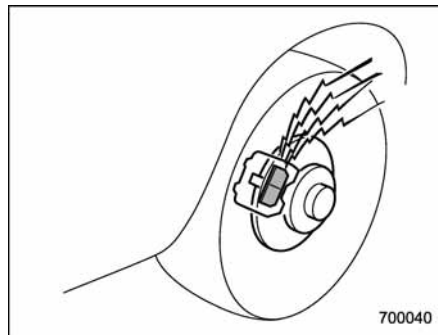
**NOTE**

When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indi-

cate any malfunctions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.

- You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.
- You might hear the sound of the ABS operating from the engine compartment.

■ **Disc brake pad wear warning indicators**



The disc brake pad wear warning indicators on the disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn.

If a squeaking or scraping noise is heard from the disc brakes while braking, we recommend that you immediately have your vehicle checked by your SUBARU

dealer.

## ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

The ABS system prevents the lock-up of wheels which may occur during sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This helps prevent the loss of steering control and directional stability caused by wheel lock-up.

When the ABS system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal when the ABS operates.

The ABS system will not operate when the vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).



### WARNING

**Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with the ABS system could easily lead to a serious accident.**



### CAUTION

- The ABS system does not always decrease stopping distance. You should always maintain a safe following distance from other

vehicles.

- When driving on badly surfaced roads, gravel roads, icy roads, or over deep newly fallen snow, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. When driving under these conditions, therefore, reduce your speed and leave ample distance from other vehicles.
- When you feel the ABS system operating, you should maintain constant brake pedal pressure. Do not pump the brake pedal since doing so may defeat the operation of the ABS system.

## ■ ABS system self-check

Just after the vehicle is started, you may feel on the brake pedal a vibration similar to when the ABS operates, and you may also hear the sound of the ABS working from the engine compartment. This is caused by an automatic functional test of the ABS system being carried out and does not indicate any abnormal condition.

## ■ ABS warning light

Refer to “ABS warning light” 3-20.

## Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

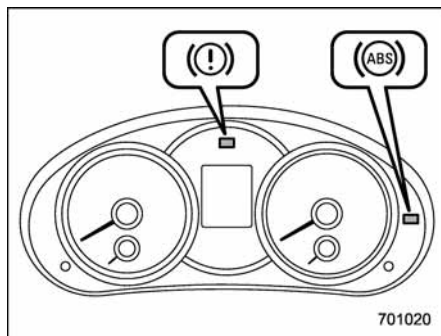
The EBD system maximizes the effectiveness of the brakes by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking force. It functions by adjusting the distribution of braking force to the rear wheels in accordance with the vehicle's loading condition and speed.

The EBD system is an integral part of the ABS system and uses some of the ABS system's components to perform its function of optimizing the distribution of braking force. If any of the ABS components used by the EBD system malfunction, the EBD system also stops working.

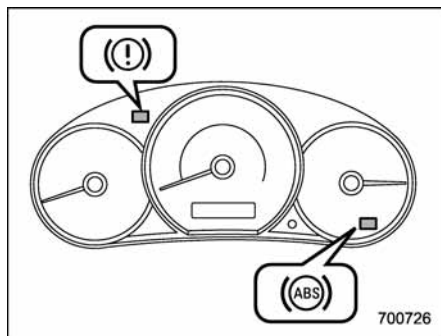
When the EBD system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.



## ■ Steps to take if EBD system malfunctions



Type A and B



Type C and D

If a malfunction occurs in the EBD system, the system stops working and the brake

system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system malfunctions, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat location.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
4. If both warning lights illuminate again and stay illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. Refer to "Brake fluid"

11-33.

5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.



### WARNING

- Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains on, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.



## Vehicle Dynamics Control system



### WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system could easily lead to a serious accident.



### CAUTION

- Even if your vehicle is equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having a Vehicle Dynamics Control system does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.
- When a vehicle is fitted with snow chains, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account

when driving the vehicle in such a condition.

- Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is an indication that the road being travelled on has a slippery surface; since having Vehicle Dynamics Control is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions, its activation should be seen as a sign that the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.
- Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have an inspection of that system performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is operating properly:
  - All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.

- Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.

- If non-matching tires are used, it is quite possible that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be unable to operate correctly as intended.
- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system helps prevent unstable vehicle motion such as skidding using control of the brakes and engine power. Do not turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unless it is absolutely necessary. If you must turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, drive very carefully according to the road surface condition.

In the event of wheelspin and/or skidding on a slippery road surface and/or during cornering and/or an evasive maneuver, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system adjusts the engine's output and the wheels' respective braking forces to help maintain traction and directional control.

### • Traction Control Function

The traction control function is designed to prevent spinning of the driving wheels on

slippery road surfaces, thereby helping to maintain traction and directional control. Activation of this function is shown by steady illumination of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

### ● Skid Suppression Function

The skid suppression function is designed to help maintain directional stability by suppressing the wheels' tendency to slide sideways during steering operations. Activation of this function is shown by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

### NOTE

- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.
  - Slight twitching of the brake pedal is felt.
  - Vehicle or steering wheel shakes to a small degree.
  - An operating sound from the engine compartment is heard briefly when starting the engine and when driving off after starting the engine.
  - The brake pedal seems to jolt when driving off after starting the engine.
- In the circumstances listed in the

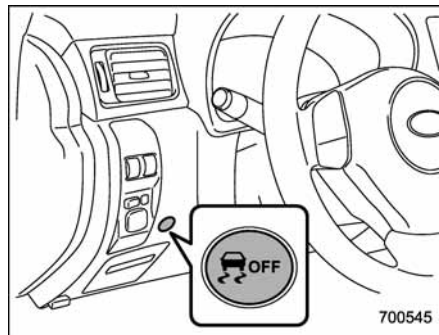
following, the vehicle may be more unstable than it feels to the driver. **The Vehicle Dynamics Control System may therefore operate. Such operation does not indicate a system malfunction.**

- on gravel-covered or rutted roads
- on unfinished roads
- when the vehicle is towing a trailer
- when the vehicle is fitted with snow tires or winter tires
- Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will cause operation of the steering wheel to feel slightly different compared to that for normal conditions.
- It is always important to reduce speed when approaching a corner, even if the vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control.
- Always turn off the engine before replacing a tire. Failure to do so may render the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unable to operate correctly.

## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor

Refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light” 3-21 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light” 3-31.

## ■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch



Pressing the switch to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system can facilitate the following operations.

- a standing start on a steeply sloping road with a snowy, gravel-covered, or otherwise slippery surface
- extrication of the vehicle when its wheels are stuck in mud or deep snow

When the switch is pressed during engine operation, the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light “” illuminates. The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be deactivated and the vehicle will behave like a model not equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system. When the switch is pressed again to reactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the indicator light turns off.

With the Vehicle Dynamics Control system deactivated, traction and stability enhancement offered by Vehicle Dynamics Control system is unavailable. Therefore you should not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except under above-mentioned situations.

## NOTE

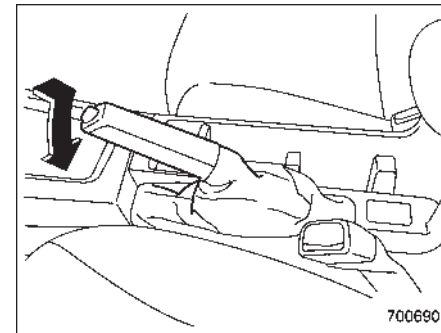
- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be activated automatically when the engine is started.
- If the switch is held down for 10 seconds or longer, the indicator light turns off, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position and restart the engine.
- Even when the Vehicle Dynamics

**Control system is deactivated, components of the brake control system may still activate. When the brake control system is activated, the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light illuminates.**

## Parking your vehicle

### ■ Parking brake

To set the parking brake, depress the brake pedal firmly and hold it down until the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.



To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever while keeping the button pressed.

When the parking brake is set while the engine is running, the brake system warning light illuminates. After starting the vehicle, be sure that the warning light has gone out before the vehicle is driven. Refer to “Brake system warning light” 3-22.



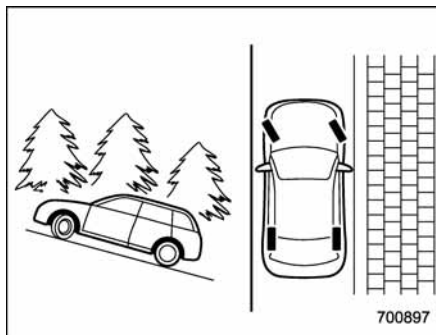
## CAUTION

Never drive while the parking brake is set because this will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Before starting to drive, always make sure that the parking brake has been fully released.

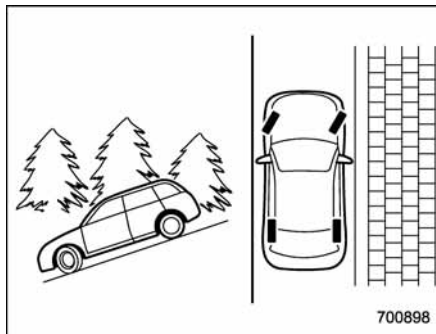
## ■ Parking tips

When parking your vehicle, always perform the following procedure.

- Apply the parking brake firmly.
- **For MT models**, put the shift lever in the “1” (1st) position when on an upgrade or the “R” (Reverse) position when on a downgrade.
- **For AT models**, put the select lever in the “P” (Park) position.
- When parking on a hill, always turn the steering wheel as follows.



When the vehicle is facing uphill, the front wheels should be turned away from the curb.



When the vehicle is facing downhill, the front wheels should be turned into the curb.



## WARNING

- Never leave unattended children or pets in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to people.
- Do not park the vehicle over flammable materials such as dry grass, waste paper or rags, as they may burn easily if they come near hot engine or exhaust system parts.
- Be sure to stop the engine if you take a nap in the vehicle. If engine exhaust gas enters the passenger compartment, occupants in the vehicle could die from carbon monoxide (CO) contained in the exhaust gas.



## CAUTION

Always set the parking brake firmly when parking your vehicle. Never rely on the transmission alone to

hold the vehicle.

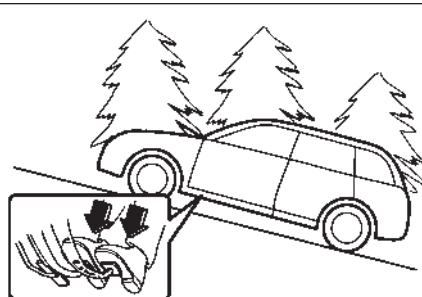
## Hill start assist system (MT models)



### CAUTION

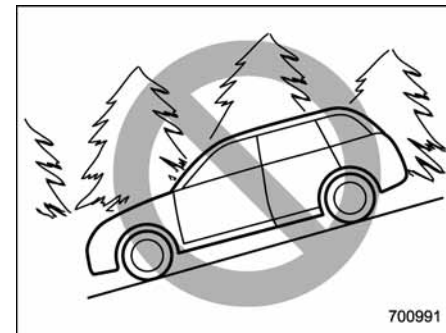
The Hill start assist system is a device only for helping the driver to **START** the vehicle on an uphill grade. To prevent accidents when the vehicle is parked on a slope, be sure to firmly set the parking brake. When setting the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle remains stationary when the clutch pedal is released.

The Hill start assist system is a device to make starting on an uphill grade easier.



700990

On an uphill grade, when the clutch pedal is depressed while the brake pedal is also depressed, braking power is maintained temporarily (for approximately 1 second) by the Hill start assist system when the brake pedal is released. The driver is therefore able to start the vehicle the same way as on a level grade, just using the clutch and accelerator pedal.



700991

The Hill start assist system does not operate when the vehicle is facing downhill. And the Hill start assist system may not operate on slight grades.

When starting in reverse and using the Hill start assist system, a braking effect may be felt even after the brake pedal has been released. However, this braking effect should disappear once the clutch pedal is released.

– CONTINUED –

A slight jolt may be felt when the vehicle begins to move forward after being reversed.

If the braking power of the Hill start assist system is insufficient after the brake pedal is released, apply more braking power by pressing the brake pedal again.

### ■ Hill start assist warning light

Refer to “Hill start assist warning light (MT models)” 3-23.

## Cruise control (if equipped)

Cruise control enables you to maintain a constant vehicle speed without holding your foot on the accelerator pedal and it is operative when the vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.



### WARNING

**Do not use the cruise control under any of the following conditions. This may cause loss of vehicle control.**

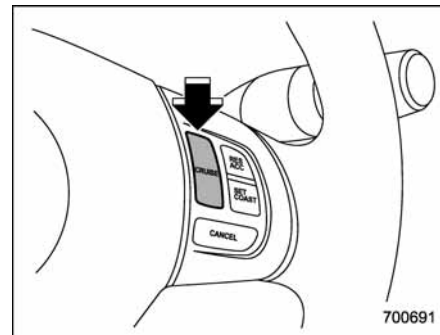
- driving up or down a steep grade
- driving on slippery or winding roads
- driving in heavy traffic
- towing a trailer

### NOTE

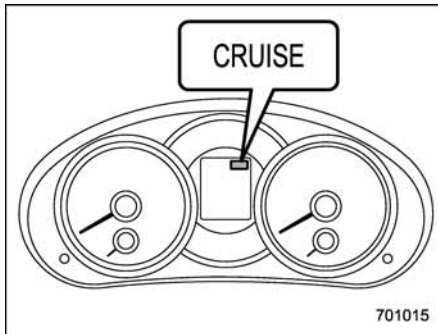
- If you press the “CRUISE” main switch button while turning the ignition switch to “ON”, the cruise control function is deactivated and the cruise control indicator light flashes. To reactivate the cruise control function, turn the ignition switch back to the “Acc” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position, and then turn it again to the “ON” position.
- Make sure the “CRUISE” main switch is turned to “OFF” when the

cruise control is not in use to avoid unintentionally setting of the cruise control.

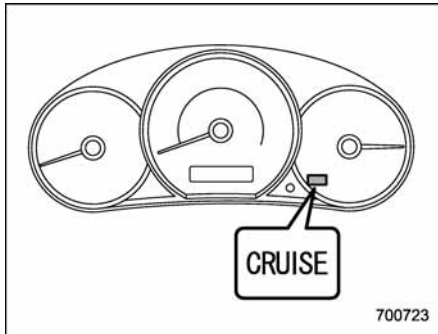
### ■ To set cruise control



1. Push the “CRUISE” main switch button.



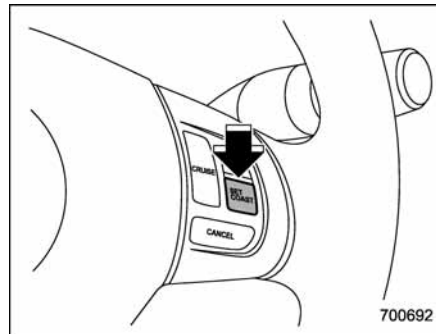
**Type A and B**



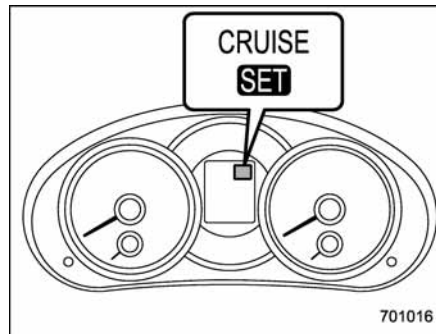
**Type C and D**

The cruise control indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

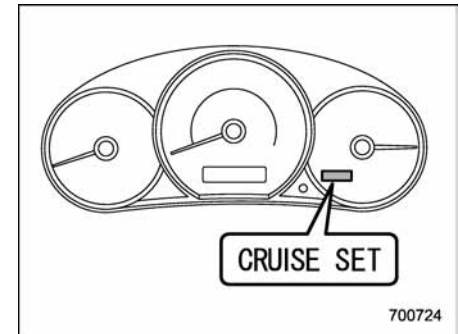
2. Depress the accelerator pedal until the vehicle reaches to the desired speed.



3. Push the "SET/COAST" button and release it. Then release the accelerator pedal.



**Type A and B**



**Type C and D**

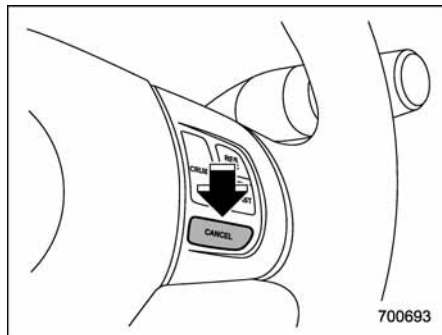
At this time, the cruise control set indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

The vehicle will maintain the desired speed.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased while driving with the cruise control activated. Simply depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to and maintain the previous cruising speed.

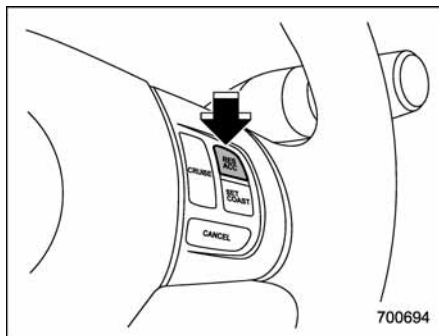
## ■ To temporarily cancel the cruise control

The cruise control can be temporarily canceled in the following ways.



- Push the “CANCEL” button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).
- Shift the select lever into the “N” position (AT models).
- Shift the shift lever into the neutral position (MT models).

The cruise control set indicator light on the combination meter turns off when the cruise control is canceled.



To resume the cruise control after it has been temporarily canceled and with vehicle speed of approximately 32 km/h (20 mph) or more, push the “RES/ACC” button to return to the original cruising speed automatically.

The cruise control set indicator light on the combination meter will automatically illuminate at this time.

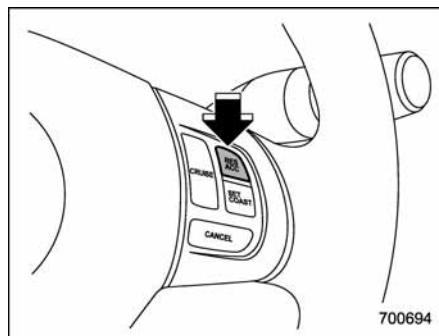
## ■ To turn off the cruise control

There are two ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Push the “CRUISE” main switch button again.
- Turn the ignition switch to the “Acc” or “LOCK”/“OFF” position (but only when the vehicle is completely stopped).

## ■ To change the cruising speed

### ▼ To increase the speed (by button)



Push the “RES/ACC” button and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the button. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “RES/ACC” button quickly.



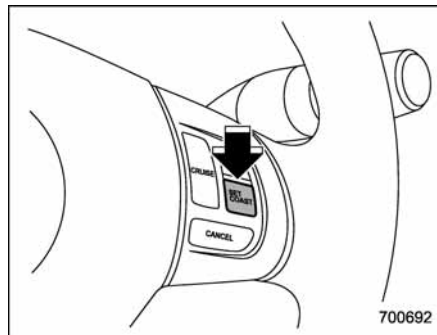
### ▼ To increase the speed (by accelerator pedal)

1. Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
2. Push the “SET/COAST” button once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### NOTE

If the difference between the actual vehicle speed when the button is pushed and the speed last time you set is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the vehicle speed will be lowered by 1 km/h (0.6 mph). This occurs because the cruise control system unit regards this operation as that intended to decrease the vehicle speed.

### ▼ To decrease the speed (by button)



Push the “SET/COAST” button and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the button. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “SET/COAST” button quickly.

### ▼ To decrease the speed (by brake pedal)

1. Depress the brake pedal to release cruise control temporarily.
2. When the speed decreases to the desired speed, press the “SET/COAST”

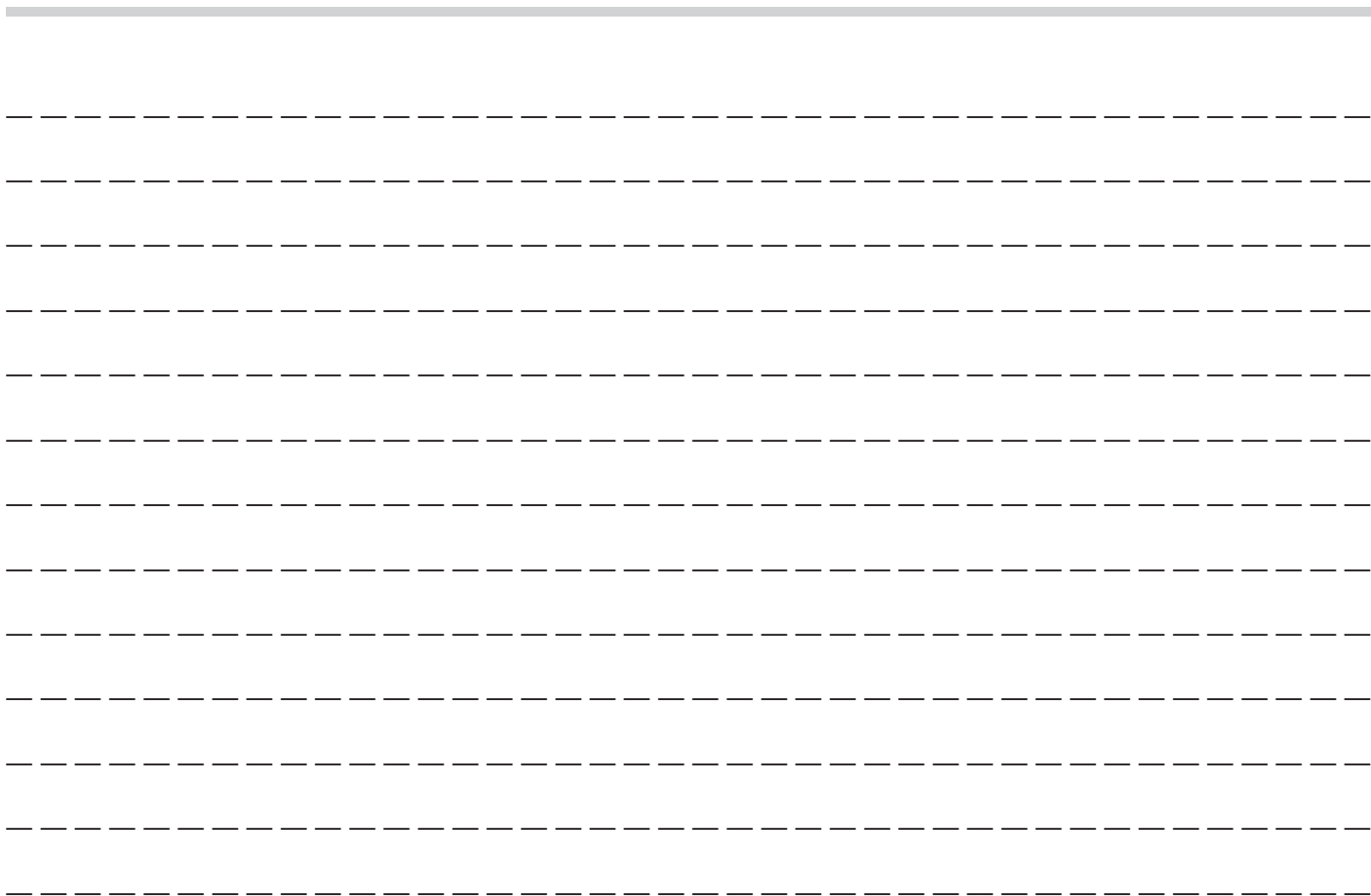
button once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### ■ Cruise control indicator light

Refer to “Cruise control indicator light” 3-32.

### ■ Cruise control set indicator light

Refer to “Cruise control set indicator light” 3-32.



|                                                                       |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) ..... | 8-2  |
| Fuel economy hints .....                                              | 8-2  |
| Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide).....                             | 8-2  |
| Catalytic converter .....                                             | 8-3  |
| Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models) .....                | 8-4  |
| Periodic inspections .....                                            | 8-5  |
| Driving in foreign countries .....                                    | 8-5  |
| Driving tips for AWD models.....                                      | 8-6  |
| On-pavement and off road driving.....                                 | 8-7  |
| Winter driving .....                                                  | 8-9  |
| Operation during cold weather.....                                    | 8-9  |
| Driving on snowy and icy roads .....                                  | 8-10 |
| Corrosion protection .....                                            | 8-11 |
| Snow tires .....                                                      | 8-11 |

|                                                  |      |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|
| Tire chains .....                                | 8-12 |
| Rocking the vehicle .....                        | 8-12 |
| Loading your vehicle.....                        | 8-13 |
| Roof rails (if equipped) .....                   | 8-13 |
| Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)..... | 8-14 |
| Trailer towing .....                             | 8-15 |
| Maintenance .....                                | 8-15 |
| Towing weight .....                              | 8-15 |
| Trailer hitches.....                             | 8-16 |
| Trailer safety chains.....                       | 8-16 |
| Side mirrors .....                               | 8-16 |
| Trailer lights .....                             | 8-16 |
| Tires.....                                       | 8-17 |
| Hitch stabilizer.....                            | 8-17 |
| Trailer towing tips .....                        | 8-17 |
| Additional information for Europe .....          | 8-19 |

## **New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)**

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles):

- For petrol engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4,000 rpm except in an emergency.
- For diesel engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 3,500 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed for a long time, either fast or slow.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

## **Fuel economy hints**

The following suggestions will help to save your fuel.

- Select the proper gear position for the speed and road conditions.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration. Always accelerate gently until you reach the desired speed. Then try to maintain that speed for as long as possible.
- Do not pump the accelerator and avoid racing the engine.
- Avoid unnecessary engine idling.
- Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Keep the tires inflated to the correct pressure shown on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side. Low pressure will increase tire wear and fuel consumption.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Keep the front and rear wheels in proper alignment.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage or cargo.

## **Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)**



### **WARNING**

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.**
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force fresh air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that**

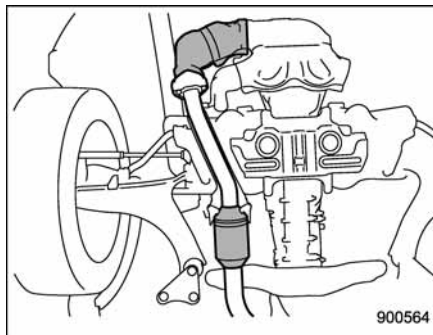
exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.

- Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

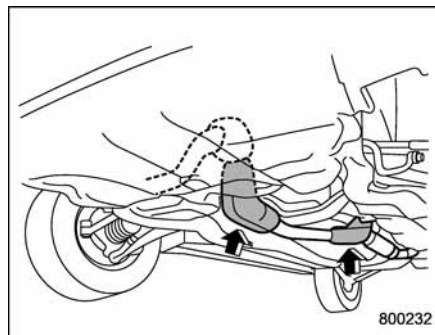
## NOTE

Due to the expansion and contraction of the metals used in the manufacture of the exhaust system, you may hear a crackling sound coming from the exhaust system for a short time after the engine has been shut off. This sound is normal.

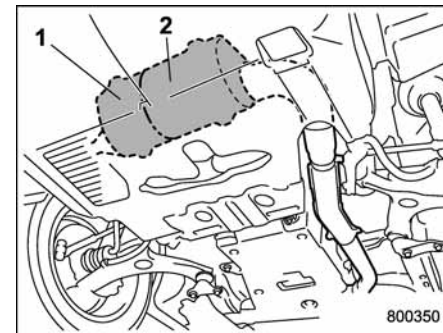
## Catalytic converter



Non-turbo petrol engine models



Turbo petrol engine models



### Diesel engine models

- 1) Catalytic converter
- 2) Diesel particulate filter

The catalytic converter is installed in the exhaust system. It serves as catalyst to reduce HC, CO and NOx in exhaust gases, thus providing cleaner exhaust.

To avoid damage to the catalytic converter:

- For petrol engine models, use only unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded fuel will damage the catalytic converter.
- For diesel engine models, use only diesel fuel that conforms to the specification of EN590 or an equivalent.
- Never start the engine by pushing or

pulling the vehicle.

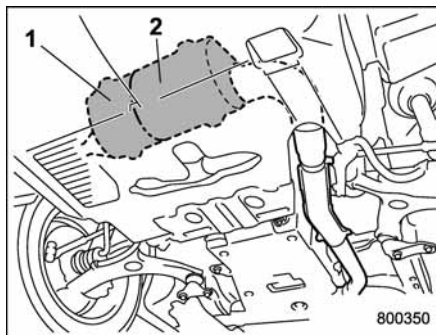
- Avoid racing the engine.
- Never turn off the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving.
- Keep your engine tuned-up. If you feel the engine running rough (misfiring, backfiring or incomplete combustion), we recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- Do not apply undercoating or rust prevention treatment to the heat shield of catalytic converter and the exhaust system.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level.



### WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g. grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures.**
- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

## Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)



- 1) Catalytic converter
- 2) Diesel particulate filter

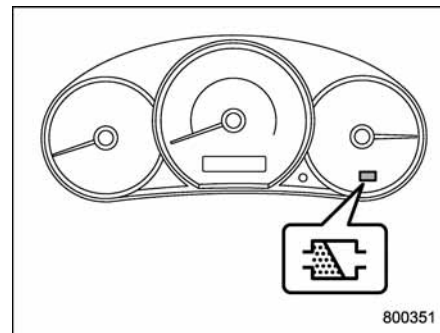
The diesel particulate filter is a device that eliminates particulate matter in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine.

In most cases, the accumulated soot is automatically burned in the filter while driving. However, accumulated soot in the filter is not burned if you drive the vehicle under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is continuously driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less
- when the vehicle is driven without sufficient preheating or the vehicle is repeatedly driven for only a short period

of time

- when the vehicle is idling for a long time



The diesel particulate filter warning light will illuminate when the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit. When the warning light illuminates, refer to "Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)" 3-33.



### WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g., grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the diesel particulate filter operates at very high temperatures.**

- Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the diesel particulate filter and exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.

## NOTE

- While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.
- If any service or maintenance is necessary for the diesel particulate filter, it should be performed by a well-trained expert. In some cases, the work requires maintenance of the on-board computer system using a special tool. Otherwise, the diesel particulate filter warning light will not operate properly. Therefore, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for service or maintenance of the diesel particulate filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at the SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools and spare parts.

## Periodic inspections

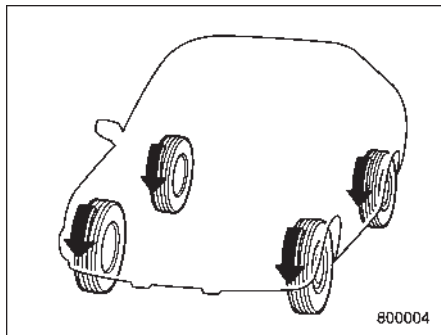
To keep your vehicle in the best condition at all times, always have the recommended maintenance services listed in the maintenance schedule performed at the specified time or mileage intervals.

## Driving in foreign countries

When planning to use your vehicle in another country:

- Confirm the availability of the correct fuel. Refer to "Fuel" 7-2.
- Comply with all regulations and requirements of each country.

## Driving tips for AWD models



All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. AWD models provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind:

- An AWD model is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a two wheel drive model. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.

- When replacing a tire, make sure you use only the same size, construction, brand, speed symbol and load index as the original tires listed on the tire placard. Using other sizes or construction may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking, speedometer/odometer calibration, and clearance between the body and tires. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.

- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recommended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side.

- Tire chains should always be placed on the front wheels only.

- Frequent driving of an AWD model under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of engine oil, brake fluid and transmission oil than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" ¶11-3.

- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to "Towing" ¶9-12.



### WARNING

- **Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.**
- **Always use the utmost care in driving - overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive model could easily lead to a serious accident.**



## On-pavement and off road driving



### WARNING

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt. You the driver and all your passengers should fasten the seatbelts before starting to drive in order to minimize the chance of serious injury or death.
- Do not make sharp turns and quick maneuvers unless absolutely unavoidable. Such actions are dangerous as you may lose control, possibly resulting in a rollover which could cause death or serious injury.
- Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.
- Whenever strong crosswinds are present, slow down sufficiently to maintain control of your vehicle. Remember that your vehicle,

with its higher profile and center of gravity, is more likely to be affected by crosswinds than ordinary passenger cars.

- Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive model could easily lead to a serious accident.

Your vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles feature a higher ground clearance which enables them to be used for wide applications including off-road driving. But please keep in mind that your vehicle is neither a conventional off-road vehicle nor an all-terrain vehicle. A higher center of gravity in relation to the tread width as compared with ordinary passenger cars makes vehicles of this type more likely to roll over. In reality, utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll-over rate than other types of vehicles. The high ground clearance of this vehicle is a real advantage, giving you a better view of the road and allowing you to anticipate problems earlier. However, remember that your utility vehicle is not designed for high-speed cornering comparable to ordinary passenger cars and that your vehicle could roll over if you make a sharp turn at high speed. If you do take your

SUBARU off-road, certain common sense precautions such as the following should be taken:

- Make certain that you and all of your passengers are wearing seatbelts.
- Carry some emergency equipment, such as a towing rope or chain, a shovel, wheel blocks, first aid kit and cell phone or citizens band radio.
- Drive carefully. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous areas or over rough terrain.
- Slow down and employ extra caution at all times. When driving off-road, you will not have the benefit of marked traffic lanes, banked curves, traffic signs and the like.
- Do not drive across steep slopes. Instead, drive either straight up or straight down the slopes. A vehicle can much more easily tip over sideways than it can end over end. Avoid driving straight up or down slopes that are too steep.
- Avoid sharp turning maneuvers, especially at higher speeds.
- Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Instead drive with your fingers and thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- If driving through water, such as when

crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the stream bed for firmness and ensure that the bed of the stream is flat. Drive slowly and completely through the stream. The water should be shallow enough that it does not reach the vehicle's undercarriage. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall. Never attempt to drive through rushing water; regardless of its depth, it can wash away the ground from under your tires, resulting in possible loss of traction and even vehicle rollover.

- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud or water. Do this by driving slowly and stepping on the brake pedal. Repeat that process several times to dry out the brake discs and brake pads.
- Do not drive or park over or near flammable materials such as dry grass or fallen leaves, as they may burn easily. The exhaust system is very hot while the engine is running and right after engine stops. This could create a fire hazard.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on the

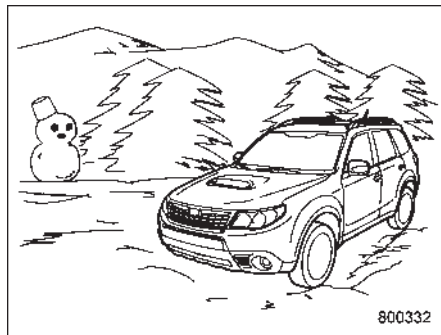
underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a mechanical breakdown or fire could occur.

- Secure all cargo carried inside the vehicle and make certain that it is not piled higher than the seatbacks. During sudden stops or jolts, unsecured cargo could be thrown around in the vehicle and cause injury. Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. Those loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- If you must rock the vehicle to free it from sand or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the select lever back and forth between "D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.
- When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (both for MT and AT).
- Never equip your vehicle with tires larger than those specified in this manual.
- Wash the vehicle's underbody after off-road driving. Suspension components are particularly prone to dirt buildup, so they need to be washed thoroughly.
- Frequent driving of an AWD model

under hard-driving conditions such as rough roads or off roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of engine oil, brake fluid and transmission oil than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

Remember that damage done to your SUBARU while operating it off-road and not using common sense precautions such as those listed above is not eligible for warranty coverage.

## Winter driving



### ■ Operation during cold weather

Carry some emergency equipment, such as tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand, flares, a small shovel and jumper cables.

Check the battery and cables. Cold temperatures reduce battery capacity. The battery must be in good condition to provide enough power for cold winter starts.

It normally takes longer to start the engine in very cold weather conditions. Use an engine oil of a suitable grade and viscosity for cold weather. Heavy summer oil will cause harder starting.

Keep the door locks from freezing by squirting them with deicer or glycerin.

Forcing a frozen door open may damage or separate the rubber weather strips around the door. If the door is frozen, use hot water to melt the ice, and afterwards thoroughly wipe the water away.

Use a windshield washer fluid that contains an antifreeze solution. Do not use engine antifreeze or other substitutes because they may damage the paint of the vehicle.

SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

| Washer Fluid Concentration | Freezing Temperature  |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>30%</b>                 | <b>-12°C (10.4°F)</b> |
| <b>50%</b>                 | <b>-20°C (-4°F)</b>   |
| <b>100%</b>                | <b>-45°C (-49°F)</b>  |

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature. If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one

used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.



### CAUTION

**Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.**

### ▼ Before driving your vehicle

Before entering the vehicle, remove any snow or ice from your shoes because that could make the pedals slippery and driving dangerous.

While warming up the vehicle before driving, check that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and all other controls operate smoothly.

Clear away ice and snow that has accumulated under the fenders to avoid making steering difficult. During severe

winter driving, stop when and where it is safe to do so and check under the fenders periodically.

### ▼ Parking in cold weather

Do not use the parking brake when parking for long periods in cold weather since it could freeze in that position. Instead, you should observe the following tips.

1. Place the shift lever in the “1” or “R” position for MT models, or place the select lever in the “P” position for AT models.
2. Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

When the vehicle is parked in snow or when it snows, raise the wiper blades off the glass to prevent damage to them.

When the vehicle has been left parked after use on roads heavily covered with snow, or has been left parked during a snowstorm, icing may develop on the brake system, which could cause poor braking action. Check for snow or ice buildup on the suspension, disc brakes and brake hoses underneath the vehicle.

If there is caked snow or ice, remove it, being careful not to damage the disc brakes and brake hoses and ABS harness.



### **WARNING**

**Snow can trap dangerous exhaust gases under your vehicle. Keep snow clear of the exhaust pipe and from around your vehicle if you park the vehicle in snow with the engine running.**

### ▼ Refueling in cold weather

#### ▽ Petrol engine models

To help prevent moisture from forming in the fuel system and the risk of its freezing, use of an antifreeze additive in the fuel tank is recommended during cold weather. Use only additives that are specifically designed for this purpose. When an antifreeze additive is used, its effect lasts longer if the tank is refilled whenever the fuel level reaches half empty.

If your SUBARU is not going to be used for an extended period, it is best to have the fuel tank filled to capacity.

#### ▽ Diesel engine models

For information about refueling in cold weather, refer to “Fuel requirements for diesel engine” 7-2.

### ■ Driving on snowy and icy roads

To prevent skidding and slipping, avoid sudden braking, abrupt acceleration, high-speed driving, and sharp turning when driving on snowy or icy roads.

Always maintain ample distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you to avoid the need for sudden braking.

To supplement the foot brake, use the engine brake effectively to control the vehicle speed. (Shift into a lower gear when necessary.)

Avoid shifting down abruptly. Such behavior can cause the wheels to lock, possibly leading to loss of vehicle control.

An anti-lock brake system (ABS) enhances your vehicle's braking performance on snowy and icy roads. For information about braking on slippery surfaces, refer to “ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)” 7-27 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control system” 7-29.



### **WARNING**

**Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads such as snowy or icy roads. This may cause loss of vehicle control.**

**CAUTION**

**Avoid prolonged continuous driving in snowstorms. Snow will enter the engine's intake system and may hinder the airflow, which could result in engine shutdown or even breakdown.**

**▼ Wiper operation when snowing**

Before driving in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window.

If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield or rear window, perform the following procedure.

- To thaw the windshield wiper blades, use the defroster with the airflow selection in “” and the temperature set for maximum warmth until the wiper blades are completely thawed. Refer to “Climate control”  4-1.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a wiper deicer, use it. It is helpful to thaw the windshield wiper blades. Refer to “Defogger and deicer”  3-50.
- To thaw the rear wiper blade, use the rear window defogger. Refer to “Defogger and deicer”  3-50.

When driving in snow, if frozen snow starts

to stick on the surface of the windshield despite wiper operation, use the defroster with the airflow control dial in “” and the temperature control dial set for maximum warmth. After the windshield gets warmed enough to melt the frozen snow on it, wash it away using the windshield washer. Refer to “Washer”  3-46.

Snow stuck on the wiper arm prevents the wiper from working effectively. If snow is stuck on the wiper arm, pull off the road to a safe place, then remove it. If you stop the vehicle at road side, use the hazard warning flasher to alert other drivers. Refer to “Hazard warning flasher”  3-7.

We recommend use of non-freezing type wiper blades (winter blades) during the seasons you could have snow and freezing temperatures.

Blades of this type give superior wiping performance in snowy conditions. Be sure to use blades that are suitable for your vehicle.

**CAUTION**

**During high-speed driving, non-freezing type wiper blades may not perform as well as standard wiper blades. If this happens, reduce the vehicle speed.**

**NOTE**

**When the season requiring non-freezing type wiper blades is over, replace them with standard wiper blades.**

**■ Corrosion protection**

Refer to “Corrosion protection”  10-4.

**■ Snow tires****WARNING**

- **When replacing original tires with winter (snow) tires, make sure you use only the same size, construction and load range as the tires listed on the tire placard. Using other sizes and construction may affect speedometer/odometer calibration and clearance between the body and tires. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.**

- **You must install four winter tires that are of the same size, construction, brand, and load range. Mixing other sizes or constructions may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking and speedometer/odometer calibration. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.**
- **Do not use a combination of radial, belted bias or bias tires since it may cause dangerous handling characteristics and lead to an accident.**

In winter, it may be possible to enhance performance through use of tires designed specifically for winter driving conditions. If you choose to install winter tires on your vehicle, be sure to use the correct tire size and type. All four tires must be of the same size, construction, brand and load index and you should never mix radial, belted bias or bias tires since this may result in dangerous handling characteristics. Remember to drive with care at all times regardless of the type of tires on your vehicle.

When using winter tires (speed symbol Q

or H) never exceed 160 km/h (99 mph) or 210 km/h (130 mph), respectively.

### ■ Tire chains

Driving on snowy grades or icy roads may require the use of tire chains, in which case put the chains on the front wheels only. Use only chains that are of the correct size for your tires so as not to damage the vehicle body or suspension. When driving with tire chains, drive at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Always use the utmost care when driving with tire chains – overconfidence because you are driving with tire chains could easily lead to a serious accident.

### ■ Rocking the vehicle

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between “1”/“D” and “R” repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

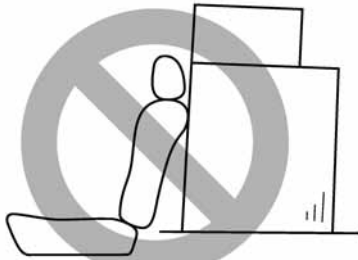
When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (both for MT and AT).

If your vehicle is an AT model, for information about holding the transmission in the 2nd position, refer to “Selection of manual mode” 7-21.

## Loading your vehicle

### WARNING

Never allow passengers to ride on a folded rear seatback or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury.



100094

### WARNING

Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident. Keep luggage or cargo low, as close to the floor as possible.

### WARNING

- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can to prevent it from being thrown around inside the vehicle during sudden stops, sharp turns or in an accident.
- Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. These loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- Secure long items properly to prevent them from shooting forward and causing serious injury during a sudden stop.
- Do not place anything on the extended cargo area cover. Such items could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or a collision. This could cause ser-

ious injury.

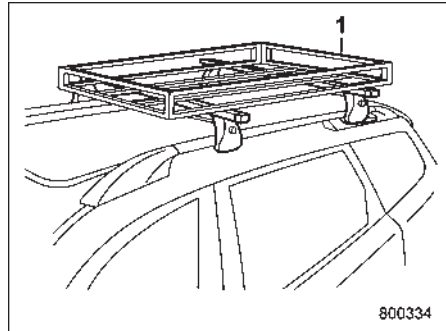
### CAUTION

Do not carry spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items inside the vehicle.

### NOTE

For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded cargo.

### ■ Roof rails (if equipped)



800334

1) Roof rack

Luggage can be carried on the roof after securing the roof rack to the roof rails.



When installing the roof rack on the roof rails, follow the manufacturer's instructions. The roof rails are designed to carry loads (luggage and roof rack) of no more than **80 kg (176 lbs)**.



## CAUTION

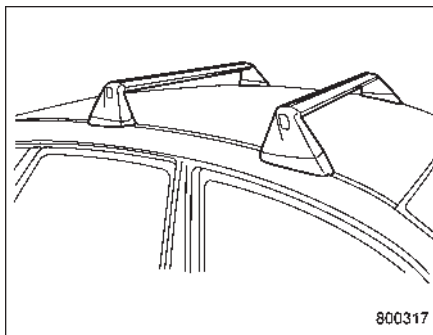
- When using the roof rack, make sure that the total carry load of the roof rack and luggage does not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle.
- For cargo carrying purposes, the roof rails must be used together with the roof rack. The roof rails must never be used alone to carry cargo. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint, or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.

## NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting driving characteristics.

Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

## ■ Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)



## CAUTION

- For cargo carrying purposes, the roof moldings must be used together with a load carrier kit and the appropriate carrying attachments. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.
- When using the load carrier kit, make sure that the total weight of the load carrier kit, carrying attachments and cargo does not exceed the maximum load limit. Overloading may cause damage

**to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.**

Cargo can be carried after securing the load carrier kit to the roof moldings and installing the appropriate carrying attachments. When installing the load carrier kit, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum load limit of the cargo, load carrier kit and carrying attachments must not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

## ▼ Installing carrying attachments on the load carrier

When installing any carrying attachments such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the load carrier, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachments are securely fixed to the load carrier. Use only attachments designed specifically for the load carrier. A set of the load carrier is designed to carry loads (cargo and attachments) of not more than **75 kg (165 lbs)**. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachments.

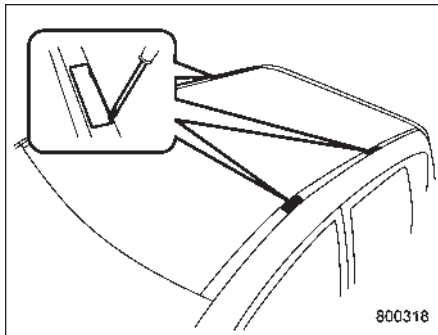


**NOTE**

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics.

**Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.**

▼ **Removal and installation of the load carrier**



Each of the two roof moldings has two mounting points for the load carrier kit. Each mounting point is fitted with a cover. Use a screwdriver to remove the covers. When installing the load carrier kit on the roof moldings, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

## Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed and intended to be used primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, drive train, brakes, tires and suspension and has an adverse effect on fuel economy.

In some countries, there are some regulations which you have to observe when towing a trailer. If you do decide to tow a trailer, your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment and cautious operation of your vehicle. We recommend that you seek the advice of your SUBARU dealer to assist you in purchasing a hitch and other necessary towing equipment appropriate for your vehicle. In addition, be sure to follow the instructions on correct installation and use provided by the trailer and other towing equipment manufacturers.

SUBARU assumes no responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage that result from trailer towing equipment, or from any errors or omissions in the instructions accompanying such equipment or for your failure to follow the proper instructions.

## ■ Maintenance

If you use your vehicle to tow a trailer, more frequent maintenance will be required due to the additional load. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

Under no circumstances should a trailer be towed with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new powertrain component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) for the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) of driving.

## ■ Towing weight

Before towing a trailer, we recommend that you confirm the towing capacity and ball coupling load with your nearest SUBARU dealer or the vehicle registration documents and make sure your trailer is within the towing capacity.

The total trailer weight (trailer weight with brakes plus its cargo weight) must never exceed maximum towing weight.

Remember that the ball coupling load will increase the load on the vehicle. Both the maximum permissible weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) must not be exceeded.



## WARNING

Never exceed the maximum towing weight. Exceeding the maximum towing weight could cause personal injury and/or vehicle damage.

### ▼ Diesel engine models

The stated trailer weights are only valid for elevations up to 1,000 m (3,250 ft) above sea level. At higher altitudes, the engine loses power as the elevation increases, resulting in a reduction of vehicle towing performance. Under these conditions, the “Maximum combined weight” should be reduced by 10% per 1,000 m (3,250 ft) of increased altitude. Please consider weight before driving.

## NOTE

The “Maximum combined weight” is the sum of the “Maximum permissible weight” (MPW) and the “Maximum trailer weight”.

## ■ Trailer hitches

The use of a genuine SUBARU trailer hitch is recommended. Genuine SUBARU hitches are available from your SUBARU dealer.

Regularly check that the hitch mounting

bolts and nuts are tight.



## CAUTION

Do not modify the vehicle exhaust system, brake system, or other system when installing a hitch or other trailer towing equipment.

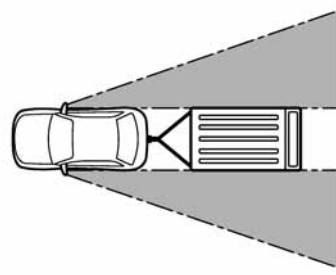
## ■ Trailer safety chains

In case the trailer hitch connector or hitch ball should break or become disconnected, the trailer could get loose and create a traffic safety hazard.

For safety, always connect the towing vehicle and trailer with trailer safety chains. Pass the chains crossing each other under the trailer tongue to prevent the trailer from dropping onto the ground in case the trailer tongue should disconnect from the hitch ball. Allow sufficient slack in the chains taking tight-turn situations into account; however, be careful not to let them drag on the ground.

For more information about the safety chain connection, refer to the instructions for your hitch and trailer.

## ■ Side mirrors



Many countries have regulations requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. After hitching a trailer to your vehicle, check that the standard side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without significant blind spots. If significant blind spots occur with the vehicle's standard side mirrors, use additional outside mirrors that conform with regulations.

## ■ Trailer lights

Connection of trailer lights to your vehicle's electrical system requires modifications to the vehicle's lighting circuit to increase its capacity and accommodate wiring changes. To ensure the trailer lights are connected properly, we recommend

that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Check for proper operation of the turn signals and the brake lights each time you hitch up.



### CAUTION

**Direct splicing or other improper connection of trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your vehicle lighting system.**

## ■ Tires

Make sure that all the tires on your vehicle are inflated to the pressure under towing conditions as shown on the tire placard located under the door striker on the driver's side. Trailer tire condition, size, load rating and proper inflation pressure should be in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's specifications.

## ■ Hitch stabilizer

Snaking movement can also be reduced by hitch stabilizers. The use of a hitch stabilizer is recommended. To purchase and install a hitch stabilizer, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer or professional hitch suppliers.

## ■ Trailer towing tips



### WARNING

- Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) or legal towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Exceeding the speed limit could cause loss of vehicle stability and/or could lead to an accident.
- When towing a trailer, steering, stability, stopping distance and braking performance will be different from normal operation. For safety's sake, you should employ extra caution when towing a trailer and you should never speed. You should also keep the following tips in mind.



### CAUTION

#### **Diesel models only:**

**The vehicle speed may decrease when climbing up a slope or during continuous high-load driving while towing a trailer. Therefore, please use extra caution when climbing up slopes while towing a trailer (for example, never attempt to pass vehicles while driving uphill, etc.). This control system is necessary for**

**maintaining the ability of the vehicle cooling performance and does not indicate a malfunction. The vehicle speed performance while towing a trailer will return to normal when the load of the vehicle is decreased and the cooling performance returns to normal.**

### ▼ Before starting out on a trip

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirement before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Check that the vehicle and vehicle-to-hitch mounting are in good condition. If any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer.
- Check that the vehicle sits horizontally with the trailer attached. If the vehicle is tipped sharply up at the front and tipped down at the rear, check that the drawbar weight and the weight on the rear axle do not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle weight.
- Check that the tire pressures are correct.
- Check that the vehicle and trailer are connected properly. Confirm that

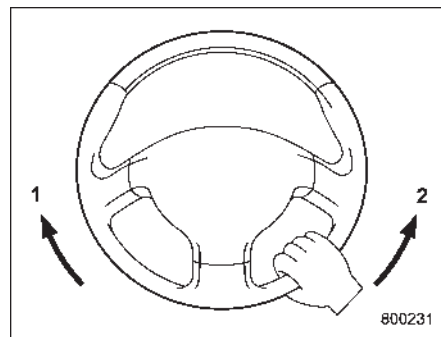
- the trailer tongue is connected properly to the hitch ball.
- the trailer lights connector is connected properly and trailer's brake lights illuminate when the vehicle's brake pedal is pressed, and that the trailer's turn signal lights flash when the vehicle's turn signal lever is operated.
- the safety chains are connected properly.
- all cargo in the trailer is secured safely in position.
- the side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without a significant blind spot.

#### ▼ Driving with a trailer

- You should allow for considerably more stopping distance when towing a trailer. Avoid sudden braking because it may result in skidding or jackknifing and loss of control.
- Avoid abrupt starts and sudden accelerations. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, always start out in first gear and release the clutch at moderate engine revolution.
- Avoid uneven steering, sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
- Slow down before turning. Make a longer than normal turning radius because

the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. In a tight turn, the trailer could hit your vehicle.

- Sufficient time should be taken to learn the “feel” of the vehicle/trailer combination before starting out on a trip. In an area free of traffic, practice turning, stopping and backing up.
- Crosswinds will adversely affect the handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Crosswinds can be due to weather conditions or the passing of large trucks or buses. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel and slow down immediately but gradually.
- When passing other vehicles, considerable distance is required because of the added weight and length caused by attaching the trailer to your vehicle.



- 1) Left turn
- 2) Right turn

- Backing up with a trailer is difficult and takes practice. When backing up with a trailer, never accelerate or steer rapidly. When turning back, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left for a left turn, and turn it to the right for a right turn.
- If the ABS warning light illuminates while the vehicle is in motion, stop towing the trailer. We recommend that you have repairs performed immediately by the nearest SUBARU dealer.

#### ▼ Driving on grades

- On vehicles equipped with a dual range transmission, it is advisable to select the LO position when starting the

vehicle at an upgrade.

- Before going down a steep hill, slow down and shift into lower gear (if necessary, use 1st gear) in order to utilize the engine braking effect and prevent overheating of your vehicle's brakes. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, the air conditioner may turn off automatically to protect the engine from overheating.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, pay attention to the following indicators because the engine and transmission are relatively prone to overheating.
  - Temperature gauge (if equipped)
  - Coolant temperature high warning light (if equipped)
  - AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models)
- If any of the following conditions occur, immediately turn off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Refer to "If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency" 9-2 and "Engine overheating" 9-11.
  - Temperature gauge needle approaches the OVERHEAT zone (if equipped). Refer to "Temperature gauge" 3-13.
  - Coolant temperature high warning light illuminates (if equipped). Refer to "Coolant temperature low indicator

light/Coolant temperature high warning light" 3-18.

- AT OIL TEMP warning light illuminates (AT models). Refer to "AT OIL TEMP warning light (AT models)" 3-20.
- If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, avoid using the accelerator pedal to stay stationary on an uphill slope instead of using the parking brake or foot brake. That may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.
- If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, place the select lever as follows. Uphill slopes: "D" position  
Downhill slopes: A low-speed gear position to use engine braking

#### ▼ Parking on a grade

Always block the wheels under both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly. You should not park on a hill or slope. But if parking on a hill or slope cannot be avoided, you should take the following steps.

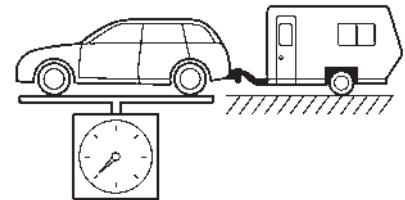
1. Apply the brakes and hold the pedal down.
2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release the regular brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

4. Apply the regular brakes and then apply the parking brake; slowly release the regular brakes.
5. Shift into 1st or reverse gear (MT models) or "P" (AT models) and shut off the engine.

### ■ Additional information for Europe

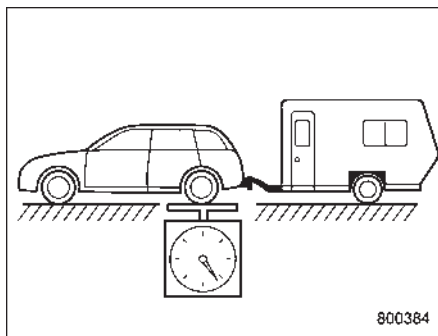
The following information represents the European statutory and regulatory requirements of 95/48/EC (92/21/EEC).

#### ▼ Maximum permissible vehicle weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) for trailer towing



800368

**MPW**



**Rear MPBW**

| Model               |     | MPW at towing (kg) | Rear MPBW at towing (kg) |
|---------------------|-----|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 2.0 L petrol engine | D/R | 2,015              | 1,180                    |
|                     | AT  | 2,015              | 1,180                    |
| 2.0 L diesel engine | 6MT | 2,080              | 1,180                    |
| 2.5 L non-turbo     | D/R | 2,015              | 1,180                    |
|                     | AT  | 2,015              | 1,180                    |
| 2.5 L turbo         | 5MT | 2,030              | 1,180                    |
|                     | AT  | 2,045              | 1,180                    |

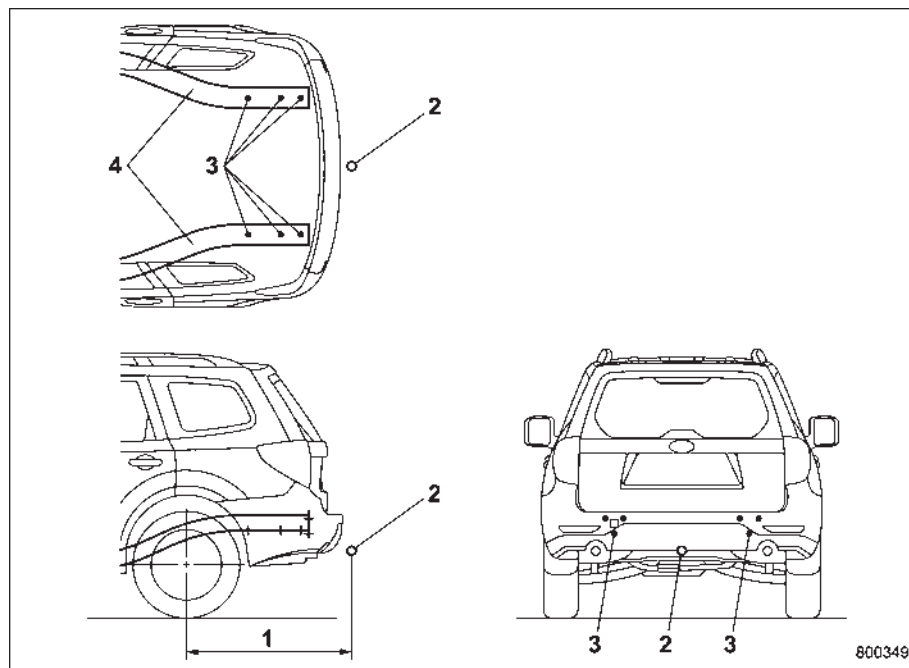
5MT: 5-speed manual transmission  
D/R: Dual-range manual transmission  
6MT: 6-speed manual transmission  
AT: Automatic transmission

▼ **Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device**

80 kg

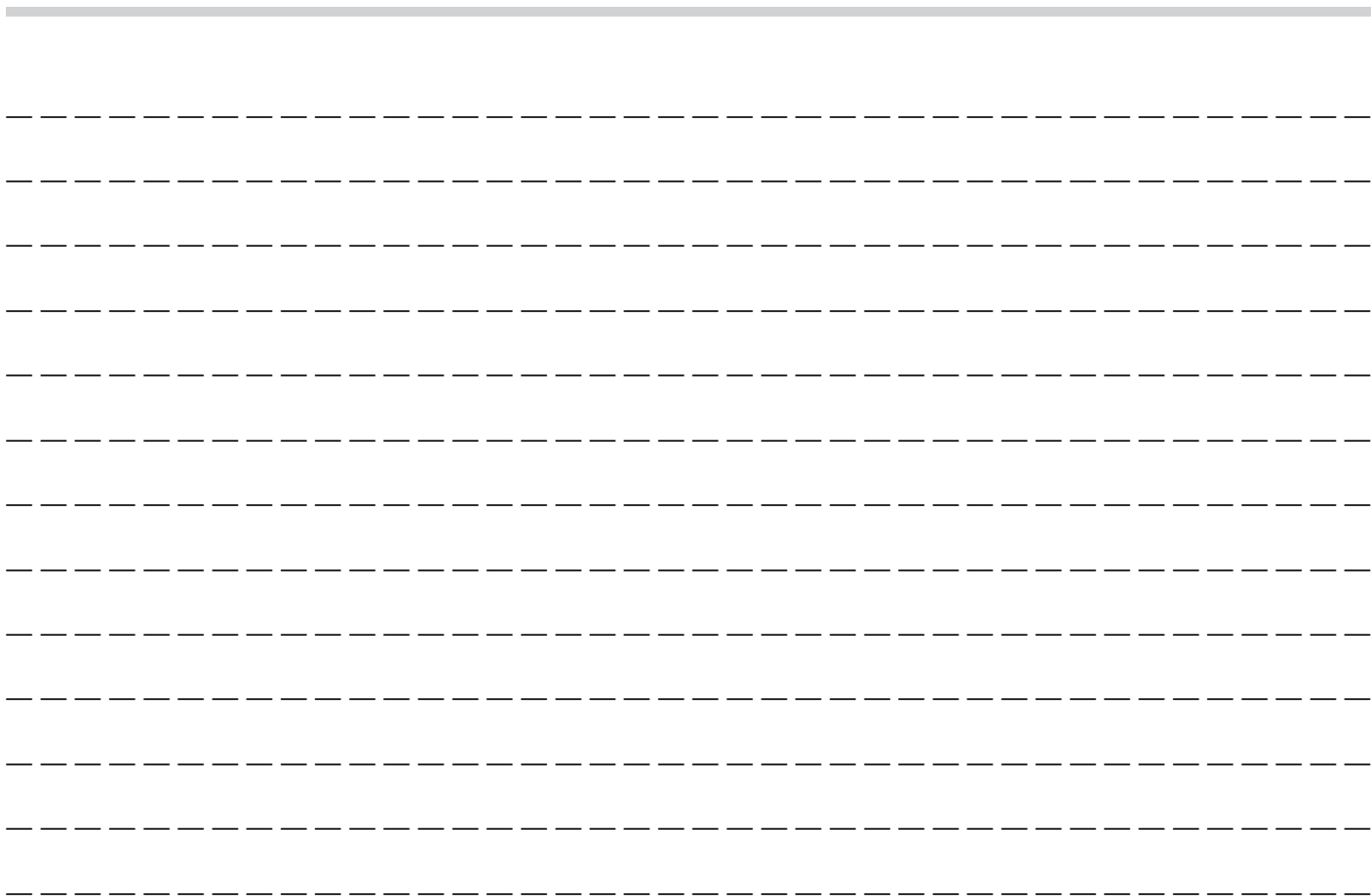
▼ **Mounting points of the coupling device**

The mounting points of the coupling device are shown in the diagram.



- 1) Maximum permissible overhang of the coupling device: 1,074 mm (42 in)
- 2) Coupling
- 3) Fixing points: Three places under the rear frame and three places on the rear end of the rear frame for each side
- 4) Rear frame

800349

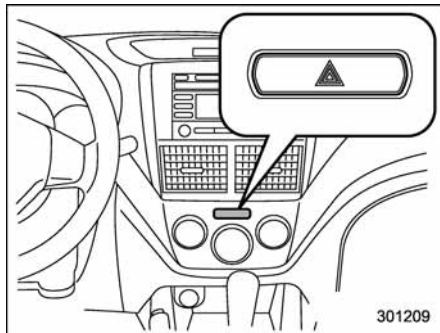




|                                                               |             |                                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency .....</b> | <b>9-2</b>  | <b>Towing .....</b>                                   | <b>9-12</b> |
| <b>Maintenance tools .....</b>                                | <b>9-2</b>  | Towing and tie-down hooks.....                        | 9-12        |
| Tool bag.....                                                 | 9-3         | Using a flat-bed truck.....                           | 9-14        |
| Under the cargo area.....                                     | 9-3         | Towing with all wheels on the ground.....             | 9-15        |
| <b>Flat tires .....</b>                                       | <b>9-4</b>  | <b>Access key – if access key does not</b>            | <b>9-15</b> |
| Changing a flat tire.....                                     | 9-4         | operate properly .....                                | 9-15        |
| <b>Jump starting .....</b>                                    | <b>9-7</b>  | Locking and unlocking.....                            | 9-16        |
| Battery Precautions!.....                                     | 9-7         | Switching power .....                                 | 9-16        |
| Precautions when jump starting! .....                         | 9-8         | Starting engine .....                                 | 9-16        |
| How to jump start.....                                        | 9-9         | <b>Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be</b>         | <b>9-17</b> |
| <b>Engine overheating .....</b>                               | <b>9-11</b> | opened.....                                           | 9-17        |
| If steam is coming from the engine                            |             | <b>Sunroof – if the sunroof cannot be closed.....</b> | <b>9-18</b> |
| compartment.....                                              | 9-11        | <b>Running out of fuel (diesel engine</b>             |             |
| If no steam is coming from the engine                         |             | models).....                                          | 9-18        |
| compartment.....                                              | 9-11        |                                                       |             |

## **If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency**

---



The hazard warning flasher should be used in day or night to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions.

Avoid stopping on the road. It is best to safely pull off the road if a problem occurs.

The hazard warning flasher can be activated regardless of the ignition switch position.

Turn on the hazard warning by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch. Turn it off by pushing the switch again.

### **NOTE**

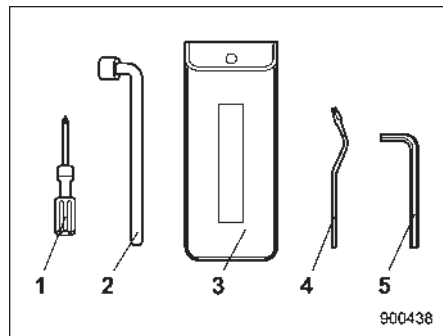
When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

## **Maintenance tools**

---

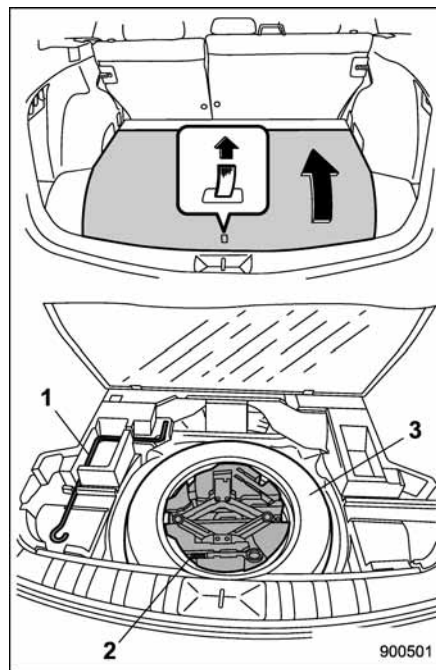
Your vehicle is equipped with the following maintenance tools:

- Jack
- Jack handle
- Screwdriver
- Towing hook (eye bolt)
- Wheel nut wrench
- Hex-head wrench (only models with sunroof)
- Wheel cover remover (only models with wheel covers)

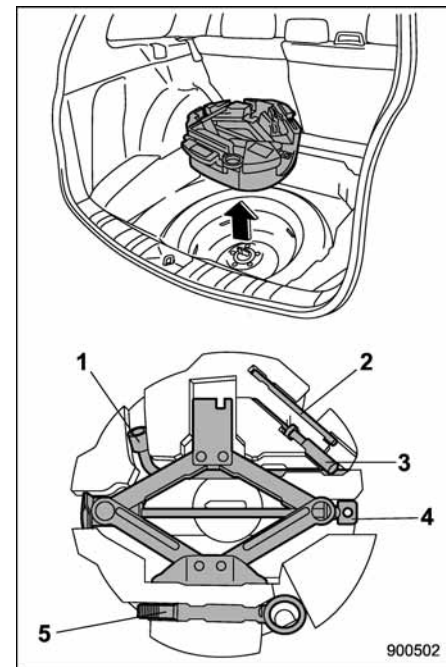
**■ Tool bag**

- 1) Screwdriver
- 2) Wheel nut wrench
- 3) Tool bag
- 4) Wheel cover remover (only models with wheel covers)
- 5) Hex-head wrench (only models with sunroof)

The screwdriver and wheel nut wrench are stored in the tool bag.

**■ Under the cargo area**

- 1) Jack handle
- 2) Tool bucket
- 3) Spare tire



- 1) Wheel nut wrench
- 2) Hex-head wrench (only models with sunroof)
- 3) Screwdriver
- 4) Jack
- 5) Towing hook (eye bolt)

The jack handle is stored under the cargo

– **CONTINUED** –

floor. The jack and towing hook are stored in the tool bucket that is located in the recess of the spare tire wheel.

Also, the tools in the tool bag can be stored in the tool bucket as illustrated.

For how to use the jack, refer to “Flat tires” 9-4.

### Flat tires

If you have a flat tire while driving, never brake suddenly; keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

#### ■ Changing a flat tire



#### WARNING

- Do not jack up the vehicle on an incline or a loose road surface. The jack can come out of the jacking point or sink into the ground and this can result in a severe accident.
- Use only the jack provided with your vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is designed only for changing a tire. Never get under the vehicle while supporting the vehicle with this jack.



#### WARNING

For Australia and New Zealand, the following instructions are supplied by the Australian/New Zealand Standard™ (AS/NZS 2693:2007). Be sure to obey the following instructions for your safety.

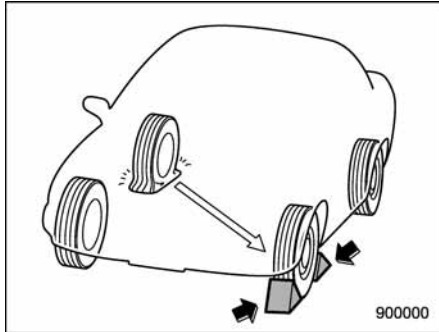
- That the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.
- That it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.
- That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

1. Park on a hard, level surface, when-

ever possible, then stop the engine.

2. Apply the parking brake securely and shift the shift lever in reverse (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" (Park) position (AT models).

3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher and have everyone get out of the vehicle.



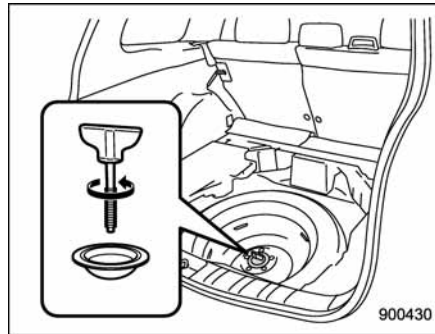
4. Put wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite the flat tire.

5. Take out the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench.

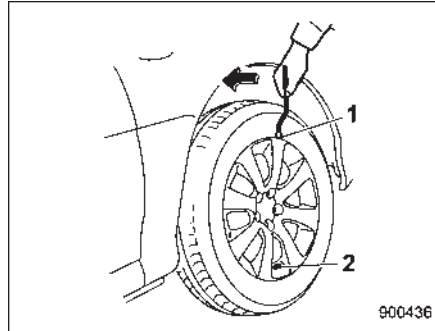
The tools and the spare tire are stored under the floor of the cargo area. Refer to "Maintenance tools" 9-2.

## NOTE

**Make sure that the jack is well lubricated before using it.**



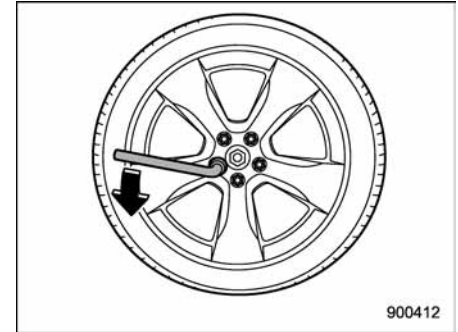
6. Take out the tool bucket and turn the attaching bolt counter-clockwise, then take the spare tire out.



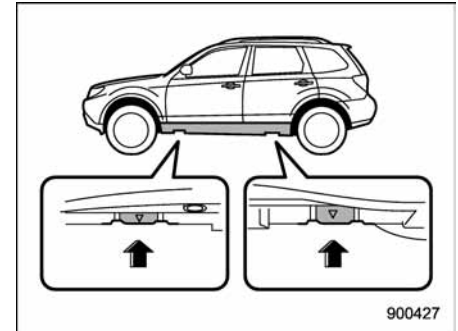
- 1) Notch
- 2) Valve hole

7. If your vehicle has wheel covers, insert

a wheel cover remover into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole and pry the wheel cover to remove it.



8. Loosen the wheel nuts using the wheel nut wrench but do not remove the nuts.

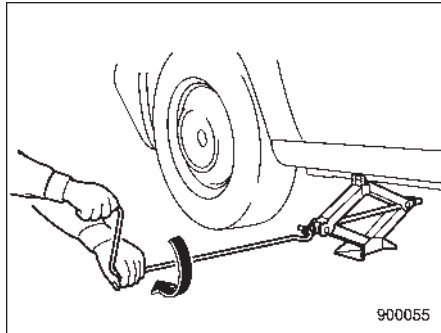


9. Place the jack under the side sill at the

## 9-6 In case of emergency

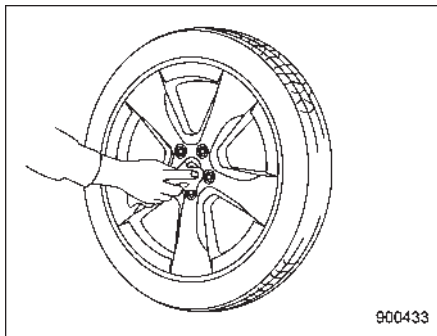
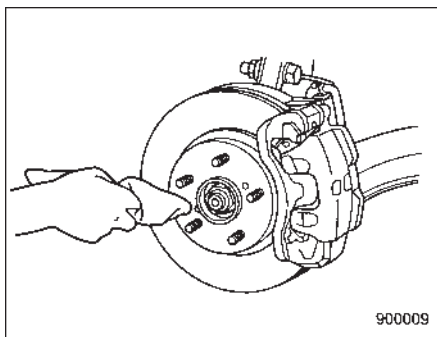
front or rear jack-up point closest to the flat tire.

Turn the jackscrew by hand until the jack head engages firmly into the jack-up point.



10. Insert the jack handle into the jack-screw, and turn the handle until the tire clears the ground. Do not raise the vehicle higher than necessary.

11. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire.



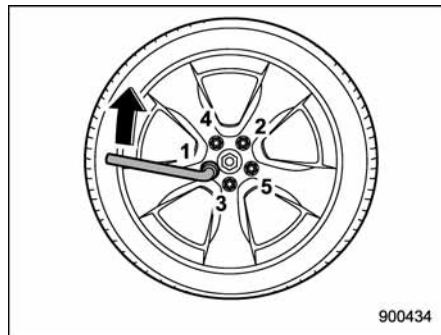
12. Before putting the spare tire on, clean the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a cloth.

13. Put on the spare tire. Replace the wheel nuts. Tighten them by hand.

**WARNING**

**Do not use oil or grease on the wheel studs or nuts when the spare tire is installed. This could cause the nuts to become loose and lead to an accident.**

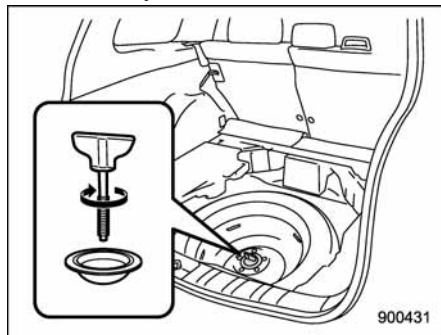
14. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.



15. Use the wheel nut wrench to securely tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque, following the tightening order in the illustration.

The torque for tightening the nuts is 100 N·m (10.2 kgf·m, 73.8 lbf·ft). This torque is equivalent to applying approximately 40 to 50 kg (88 to 110 lbs) at the top of the wheel nut wrench. Never use your foot on

the wheel nut wrench or a pipe extension on the wrench because you may exceed the specified torque. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.



16. Store the flat tire in the spare tire compartment. Put the spacer and tighten the attaching bolt firmly.

Also store the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench in their storage locations.



### **WARNING**

**Never place a tire or tire changing tools in the passenger compartment after changing wheels. In a sudden stop or collisions, loose equipment could strike occupants and cause injury. Store the tire and all tools in**

**the proper place.**

## **Jump starting**

### **Battery Precautions!**



### **WARNING**



**Read these instructions carefully:**

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.



**Wear eye protection:**

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.



**Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:**

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection

and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.



**Keep children away:**

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

can cause blindness and burns.



**Keep flames away:**

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (-) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.



**Prevent explosions:**

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-

gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.

## ■ Precautions when jump starting!



### **WARNING**

- Never attempt jump starting if the discharged battery is frozen. It could cause the battery to burst or explode.
- Be sure the jumper cables and clamps on them do not have loose or missing insulation.  
Do not jump start unless cables in suitable condition are available.
- A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.
- Jump starting is dangerous if it done incorrectly. If you are unsure about the proper procedure



**for jump starting, consult a competent mechanic.**



**CAUTION**

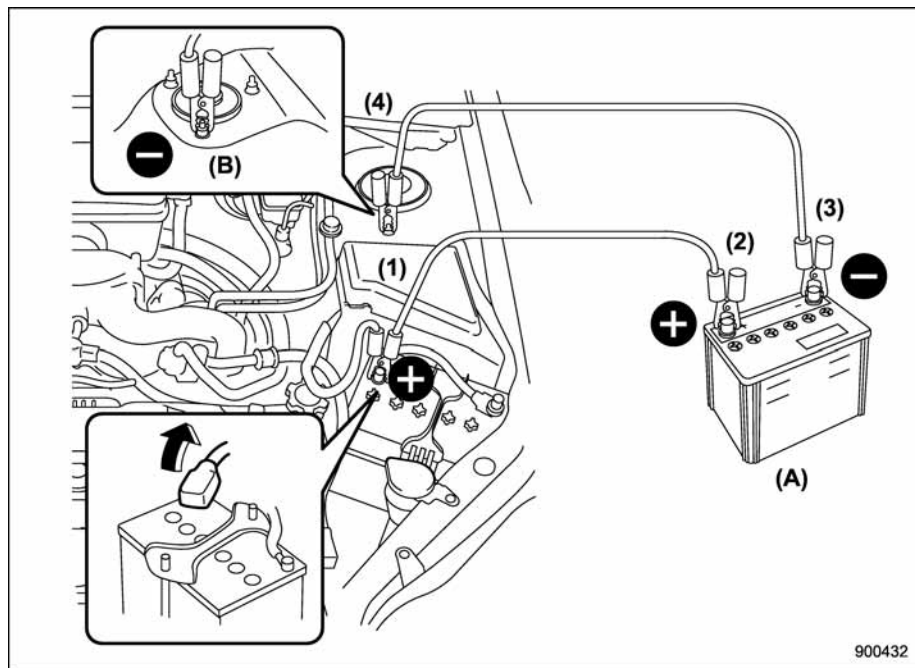
**The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.**

When your vehicle does not start due to a run down (discharged) battery, the vehicle may be jump started by connecting your battery to another battery (called the booster battery) with jumper cables.

■ **How to jump start**

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12 volts and the negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not let the two vehicles touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
4. Connect the jumper cables exactly in the sequence illustrated.

## 9-10 In case of emergency



- A) Booster battery  
B) Strut mounting nut

(1) Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

(2) Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.

(3) Connect one end of the other cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery.

(4) Connect the other end of the cable to the strut mounting nut.

Make sure that the cables are not near any moving parts and that the cable clamps are not in contact with any other metal.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and run it at moderate speed. Then start the engine of the vehicle that has the discharged battery.

6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order.

## Engine overheating



### WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has fully cooled down. When the engine is hot, the coolant is under pressure. Removing the cap while the engine is still hot could release a spray of boiling hot coolant, which could burn you very seriously.

If the engine overheats, safely pull off the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place.

### ■ If steam is coming from the engine compartment

Turn off the engine and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.

### ■ If no steam is coming from the engine compartment

#### NOTE

For details about how to check the coolant level or how to add coolant, refer to “Engine coolant”  11-20.

1. Keep the engine running at idling speed.

2. Open the hood to ventilate the engine compartment. Refer to “Engine hood”  11-10.

Confirm that the cooling fan is turning. If the fan is not turning, immediately turn off the engine and contact your authorized dealer for repair.

3. After the engine coolant temperature has dropped, turn off the engine.

If any of the following conditions occur, turn off the engine.

- The temperature gauge stays in the overheated zone (if equipped). Refer to “Temperature gauge”  3-13.
- The coolant temperature high warning light remains illuminated (if equipped). Refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light”  3-18.

4. After the engine has fully cooled down, check the coolant level in the reserve tank.

If the coolant level is below the “LOW” mark, add coolant up to the “FULL” mark.

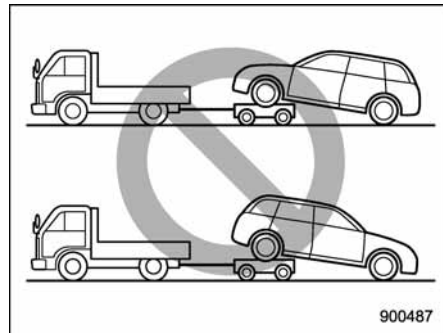
5. If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, add coolant to the reserve tank. Then remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with coolant.

If you remove the radiator cap from a hot radiator, first wrap a thick cloth around the radiator cap, then turn the cap counter-

clockwise slowly without pressing down until it stops. Release the pressure from the radiator. After the pressure has been fully released, remove the cap by pressing down and turning it.

## Towing

If towing is necessary, it is best done by your SUBARU dealer or a commercial towing service. Observe the following procedures for safety.



### **WARNING**

Never tow AWD models (both AT and MT) with the front wheels raised off the ground while the rear wheels are on the ground, or with the rear wheels raised off the ground while the front wheels are on the ground. This will cause the vehicle to spin away due to the operation or deterioration of the center differential.

## ■ Towing and tie-down hooks

The towing hooks should be used only in an emergency (e.g., to free a stuck vehicle from mud, sand or snow).

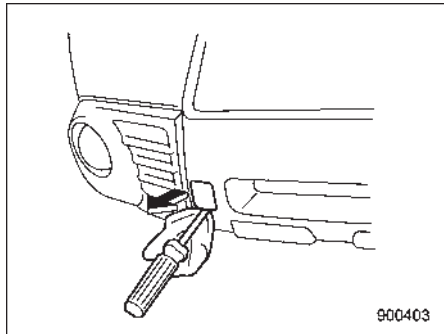


### **CAUTION**

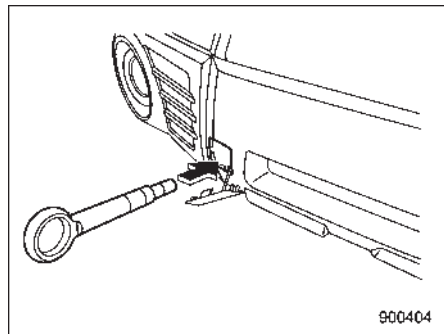
Use only the specified towing hook and tie-down hook. Never use suspension parts or other parts of the body for towing or tie-down purposes.

#### Front towing hook:

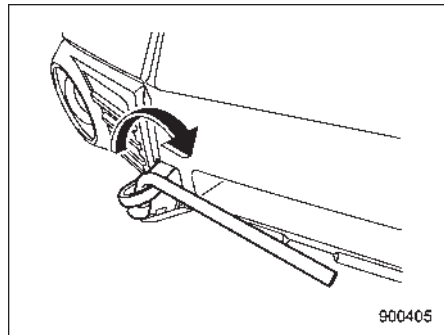
1. Take the towing hook out of the tool bucket and take the screwdriver out of the tool bag. Take the wheel nut wrench out of the cargo area.



2. Pry off the cover on the front bumper using a screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.



3. Screw the towing hook into the thread hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the wheel nut wrench.

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and stow it in the tool bucket. Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.



### WARNING

- Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.
- Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hook mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in a frontal collision.

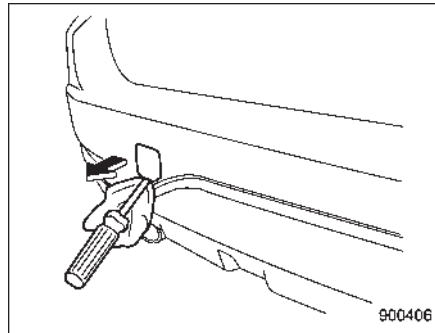


### CAUTION

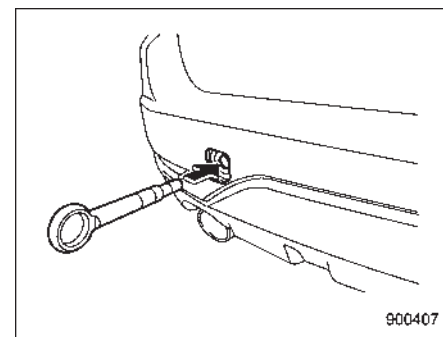
To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.

### Rear towing hook:

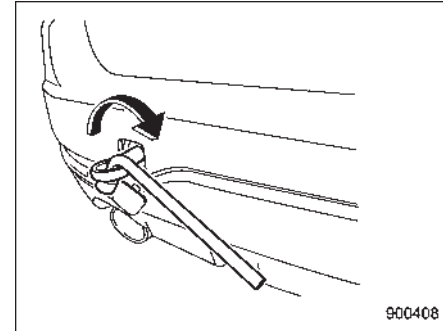
1. Take the towing hook out of the tool bucket and take the screwdriver out of the tool bag. Take the wheel nut wrench out of the cargo area.



2. Pry off the cover on the rear bumper using a screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.



3. Screw the towing hook into the thread hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the wheel nut wrench.

After towing, remove the towing hook from

## 9-14 In case of emergency

the vehicle and stow it in the tool bucket. Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.



### WARNING

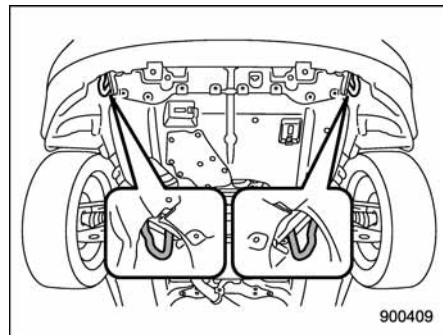
- Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.
- Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing.



### CAUTION

To prevent deformation to the bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.

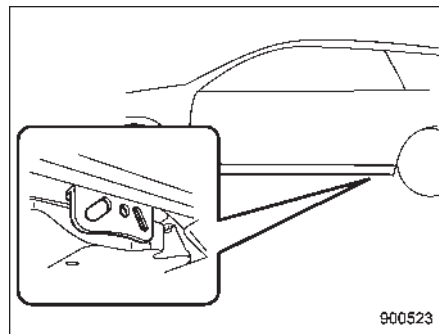
#### Front tie-down hooks:



The front tie-down hooks are located

between each of the front tires and the front bumper.

#### Rear tie-down hooks:



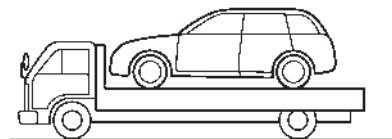
The rear tie-down hooks are located near each of the jack-up reinforcements.



### WARNING

Use the rear tie-down hooks only for downward anchoring. If they are used to anchor the vehicle in any other direction, cables may slip off the hooks, possibly causing a dangerous situation.

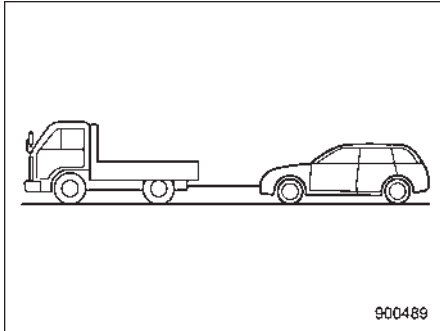
## ■ Using a flat-bed truck



This is the best way to transport your vehicle. Use the following procedures to ensure safe transportation.

1. Shift the select lever into the "P" position for AT models or the shift lever into "1st" for MT models.
2. Pull up the parking brake lever firmly.
3. Secure the vehicle onto the carrier properly with safety chains. Each of safety chain should be equally tightened and care must be taken not to pull the chains so tightly that the suspension bottoms out.

## ■ Towing with all wheels on the ground



1. Release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral.
2. The ignition switch should be in the "Acc" position while the vehicle is being towed.
3. Take up slack in the towline slowly to prevent damage to the vehicle.



### **WARNING**

- Never turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the vehicle is being towed because the steering wheel and the direction of the wheels will be locked.

- Remember that the brake booster and power steering do not function when the engine is not running. Because the engine is turned off, it will take greater effort to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel.



### **CAUTION**

- If transmission failure occurs, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.
- Do not run the engine while being towed in this method. Transmission damage could result if the vehicle is towed with engine running.
- For models with automatic transmission, the traveling speed must be limited to less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the traveling distance to less than 50 km (31 miles). For greater speeds and distances, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.

## **Access key – if access key does not operate properly**

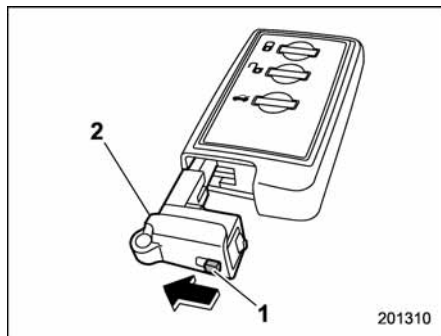


### **CAUTION**

Keep metallic objects, magnetic sources and signal transmitters away from between the access key and the push-button ignition switch. They may interfere with the communication between the access key and the push-button ignition switch.

If the locking/unlocking procedures, power switch procedures or engine start procedures cannot be operated because of strong radio noise in the surrounding area or low battery of the access key, perform the following procedure. When the battery of the access key is discharged, replace it with a new one. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" 11-59.

## ■ Locking and unlocking



- 1) Knob
- 2) Mechanical key

While pulling the knob of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

Lock or unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key.

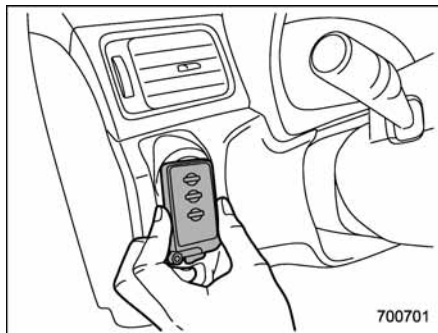
### NOTE

**After locking or unlocking, be sure to attach the mechanical key back to the access key.**

## ■ Switching power

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever in neutral (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" position (AT models).

3. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (AT models).



4. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green.

5. Within 5 seconds after the operation indicator illuminates in green, release the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (AT models), and press the push-button ignition switch.

### NOTE

**If the power does not switch even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

## ■ Starting engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever in neutral (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" position (AT models).
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).



5. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed,



a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green.

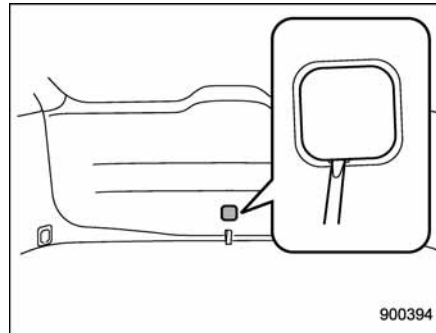
6. Within 5 seconds after the operation indicator illuminates in green, while depressing the brake pedal (all models) and the clutch pedal (MT models), press the push-button ignition switch.

## NOTE

If the engine does not start even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened

In the event that you cannot open the rear gate by operating the power door locking switches, keyless access function or remote keyless entry system, you can open it from inside the cargo area.



1. Remove the access cover at the bottom-center of the rear gate trim.

## NOTE

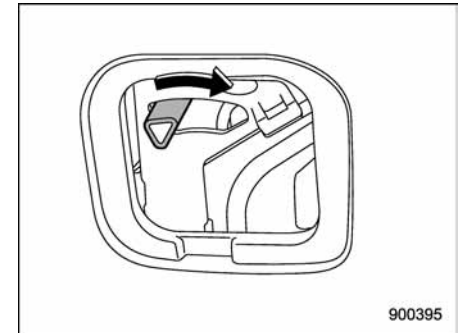
For models with the double locking system, the rear gate lock release lever is still shielded with an anti-theft cover. So, remove the anti-theft cover using a Phillips screwdriver to access the rear gate lock release lever.

2. Locate the rear gate lock release lever behind the rear gate trim panel.



## CAUTION

**Never operate the rear gate lock release lever with fingers because doing so may cause an injury. Always use a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.**

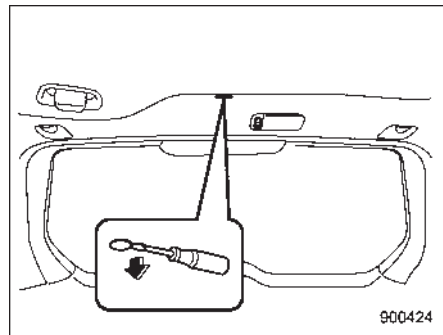


3. Unlock the rear gate by pressing the lever inside the trim to the right.

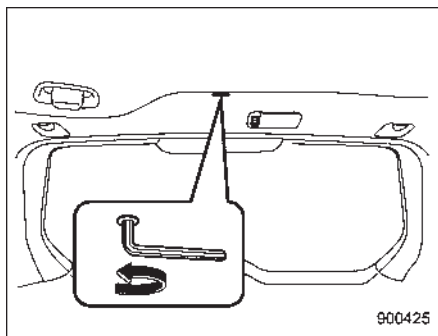
4. Open the rear gate from outside by raising the rear gate handle.

## Sunroof – if the sunroof cannot be closed

If the sunroof cannot be closed with the sunroof switch, you can close the sunroof manually.



1. Remove the plug on the roof trim of the cargo area by inserting the end of a flat-head screwdriver between the roof and pryng it off.



2. Insert a hex-head wrench in the end of the motor shaft.

To close the sunroof, turn the hex-head wrench counterclockwise. Pull the hex-head wrench out and reinsert it after every half-turn.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

## Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)

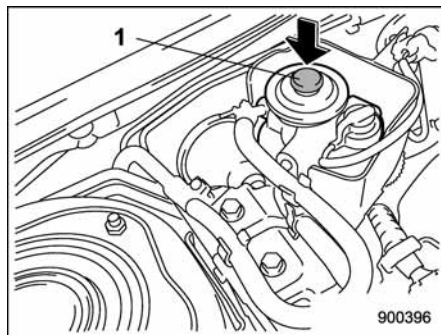
### CAUTION

- Do not try to start the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. Doing so could damage the engine and fuel system.
- Do not operate the starter motor for more than 30 seconds of total time. Doing so could overheat the starter motor and discharge the vehicle battery.

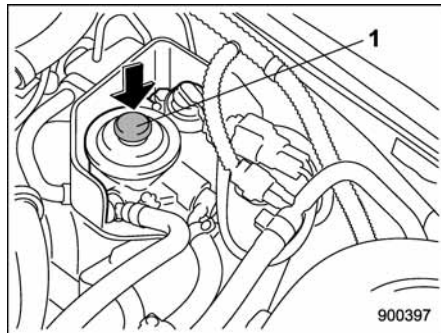
Perform the following procedure to restart the engine.

1. Refuel your vehicle.

For the fuel requirements and refueling procedure, refer to "Fuel" 7-2.

**Left-hand drive models**

1) Priming pump

**Right-hand drive models**

1) Priming pump

2. Operate the priming pump in the engine compartment by depressing the

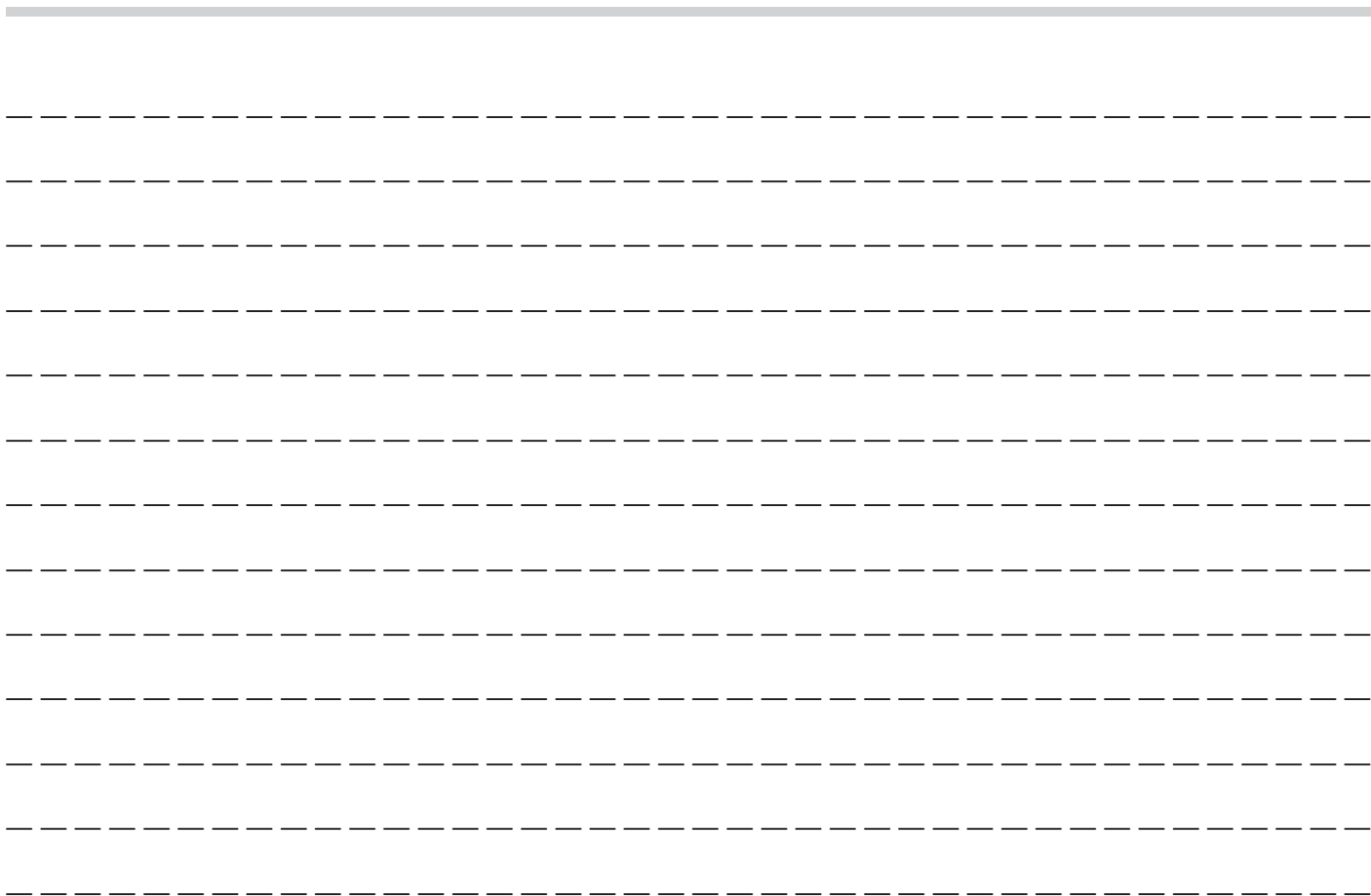
pumping knob until you feel strong resistance to bleed the trapped air from the fuel system.

3. Try to start the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine does not start, perform step 2 once again and restart the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine still does not start the second time, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

4. After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly. Also, confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.



|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Exterior care .....                  | 10-2 |
| Washing.....                         | 10-2 |
| Waxing and polishing.....            | 10-3 |
| Cleaning aluminum wheels.....        | 10-3 |
| Corrosion protection.....            | 10-4 |
| Most common causes of corrosion..... | 10-4 |
| To help prevent corrosion.....       | 10-4 |

|                                                                                                                                          |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Cleaning the interior.....                                                                                                               | 10-5 |
| Seat fabric.....                                                                                                                         | 10-5 |
| Leather seat materials.....                                                                                                              | 10-5 |
| Synthetic leather upholstery.....                                                                                                        | 10-5 |
| Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument<br>panel, console panel, switches, combination<br>meter, and other plastic surfaces ..... | 10-5 |
| Monitor (if equipped).....                                                                                                               | 10-6 |

## Exterior care

### ■ Washing



#### CAUTION

- When washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, the brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly pressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.
- Do not wash the engine compartment and area adjacent to it. If water enters the engine air intake, electrical parts or the power steering fluid reservoir (if equipped), it will cause engine trouble or a power steering malfunction.
- Do not use any organic solvents when washing the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a detergent with organic solvents is used to wash the cover surface, completely rinse off the detergent with water. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.
- Since your vehicle is equipped with a rear wiper, automatic car-

wash brushes could become tangled around it, damaging the wiper arm and other components. Ask the automatic car-wash operator not to let the brushes touch the wiper arm or to fix the wiper arm on the rear window glass with adhesive tape before operating the machine.

### NOTE

When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash, make sure beforehand that the car wash is of suitable type.

The best way to preserve your vehicle's beauty is frequent washing. Wash the vehicle at least once a month to avoid contamination by road grime.

Wash dirt off with a wet sponge and plenty of lukewarm or cold water. Do not wash the vehicle with hot water and in direct sunlight.

Salt, chemicals, insects, tar, soot, tree sap, and bird droppings should be washed off by using a light detergent, as required. If you use a light detergent, make certain that it is a neutral detergent. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be promptly

flushed from the surface and not allowed to dry there. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of lukewarm water. Wipe the remaining water off with a chamois or soft cloth.

### ▼ Washing the underbody

Chemicals, salts and gravel used for deicing road surfaces are extremely corrosive, accelerating the corrosion of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, floor pan and fenders, and suspension.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and inside of the fenders with lukewarm or cold water at frequent intervals to reduce the harmful effects of such agents.

Mud and sand adhering to the underbody components may accelerate their corrosion.

After driving off-road or muddy or sandy roads, wash the mud and sand off the underbody.

Carefully flush the suspension and axle parts, as they are particularly prone to mud and sand buildup. Do not use a sharp-edged tool to remove caked mud.



#### CAUTION

- Be careful not to damage brake

**hoses, sensor harnesses, and other parts when washing suspension components.**

- **Be careful not to flush the engine bottom for a long time. It may cause damage of some electrical parts.**

#### ▼ Using a warm water washer

- Keep a good distance of 30 cm (12 in) or more between the washer nozzle and the vehicle.
- Do not wash the same area continuously.
- If a stain will not come out easily, wash by hand. Some warm water washers are of the high temperature, high pressure type, and they can damage or deform the resin parts such as moldings, or cause water to leak into the vehicle.

#### ■ Waxing and polishing

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing and polishing.

Use a good quality polish and wax and apply them according to the manufacturer's instructions. Wax or polish when the painted surface is cool.

Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim, as well as the painted surfaces. Loss of wax on a painted surface leads to loss of

the original luster and also quickens the deterioration of the surface. It is recommended that a coat of wax be applied at least once a month, or whenever the surface no longer repels water.

If the appearance of the paint has diminished to the point where the luster or tone cannot be restored, lightly polish the surface with a fine-grained compound. Never polish just the affected area, but include the surrounding area as well. Always polish in only one direction. A No. 2000 grain compound is recommended. Never use a coarse-grained compound. Coarser grained compounds have a smaller grain-size number and could damage the paint. After polishing with a compound, coat with wax to restore the original luster. Frequent polishing with a compound or an incorrect polishing technique will result in removing the paint layer and exposing the undercoat. When in doubt, it is always best to contact your SUBARU dealer or an auto paint specialist.



#### **CAUTION**

**Do not use any agents with organic solvents on the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a polish or wax with organic solvents is**

**applied to the cover surface, completely wipe off the polish or wax. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.**

#### **NOTE**

**Be careful not to block the windshield washer nozzles with wax when waxing the vehicle.**

#### ■ Cleaning aluminum wheels

- Promptly wipe the aluminum wheels clean of any kind of grime or agent. If dirt is left on too long, it may be difficult to clean off.
- Do not use soap containing grit to clean the wheels. Be sure to use a neutral cleaning agent, and later rinse thoroughly with water. Do not clean the wheels with a stiff brush or expose them to a high-speed washing device.
- Clean the vehicle (including the aluminum wheels) with water as soon as possible when it has been splashed with sea water, exposed to sea breezes, or driven on roads treated with salt or other agents.

## **Corrosion protection**

Your SUBARU has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes have been used on most parts of the vehicle to help maintain fine appearance, strength, and reliable operation.

### **■ Most common causes of corrosion**

The most common causes of corrosion are:

1. The accumulation of moisture retaining dirt and debris in body panel sections, cavities, and other areas.
2. Damage to paint and other protective coatings caused by gravel and stone chips or minor accidents.

Corrosion is accelerated on the vehicle when:

1. It is exposed to road salt or dust control chemicals, or used in coastal areas where there is more salt in the air, or in areas where there is considerable industrial pollution.
2. It is driven in areas of high humidity, especially when temperatures range just above freezing.
3. Dampness in certain parts of the vehicle remains for a long time, even

though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.

4. High temperatures will cause corrosion to parts of the vehicle which cannot dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

### **■ To help prevent corrosion**

Wash the vehicle regularly to prevent corrosion of the body and suspension components. Also, wash the vehicle promptly after driving on any of the following surfaces.

- roads that have been salted to prevent them from freezing in winter
- mud, sand, or gravel
- coastal roads

After the winter has ended, it is recommended that the underbody be given a very thorough washing.

Before the beginning of winter, check the condition of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, suspension, steering system, floor pan, and fenders. If any of them are found to be rusted, they should be given an appropriate rust prevention treatment or should be replaced. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to perform this kind of

maintenance and treatment if you need assistance.

Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you find them.

Check the interior of the vehicle for water and dirt accumulation under the floor mats because that could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry.

Keep your garage dry. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. In such a garage, corrosion can be caused by dampness. If you wash the vehicle in the garage or put the vehicle into the garage when wet or covered with snow, that can cause dampness.

If your vehicle is operated in cold weather and/or in areas where road salts and other corrosive materials are used, the door hinges and locks, and hood latch should be inspected and lubricated periodically.



## **Cleaning the interior**

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches. (Do not use organic solvents.)

### ■ **Seat fabric**

Remove loose dirt, dust or debris with a vacuum cleaner. If the dirt is caked on the fabric or hard to remove with a vacuum cleaner, use a soft brush then vacuum it. Wipe the fabric surface with a tightly wrung cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a solution of mild soap and luke-warm water then dry thoroughly.

If the stain does not come out, try a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Use the cleaner on a hidden place and make sure it does not affect the fabric adversely. Use the cleaner according to its instructions.

### **NOTE**

**When cleaning the seat, do not use benzine, paint thinner, or any similar materials.**

### ■ **Leather seat materials**

The leather used by SUBARU is a high quality natural product which will retain its distinctive appearance and feel for many years with proper care.

Allowing dust or road dirt to build up on the surface can cause the material to become brittle and to wear prematurely. Regular cleaning with a soft, moist, natural fiber cloth should be performed monthly, taking care not to soak the leather or allow water to penetrate the stitched seams.

A mild detergent suitable for cleaning woolen fabrics may be used to remove difficult dirt spots, rubbing with a soft, dry cloth afterwards to restore the luster. If your SUBARU is to be parked for a long time in bright sunlight, it is recommended that the seats and headrests be covered, or the windows shaded, to prevent fading or shrinkage.

Minor surface blemishes or bald patches may be treated with a commercial leather spray lacquer. You will discover that each leather seat section will develop soft folds or wrinkles, which is characteristic of genuine leather.

### ■ **Synthetic leather upholstery**

The synthetic leather material used on the SUBARU may be cleaned using mild soap

or detergent and water, after first vacuuming or brushing away loose dirt. Allow the soap to soak in for a few minutes and wipe off with a clean, damp cloth. Commercial foam-type cleaners suitable for synthetic leather materials may be used when necessary.

### **NOTE**

**Strong cleaning agents such as solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner or fuel must never be used on leather or synthetic interior materials.**

### ■ **Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces**

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches.

### **NOTE**

**Do not use organic solvents such as paint thinners, fuel or strong cleaning agents that contain those solvents.**

### ■ **Monitor (if equipped)**

To clean the audio/navigation monitor, wipe it with a silicone cloth or with a soft cloth. If the monitor is extremely dirty, clean it with a soft cloth moistened with neutral detergent then carefully wipe off any remaining detergent.

#### **NOTE**

- **Do not spray neutral detergent directly onto the monitor. Doing so could damage the monitor's components.**
- **Do not wipe the monitor with a hard cloth. Doing so could scratch the monitor.**
- **Do not use cleaning fluid that contains thinner, fuel or any other volatile substance. Such cleaning fluid could erase the lettering on the switches at the bottom of the monitor.**

|                                                                                       |              |                                                      |              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Maintenance schedule .....</b>                                                     | <b>11-3</b>  | <b>Automatic transmission fluid.....</b>             | <b>11-29</b> |
| <b>Maintenance precautions.....</b>                                                   | <b>11-7</b>  | Checking the fluid level.....                        | 11-29        |
| Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment.....                           | 11-7         | Recommended fluid .....                              | 11-30        |
| When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (non-turbo models).....          | 11-8         | <b>Front differential gear oil (AT models) .....</b> | <b>11-30</b> |
| When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running..... | 11-8         | Checking the oil level .....                         | 11-30        |
| <b>Engine hood .....</b>                                                              | <b>11-10</b> | Recommended grade and viscosity .....                | 11-31        |
| <b>Engine compartment overview.....</b>                                               | <b>11-12</b> | <b>Rear differential gear oil (AWD models).....</b>  | <b>11-31</b> |
| Non-turbo petrol engine models.....                                                   | 11-12        | Recommended grade and viscosity .....                | 11-31        |
| Turbo petrol engine models .....                                                      | 11-13        | <b>Power steering fluid (if equipped) .....</b>      | <b>11-32</b> |
| Turbo diesel engine models.....                                                       | 11-14        | Checking the fluid level.....                        | 11-32        |
| <b>Engine oil.....</b>                                                                | <b>11-15</b> | Recommended fluid .....                              | 11-32        |
| Checking the oil level.....                                                           | 11-15        | <b>Brake fluid .....</b>                             | <b>11-33</b> |
| Changing the oil and oil filter.....                                                  | 11-17        | Checking the fluid level.....                        | 11-33        |
| Recommended grade and viscosity .....                                                 | 11-19        | Recommended brake fluid .....                        | 11-33        |
| Synthetic oil.....                                                                    | 11-19        | <b>Clutch fluid (MT models).....</b>                 | <b>11-34</b> |
| <b>Cooling system .....</b>                                                           | <b>11-19</b> | Checking the fluid level.....                        | 11-34        |
| Cooling fan, hose and connections .....                                               | 11-20        | Recommended clutch fluid.....                        | 11-34        |
| Engine coolant .....                                                                  | 11-20        | <b>Brake booster .....</b>                           | <b>11-35</b> |
| <b>Air cleaner element.....</b>                                                       | <b>11-23</b> | <b>Brake pedal .....</b>                             | <b>11-35</b> |
| Replacing the air cleaner element .....                                               | 11-23        | Checking the brake pedal free play .....             | 11-35        |
| <b>Spark plugs .....</b>                                                              | <b>11-26</b> | Checking the brake pedal reserve distance.....       | 11-36        |
| <b>Drive belts .....</b>                                                              | <b>11-26</b> | <b>Clutch pedal (MT models) .....</b>                | <b>11-36</b> |
| Turbo petrol engine models .....                                                      | 11-26        | Checking the clutch function.....                    | 11-36        |
| Non-turbo petrol engine models and diesel engine models .....                         | 11-27        | Checking the clutch pedal free play.....             | 11-36        |
| <b>Manual transmission oil .....</b>                                                  | <b>11-27</b> | <b>Replacement of brake pad and lining .....</b>     | <b>11-37</b> |
| Checking the oil level.....                                                           | 11-27        | Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings .....      | 11-37        |
| Recommended grade and viscosity .....                                                 | 11-28        | <b>Parking brake stroke .....</b>                    | <b>11-38</b> |
|                                                                                       |              | <b>Tires and wheels.....</b>                         | <b>11-38</b> |
|                                                                                       |              | Types of tires.....                                  | 11-38        |
|                                                                                       |              | Tire inspection.....                                 | 11-38        |

|                                        |       |
|----------------------------------------|-------|
| Tire pressures and wear .....          | 11-39 |
| Wheel balance.....                     | 11-40 |
| Wear indicators .....                  | 11-41 |
| Tire rotation direction mark .....     | 11-41 |
| Tire rotation .....                    | 11-41 |
| Tire replacement .....                 | 11-42 |
| Wheel replacement.....                 | 11-43 |
| Wheel covers (if equipped) .....       | 11-43 |
| Aluminum wheels (if equipped) .....    | 11-44 |
| Windshield washer fluid .....          | 11-44 |
| Replacement of wiper blades .....      | 11-45 |
| Windshield wiper blade assembly .....  | 11-46 |
| Windshield wiper blade rubber .....    | 11-46 |
| Rear window wiper blade assembly ..... | 11-47 |
| Rear window wiper blade rubber.....    | 11-48 |
| Battery.....                           | 11-49 |
| Battery Precautions!.....              | 11-49 |

|                                                                     |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Fuses .....                                                         | 11-51 |
| Main fuse .....                                                     | 11-52 |
| Installation of accessories .....                                   | 11-53 |
| Replacing bulbs .....                                               | 11-53 |
| Headlights (models with HID headlights).....                        | 11-53 |
| Headlights (models without HID headlights).....                     | 11-53 |
| Front position light and front turn signal<br>light .....           | 11-55 |
| Side turn signal light.....                                         | 11-56 |
| Rear combination lights .....                                       | 11-56 |
| License plate light .....                                           | 11-57 |
| Dome light, map light, cargo area light and<br>door step light..... | 11-57 |
| Other lights on the vehicle .....                                   | 11-58 |
| Replacing battery.....                                              | 11-59 |
| Replacing battery of access key .....                               | 11-59 |
| Replacing battery of transmitter .....                              | 11-61 |

## Maintenance schedule

To keep your vehicle in proper operating condition and to assure peak performance at all times, the recommended maintenance service should be performed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

### NOTE

The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services as set forth is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized SUBARU dealer for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.

Continue periodic maintenance beyond 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months to the column headings.

Symbols used:

**R:** Replace

**I:** Inspect, and then adjust, correct or replace if necessary.

**P:** Perform

**(R), (I):** Recommended service for safe vehicle operation

| MAINTENANCE ITEM |                   | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL<br>(Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) |     |    |    |    |    |    |    |     | REMARKS |             |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|---------|-------------|
|                  |                   | Months                                                                           |     | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  |         | 96          |
|                  |                   | × 1,000 km                                                                       | 5   | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 |         | 120         |
|                  |                   | × 1,000 miles                                                                    | 3   | 9  | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66  |         | 75          |
| 1                | Engine oil        | Non-turbo models                                                                 | (R) | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R   | R       | See NOTE 1) |
|                  |                   | Turbo models                                                                     |     | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R   | R       |             |
| 2                | Engine oil filter | Non-turbo models                                                                 | (R) | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R   | R       | See NOTE 1) |
|                  |                   | Turbo models                                                                     |     | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R  | R   | R       |             |

– CONTINUED –

## 11-4 Maintenance and service

| MAINTENANCE ITEM |                                                                           | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL<br>(Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) |                                                                                                                                                            |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     | REMARKS                                  |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|------------------------------------------|
|                  |                                                                           | Months                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                            | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  | 96  |                                          |
|                  |                                                                           | × 1,000 km                                                                       | 5                                                                                                                                                          | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 | 120 |                                          |
|                  |                                                                           | × 1,000 miles                                                                    | 3                                                                                                                                                          | 9  | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66  | 75  |                                          |
| 3                | Drive belt(s)<br>(except camshaft)                                        | Turbo petrol engine models                                                       |                                                                                                                                                            | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   |                                          |
|                  |                                                                           | Non-turbo models and diesel engine models                                        |                                                                                                                                                            | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | I   | Replace every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) |
| 4                | Camshaft drive belt (timing belt) for Europe (petrol engine models only)  |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                            |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     | Replace every 160,000 km (100,000 miles) |
| 5                | Camshaft drive belt (timing belt) for General (petrol engine models only) |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                            |    | I  |    | I  |    | I  | R   | I   | Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)  |
| 6                | Cooling system, hoses and connections                                     |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                            |    | I  |    | I  |    | I  |     | I   |                                          |
| 7                | Replace engine coolant (SUBARU Super Coolant or equivalent)               |                                                                                  | 1st replacement: <b>132 months (11 years)/220,000 km (137,500 miles)</b><br>From the 2nd replacement: <b>72 months (6 years)/120,000 km (75,000 miles)</b> |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |     |                                          |
| 8                | Fuel system, lines and connections                                        |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                            |    | I  |    | I  |    | I  |     | I   | See NOTE 2)                              |
| 9                | Fuel filter                                                               | Petrol engine models                                                             |                                                                                                                                                            |    |    |    |    |    | R  |     |     | Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles)   |
|                  |                                                                           | Diesel engine models                                                             |                                                                                                                                                            |    |    |    | R  |    |    |     | R   |                                          |
| 10               | Air cleaner element                                                       |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                            | I  | I  | R  | I  | I  | R  | I   | R   | See NOTE 3)                              |
| 11               | Spark plugs                                                               | Petrol engine models                                                             |                                                                                                                                                            |    |    |    |    |    |    | R   |     | Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)  |

| MAINTENANCE ITEM |                                                                                      | MAINTENANCE INTERVAL<br>(Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first) |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |     | REMARKS                                                |             |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                  |                                                                                      | Months                                                                           |   | 12 | 24 | 36 | 48 | 60 | 72 | 84  |                                                        | 96          |
|                  |                                                                                      | × 1,000 km                                                                       | 5 | 15 | 30 | 45 | 60 | 75 | 90 | 105 |                                                        | 120         |
|                  |                                                                                      | × 1,000 miles                                                                    | 3 | 9  | 19 | 28 | 38 | 47 | 56 | 66  |                                                        | 75          |
| 12               | Transmission/differential (front & rear) lubri-<br>cants (gear oil)                  |                                                                                  |   | I  |    | R  |    | I  |    | R   | See NOTE 4)                                            |             |
| 13               | Automatic<br>transmission<br>fluid                                                   | 4-speed models                                                                   |   |    | I  |    | I  |    | I  | R   | I                                                      | See NOTE 4) |
|                  |                                                                                      | 5-speed models                                                                   |   |    | I  |    | R  |    | I  |     | R                                                      | See NOTE 4) |
| 14               | Brake fluid                                                                          |                                                                                  |   | R  |    | R  |    | R  |    | R   | See NOTE 5)                                            |             |
| 15               | Disc brake pads and discs/Front and rear<br>axle boots and axle shaft joint portions |                                                                                  |   | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I  | I   | See NOTE 2)                                            |             |
| 16               | Brake lining and drums (including parking<br>brake linings and drums)                |                                                                                  |   | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   | See NOTE 2)                                            |             |
| 17               | Inspect brake lines and check operation of<br>parking and service brake system       |                                                                                  |   | P  |    | P  |    | P  |    | P   | See NOTE 2)                                            |             |
| 18               | Clutch system                                                                        |                                                                                  |   | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   | Adjust pedal free<br>play at 1,600 km<br>(1,000 miles) |             |
| 19               | Steering and suspension system                                                       |                                                                                  |   | I  |    | I  |    | I  |    | I   | See NOTE 2)                                            |             |
| 20               | Front and rear wheel bearing lubricant                                               |                                                                                  |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | (I) |                                                        |             |
| 21               | Air filtration system (air filter) for Europe                                        |                                                                                  |   | I  | R  | I  | R  | I  | R  | I   | R                                                      | See NOTE 3) |
| 22               | Air filtration system (air filter) for General                                       | Replace every 12 months or 12,000 km (7,500 miles) whichever occurs<br>first     |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |     | See NOTE 3)                                            |             |

**NOTE**

- 1) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples\*, the engine oil and oil filter should be changed more frequently.
- 2) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples\*, inspection should be performed at every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months, whichever occurs first.
- 3) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples\*, the air cleaner element and air filter should be replaced more frequently.
- 4) When the vehicle is frequently operated under severe driving conditions, such as towing a trailer or driving on sand, replacement of automatic transmission fluid, differential gear oil (front and rear) and manual transmission gear oil should be performed more frequently.
- 5) When the vehicle is used under following areas, change fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months, whichever occurs first.
  - (1) Areas with high humidity levels
  - (2) Mountainous areas

\* Examples of severe driving conditions:

- (1) Operating in extremely cold weather (Items 1, 2 19, 21 and 22 only)
- (2) Towing a trailer (Items 1, 2, 12, 13, 15 and 17 only)
- (3) Repeated short trips (Items 1, 2, 15 and 16 only)
- (4) Driving on dusty roads (Items 10, 15, 16, 19, 21 and 22 only)
- (5) Driving on rough and/or muddy roads (items 15, 16, 19, 21 and 22 only)
- (6) Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials (items 8, 15, 16, 17, 19, 21 and 22 only)
- (7) Living in coastal areas (items 8, 15, 16, 17 and 19 only)



## Maintenance precautions

When maintenance and service are required, it is recommended that all work be done by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

If you perform maintenance and service by yourself, you should familiarize yourself with the information provided in this section on general maintenance and service for your SUBARU.

Incorrect or incomplete service could cause improper or unsafe vehicle operation. Any problems caused by improper maintenance and service performed by you are not eligible for warranty coverage.



### WARNING

- Always select a safe area when performing maintenance on your vehicle.
- Always be very careful to avoid injury when working on the vehicle. Remember that some of the materials in the vehicle may be hazardous if improperly used or handled, for example, battery acid.
- Your vehicle should only be serviced by persons fully competent to do so. Serious personal injury

may result to persons not experienced in servicing vehicles.

- Always use the proper tools and make certain that they are well maintained.
- Never get under the vehicle supported only by a jack. Always use a safety stands to support the vehicle.
- Never keep the engine running in a poorly ventilated area, such as a garage or other closed areas.
- Do not smoke or allow open flames around the fuel or battery. This will cause a fire.
- Because the fuel system is under pressure, we recommend that you have the fuel filter replaced by your SUBARU dealer.
- Wear adequate eye protection to guard against getting oil or fluids in your eyes. If something does get in your eyes, thoroughly wash them out with clean water.
- Do not tamper with the wiring of the SRS airbag system or seatbelt pretensioner system, or attempt to take its connectors apart, as that may activate the system or it can render it inop-

erative when it should be operative. NEVER use a circuit tester for these wiring. If your SRS airbag or seatbelt pretensioner needs service, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.

## ■ Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment

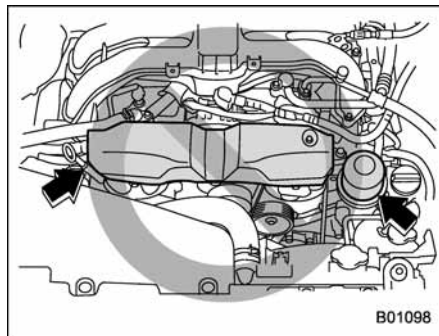


### WARNING

- Always stop the engine and apply the parking brake firmly to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- Always let the engine cool down. Engine parts become very hot when the engine is running and remain hot for some time after the engine is stopped.
- Do not spill engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid or any other fluid on hot engine components. This may cause a fire.

- Always remove the key from the ignition switch. When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the cooling fan may operate suddenly even when the engine is stopped.

### ■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (non-turbo models)



B01098

### ⚠ CAUTION

- For models with the drive belt cover, do not contact the cover while checking the components in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause your hand

to slip off the drive belt cover and result in an injury.

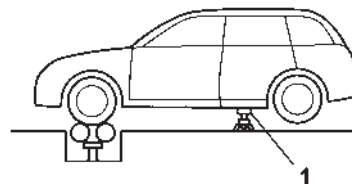
- Do not touch the oil filter until the engine has cooled down completely. Doing so may result in a burn or other injury. Note that the oil filter becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the engine has stopped.

### ■ When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running

#### ⚠ WARNING

A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.

### ▼ For all four wheels turning



B00994

1) Safety stand

For any maintenance and inspection performed on AWD models which requires a running engine and all four wheels turning, jack up all four wheels or use free rollers to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

### ▼ For front wheels turning

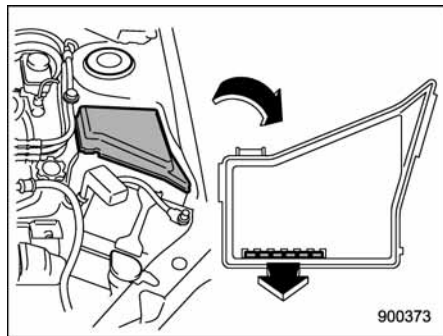
#### ⚠ CAUTION

The AWD MT models and 5-speed AT models cannot be changed over from AWD to FWD. If any maintenance or inspection requires a running engine and the front wheels turning with the AWD MT models, be

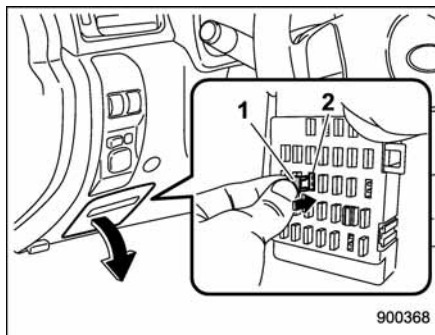
**sure to jack up all four wheels or use free rollers.**

For maintenance and inspection performed on **AWD 4-speed AT** models which requires a running engine and the front wheels turning (for example, when they are jacked up, driven on rollers, or tested by a brake tester), deactivate the AWD capability of the vehicle as follows.

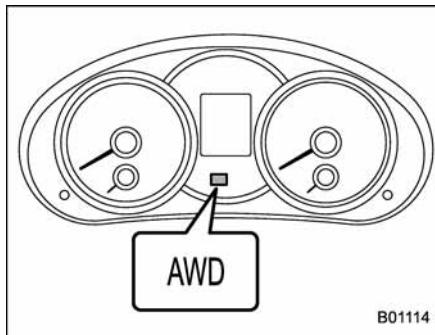
1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.



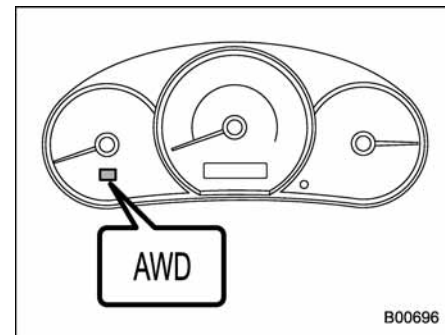
2. Pull any one spare fuse out of the spare fuse holder in the engine compartment. Spare fuses are attached on the back side of the fuse holder cover. You may pick up any one of the fuses in the spare fuse holder.



- 1) Spare fuse
- 2) FWD connector



**Type A and B**



**Type C and D**

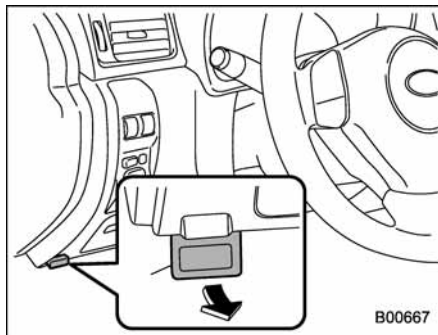
3. Put a spare fuse inside the FWD connector located in the cabin and confirm that the All-Wheel Drive warning light "AWD" illuminates. The All-Wheel-Drive capability of the vehicle has now been deactivated.

Always use reliable blocks to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

## NOTE

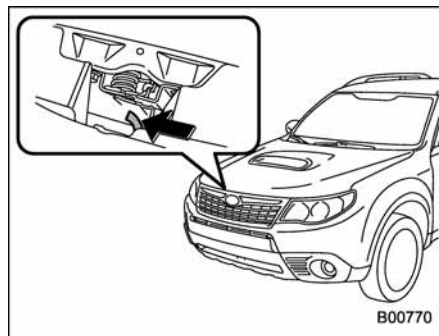
After that maintenance and inspection have been performed, remove the spare fuse from the FWD connector in order to reactivate All-Wheel Drive. Make sure to restore the removed spare fuse in the spare fuse holder located in the engine compartment.

## Engine hood



### To open the hood:

1. If the wiper blades are lifted off the windshield, return them to their original positions.
2. Pull the hood lock release knob under the instrument panel.



3. Release the secondary hood release by moving the lever between the front grille and the hood toward the left.
4. Lift up the hood.

### To close the hood:

1. Lower the hood to a height of approximately 15 cm (5.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.
2. After closing the hood, be sure the hood is securely locked.

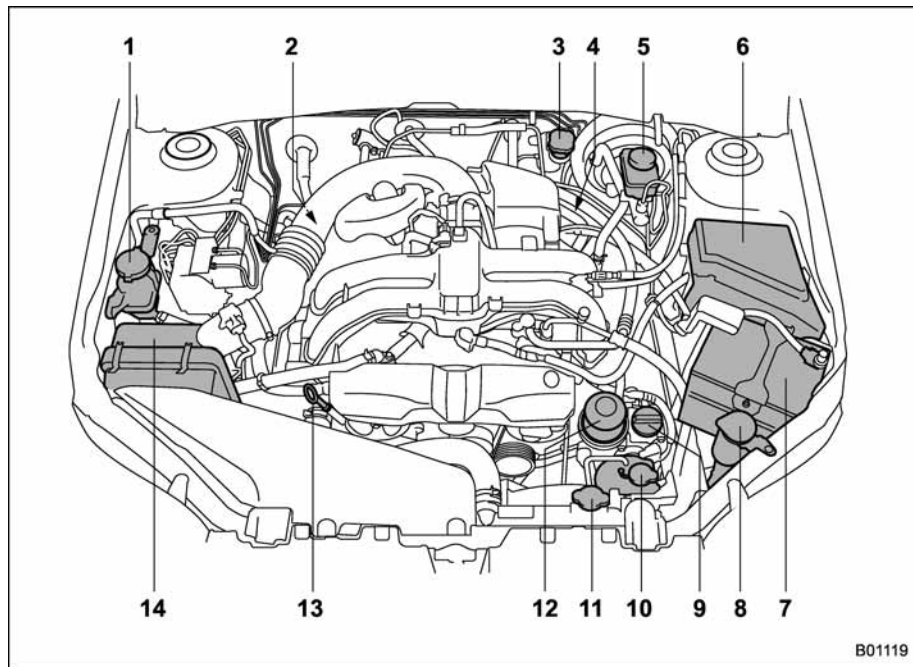
If this does not close the hood, release it from a slightly higher position. Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.

**WARNING**

Always check that the hood is properly locked before you start driving. If it is not, it might fly open while the vehicle is moving and block your view, which may cause an accident and serious bodily injury.

## Engine compartment overview

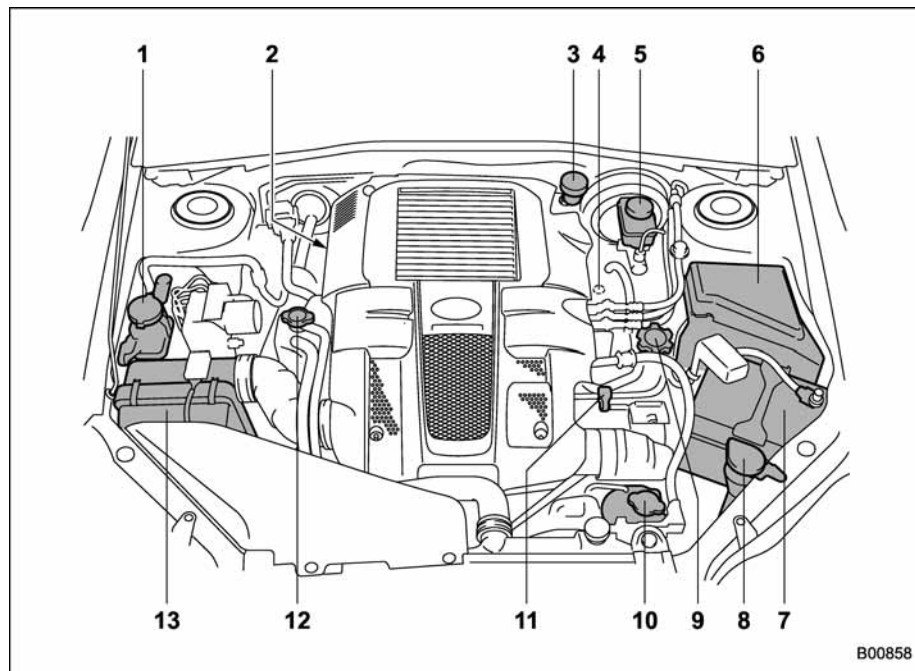
### ■ Non-turbo petrol engine models



The illustration is for a left-hand drive model. The locations of item No. 3 (clutch fluid reservoir) and No. 5 (brake fluid reservoir) for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown here.

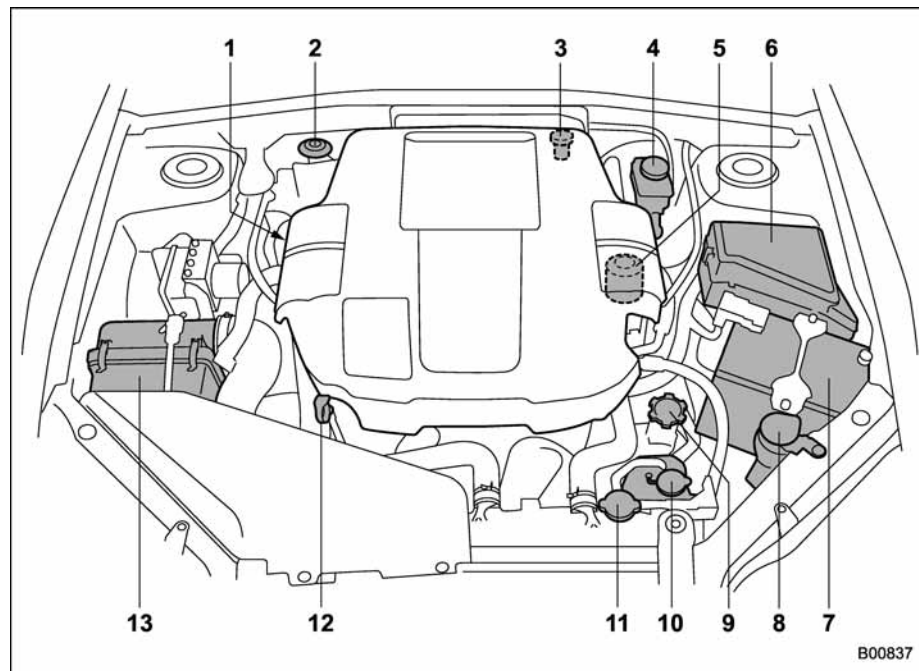
- 1) Power steering fluid reservoir (if equipped) (page 11-32)
- 2) Manual transmission oil level gauge (MT) (page 11-27) or Differential gear oil level gauge (AT) (page 11-30)
- 3) Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-34)
- 4) Automatic transmission fluid level gauge (page 11-29)
- 5) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-33)
- 6) Fuse box (page 11-51)
- 7) Battery (page 11-49)
- 8) Windshield washer tank (page 11-44)
- 9) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 10) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 11) Radiator cap (page 11-19)
- 12) Engine oil filter (page 11-15)
- 13) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 14) Air cleaner case (page 11-23)

## ■ Turbo petrol engine models



- 1) Power steering fluid reservoir (page 11-32)
- 2) Manual transmission oil level gauge (MT) (page 11-27) or Differential gear oil level gauge (AT) (page 11-30)
- 3) Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-34)
- 4) Automatic transmission fluid level gauge (page 11-29)
- 5) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-33)
- 6) Fuse box (page 11-51)
- 7) Battery (page 11-49)
- 8) Windshield washer tank (page 11-44)
- 9) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 10) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 11) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 12) Radiator cap (page 11-19)
- 13) Air cleaner case (page 11-23)

The illustration above is for a left-hand drive model. The locations of item No. 3 (clutch fluid reservoir) and No. 5 (brake fluid reservoir) for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown here.

**■ Turbo diesel engine models**

B00837

- 1) Manual transmission oil level gauge (page 11-27)
- 2) Priming pump (page 9-18)
- 3) Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-34)
- 4) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-33)
- 5) Engine oil filter (page 11-17)
- 6) Fuse box (page 11-51)
- 7) Battery (page 11-49)
- 8) Windshield washer tank (page 11-44)
- 9) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 10) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 11) Radiator cap (page 11-19)
- 12) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 13) Air cleaner case (page 11-23)

The illustration above is for a left-hand drive model. The locations of item No. 2 (priming pump), No. 3 (clutch fluid reservoir) and No. 4 (brake fluid reservoir) for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown here.



## Engine oil

### NOTE

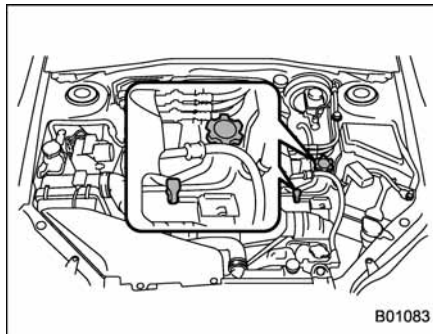
- The engine oil consumption rate is not stabilized, and therefore cannot be determined until the vehicle has traveled at least several thousand kilometers. When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions, such as those mentioned earlier in this chapter, engine oil is consumed or deteriorated more quickly than under normal driving conditions. Please check and replace it more frequently than usual.
- For petrol engine models, if the oil consumption rate is abnormally large after the stabilized period, for example more than 1 liter per 2,000 kilometers, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

### ■ Checking the oil level

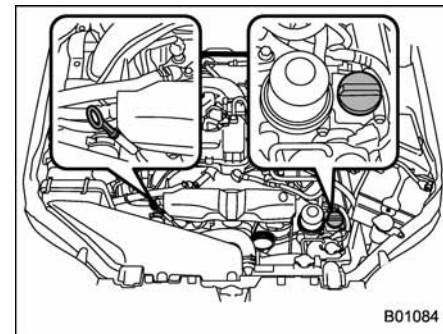
Check the engine oil level at each fuel stop.

#### ▼ Petrol engine

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine. If you check the oil level just after stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan before checking the level.

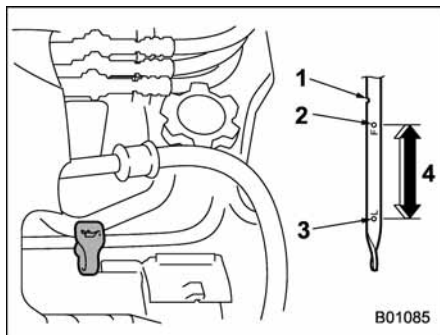


Turbo models



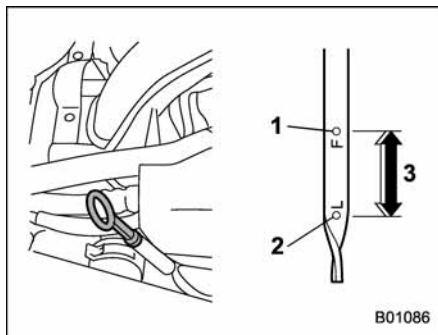
Non-turbo models

2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.
3. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops with the graphic symbol “” on its top appearing as shown in the illustration.



#### Turbo models

- 1) Notch
- 2) Upper level
- 3) Lower level
- 4) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from lower level to upper level



#### Non-turbo models

- 1) Upper level
- 2) Lower level
- 3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from lower level to upper level

4. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the lower level, it is necessary to add engine oil to bring the level up to the upper level.

To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck. After pouring oil into the engine, you must use the level gauge to confirm that the oil level is correct.



#### CAUTION

- Use only engine oil with the

recommended grade and viscosity.

- Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

#### NOTE

- Just after driving or while the engine is warm, the engine oil level reading may be in a range between the upper level and the notch mark. This is caused by thermal expansion of the engine oil.
- To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the upper level when the engine is cold.

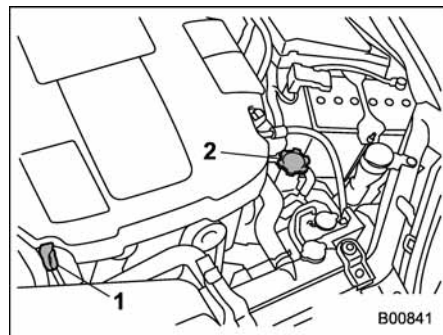
#### ▼ Diesel engine

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes. When starting the engine from the completely cold state, continue warming up the engine until it reaches the normal operating temperature range, as notified by the turning off of the coolant temperature low indicator light that has illuminated in blue on the combination meter. After that, stop the engine and wait

for 5 minutes.

## NOTE

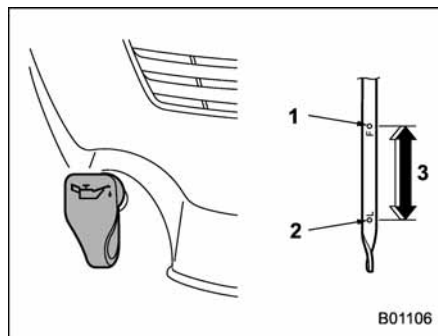
For diesel engine models, make sure to check the engine oil level 5 minutes after the engine stops. Waiting any longer will prevent accurate oil level measurement.



- 1) Engine oil level gauge
- 2) Engine oil filler cap

3. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.

4. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops with the graphic symbol "油面" on its top appearing as shown in the illustration.



- 1) Upper level
- 2) Lower level
- 3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from lower level to upper level

5. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the lower level, it is necessary to add engine oil to bring the level up to the upper level.

6. To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck.



## CAUTION

- Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.
- Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the

exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

## NOTE

To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the upper level.

7. Restart the engine and keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes.

8. Stop the engine. After 5 minutes, check the oil level again.

## Changing the oil and oil filter

Change the oil and oil filter according to the maintenance schedule.

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed more frequently than listed in the maintenance schedule, when short trips are frequently made, when towing a trailer, or when driving in extremely cold weather.

## NOTE

- Changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a well-trained expert. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for changing

the engine oil and oil filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at a SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools, spare parts and recommended oil for this work, and also, used oils are properly disposed of.

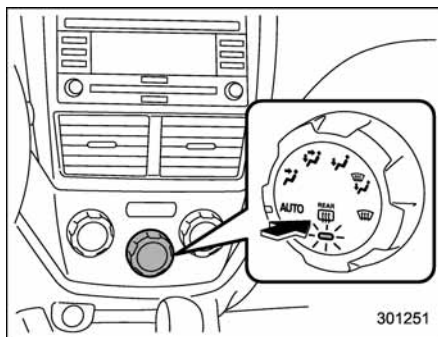
- For diesel engine models, the engine oil replacement data that is stored in the on-board computer should be reset using a special tool every time engine oil and the oil filter are replaced. If the data is not reset, the diesel particulate filter warning light will not operate properly. To reset the on-board computer data without a special tool, refer to the following item.

#### ▼ Resetting the oil replacement data (diesel engine models)

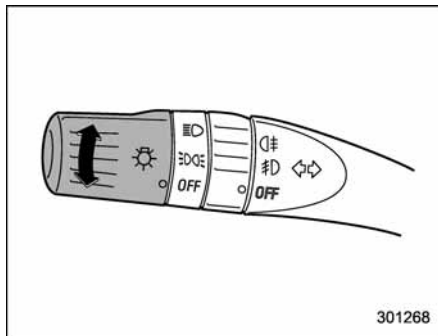
After engine oil and the oil filter have been replaced, the oil replacement data should be reset. To reset the data without a special tool, perform the following procedures.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine, and keep it in idling.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. With depressing the brake pedal, perform the following:

- (1) Push the rear window defogger switch to ON.



(2) Turn the headlight switch to the position.



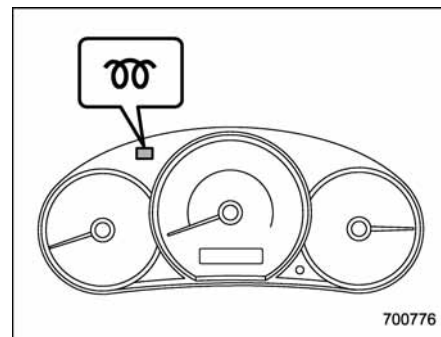
(3) Push the rear window defogger switch to OFF.

(4) Turn the headlight switch to OFF.

(5) Repeat steps 1) through 4) once

more, and go to next step.

(6) Release the brake pedal.



5. Preheating indicator light will blink for approximately 5 seconds when the data has been reset successfully.

#### NOTE

- Each step between 1) and 6) must be operated within 4 seconds.
- If the resetting procedure was unsuccessful, repeat steps 1) through 5) after performing the following items.
  - Wait for 30 seconds with the engine idling.
  - Turn the engine off, and restart the engine after waiting 15 seconds.

## ■ Recommended grade and viscosity



### CAUTION

Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.

Refer to "Engine oil" 12-6.

## NOTE

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) affects fuel economy. Oils of lower viscosity provide better fuel economy. However, in hot weather, oil of higher viscosity is required to properly lubricate the engine.

## ■ Synthetic oil

You can use synthetic engine oil that meets the same requirements given for conventional engine oil. When using synthetic oil, you must use oil of the same classification, viscosity and grade shown in this Owner's Manual. Refer to "Engine oil" 12-6. Also, you must follow the oil and filter changing intervals shown in the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

## NOTE

Synthetic oil of the grade and viscosity noted in chapter 12 is the recommended engine oil for optimum engine performance. Conventional oil may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

## Cooling system



### WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.



### CAUTION

- The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a high quality, corrosion-inhibiting, year-around coolant which provides protection against freezing down to  $-36^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-33^{\circ}\text{F}$ ). Make sure to always use genuine SUBARU Super Coolant or an equivalent (non-amine type coolant).
- If the coolant requires water dilution, be sure to use soft water (or clear and drinkable water) and to follow the required dilution ratio.
- Mixing with a different coolant

and/or hard water may result in problems including, but not limited to, shortened engine component life, cooling system clogging, coolant leaks and engine damage from overheating. Therefore, never mix different kinds of coolant and/or hard water even if freezing temperatures are not expected.

- Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.

## ■ Cooling fan, hose and connections

Your vehicle employs an electric cooling fan which is thermostatically controlled to operate when the engine coolant reaches a specific temperature.

If the radiator cooling fan does not operate even when the following conditions occur, the cooling fan circuit may be defective.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge exceeds the normal operating range (if equipped). Refer to "Temperature gauge" 3-13.
- The coolant temperature high warning light blinks or illuminates in RED (if

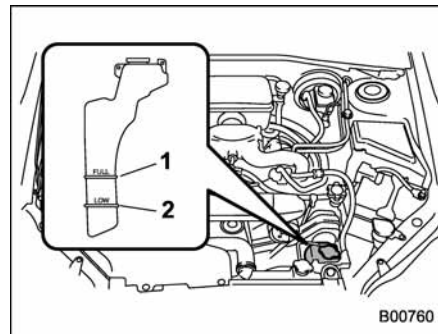
equipped). Refer to "Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light" 3-18.

Check the fuse and replace it if necessary. If the fuse is not blown, we recommend that you have the cooling system checked by your SUBARU dealer. Refer to "Fuses" 11-51 and "Fuse panel located in the engine compartment" 12-15.

If frequent addition of coolant is necessary, there may be a leak in the engine cooling system. It is recommended that the cooling system and connections be checked for leaks, damage, or looseness.

## ■ Engine coolant

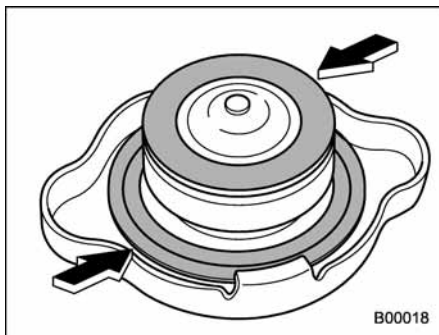
### ▼ Checking the coolant level



- "FULL" level mark
- "LOW" level mark

Check the coolant level at each fuel stop.

- Check the coolant level on the outside of the reservoir while the engine is cool.
- If the level is close to or lower than the "LOW" level mark, add coolant up to the "FULL" level mark. If the reserve tank is empty, remove the radiator cap and refill as required.



3. After refilling the reserve tank and the radiator, reinstall the caps and check that the rubber gaskets inside the radiator cap are in the proper position.

### **CAUTION**

- Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.
- Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.

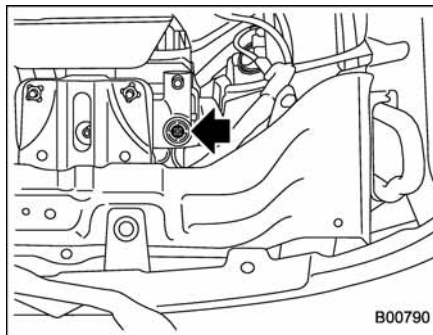
### ▼ Changing the coolant

#### **WARNING**

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.

Change the engine coolant using the following procedures according to the maintenance schedule.

1. Remove the under cover.

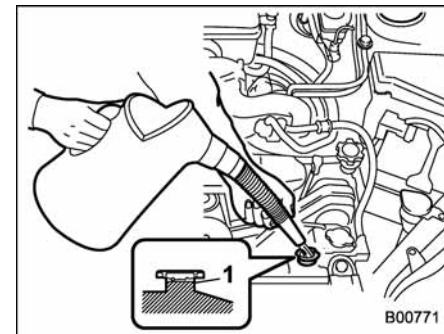


- 1) Drain plug
2. Place a proper container under the

drain plug and loosen the drain plug.

3. Loosen the radiator cap to drain the coolant from the radiator. Then drain the coolant from the reserve tank. Tighten the drain plug securely.

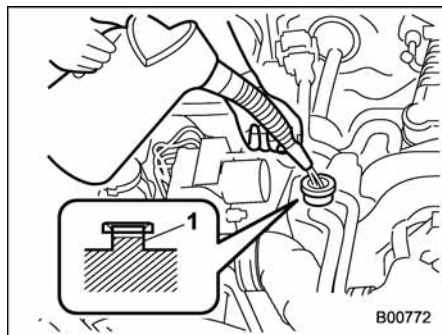
4. Install the under cover.



**Non-turbo petrol engine models and diesel engine models**

- 1) Fill up to this level





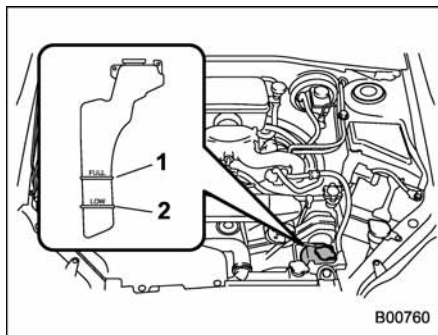
#### Turbo petrol engine models

- 1) Fill up to this level

5. Slowly pour the coolant and fill to the radiator filler neck. Do not pour the coolant too quickly, as this may lead to insufficient air bleeding and trapped air in the system.

#### NOTE

For guidelines on coolant quantity (including the coolant in the reservoir tank), refer to "Engine coolant" 12-11.



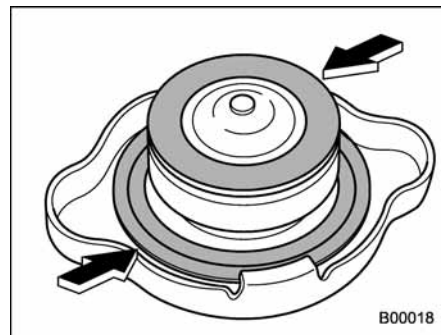
- 1) "FULL" level mark
- 2) "LOW" level mark

6. Pour the coolant and fill to the reservoir tank's "FULL" level mark.



#### CAUTION

- Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.
- Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.



7. Put the radiator cap back on and tighten firmly. At this time, make sure that the rubber gasket in the radiator cap is correctly in place.

8. Start and race the engine at 2,000 to 3,000 rpm for 5 to 6 times within 40 seconds.

9. Stop the engine and wait until the coolant cools down (50 to 60°C [122 to 140°F]). If there is any loss of coolant, add coolant to the radiator's filler neck and to the reserve tank's "FULL" level.

10. Put the radiator cap and reservoir cap back on and tighten firmly.



## Air cleaner element

The air cleaner element functions as a filter screen. When the element is perforated or removed, engine wear will be excessive and engine life shortened.

It is not necessary to clean or wash the element.



### WARNING

Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner element removed. The air cleaner element not only filters intake air but also stops flames if the engine backfires. If the air cleaner element is not installed when the engine backfires, you could be burned.

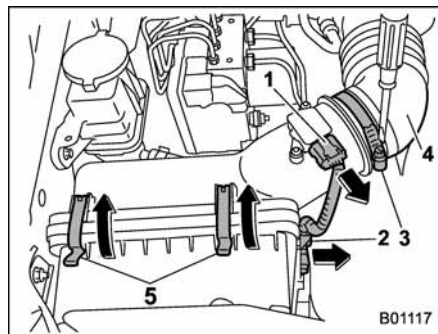


### CAUTION

When replacing the air cleaner element, we recommend that you use a genuine SUBARU air cleaner element. If it is not used, there is the possibility of causing a negative effect to the engine.

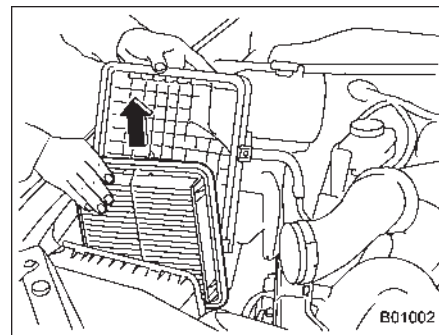
## Replacing the air cleaner element

### ▼ Non-turbo models

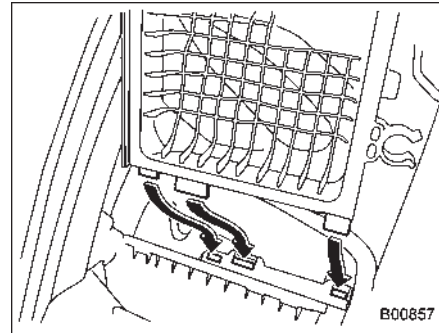


- 1) Connector
- 2) Clip
- 3) Clamp
- 4) Air intake boot
- 5) Clip

1. Unplug the connector that is attached to the top of the air cleaner case.
2. Detach the connector cable from the clip on the right side on the air cleaner case.
3. Loosen the screw on the clamp and pull the air intake boot out of the air cleaner case.
4. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



5. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.
6. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



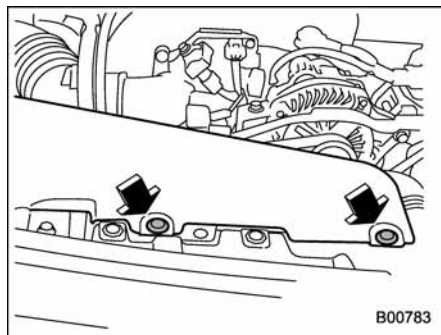
7. To install the air cleaner case, insert

– CONTINUED –

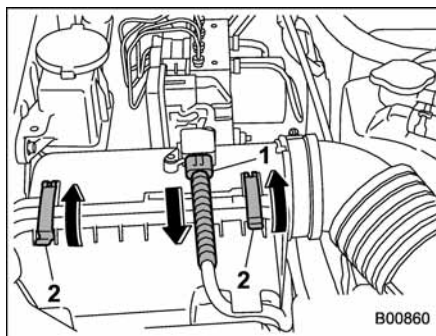
the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.

8. Install in the reverse order of removal.

▼ **Turbo petrol engine models**



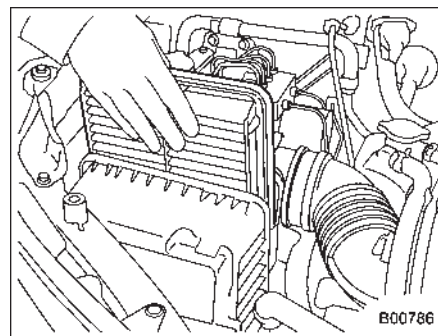
1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.



- 1) Connector
- 2) Clip

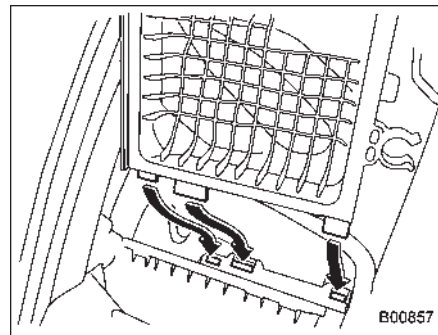
2. Unplug the connector that is attached to the top of the air cleaner case.

3. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



4. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.

5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.

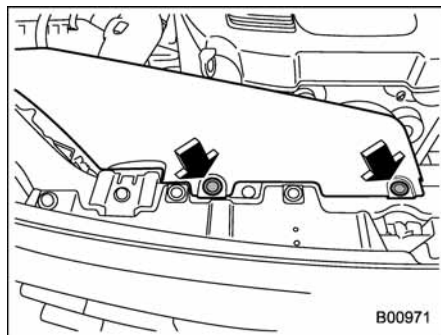


6. If the air cleaner case has been

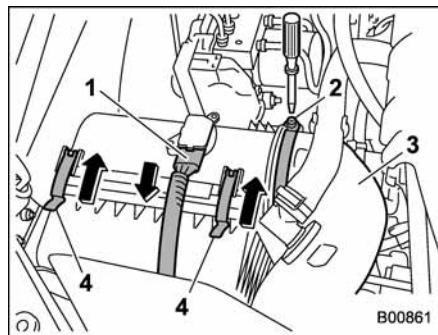
removed, insert the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.

7. Install in the reverse order of removal.

### ▼ Diesel engine models

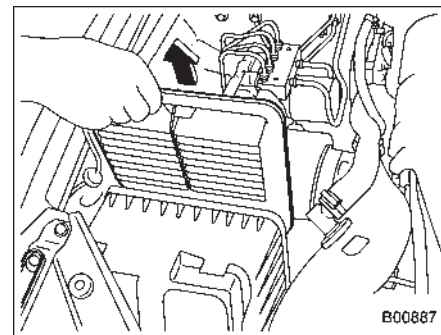


1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.

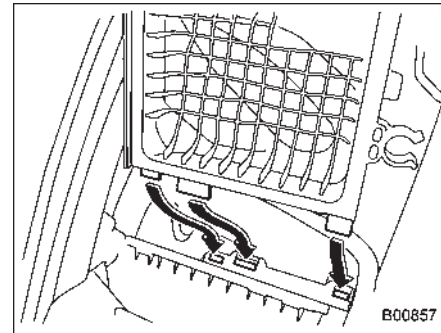


- 1) Connector
- 2) Clamp
- 3) Air intake boot
- 4) Clip

- 2. Unplug the connector that is attached to the top of the air cleaner case.
- 3. Loosen the screw of the clamp and pull the air intake boot out of the air cleaner case.
- 4. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



- 5. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.
- 6. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



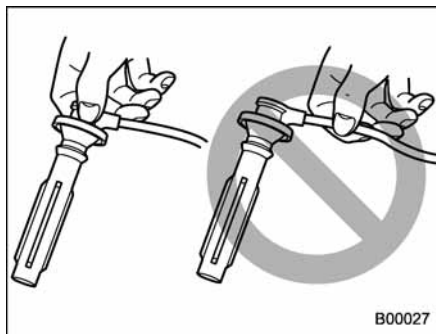
- 7. If the air cleaner case has been

– CONTINUED –

removed, insert the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.

8. Install in the reverse order of removal.

## Spark plugs



Replace the spark plugs according to the maintenance schedule.



### CAUTION

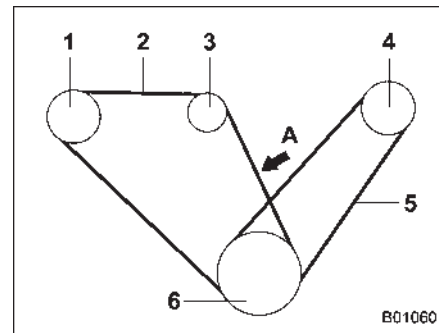
- When disconnecting the spark plug cables, always grasp the spark plug cap, not the cables.
- Make sure the spark plug cables are replaced in the correct order.

## NOTE

For the recommended spark plugs, refer to “Electrical system” 12-4.

## Drive belts

### ■ Turbo petrol engine models



- 1) Power steering oil pump pulley
  - 2) Front side belt
  - 3) Alternator pulley
  - 4) Air conditioner compressor pulley
  - 5) Rear side belt
  - 6) Crank pulley
- A) 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf)



### CAUTION

The front side belt, which runs in conjunction with the following components, must be used within the specified deflection.

- Power steering oil pump pulley
- Alternator pulley

- **Crank pulley**

Check the deflection of the front side belt and if there is any looseness, cracks, wear or unusual noise on the front side belt, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Continuing to use the vehicle with the belt outside of the specification may cause the engine to malfunction and the above components to malfunction.

To check the deflection of the front side belt, place a straightedge (ruler) across two adjacent pulleys (alternator pulley and crank pulley) and apply a force of 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) midway between the pulleys by using a spring scale. The belt deflection should be the amount specified. If the front side belt is loose, cracked or worn, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

mm (in)

|   | Deflection                 |                             |
|---|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
|   | New belt                   | Used belt                   |
| A | 7.0 – 9.0<br>(0.28 – 0.35) | 9.0 – 11.0<br>(0.35 – 0.43) |

The rear side belt is a stretch-type belt, therefore the deflection does not need to be checked. If there are cracks or wear

confirmed on the belts and a squeaking sound is heard from them, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

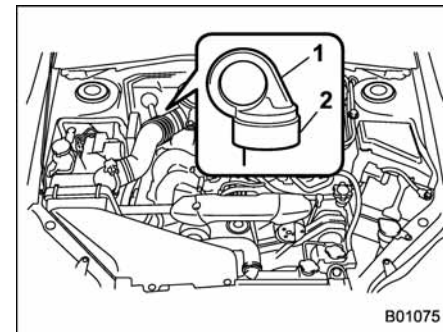
### ■ Non-turbo petrol engine models and diesel engine models

It is unnecessary to check the deflection of the drive belt periodically because your engine is equipped with an automatic belt tension adjuster. However, replacement of the belt should be done according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

If the drive belt is loose, cracked or worn, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

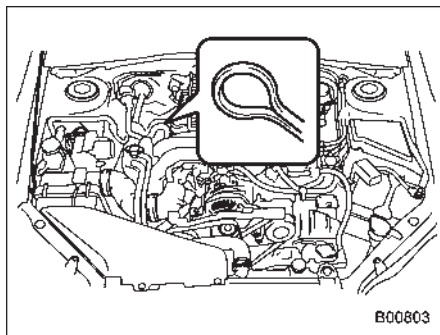
## Manual transmission oil

### ■ Checking the oil level

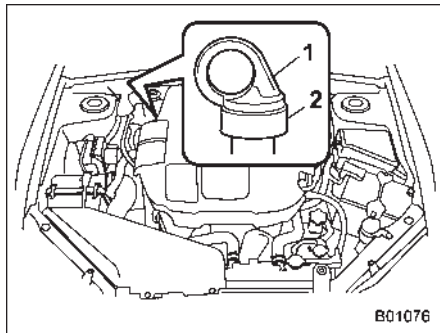


#### 5-speed transmission (non-turbo models)

- 1) Yellow handle
- 2) Green collar



5-speed transmission (turbo models)



6-speed transmission

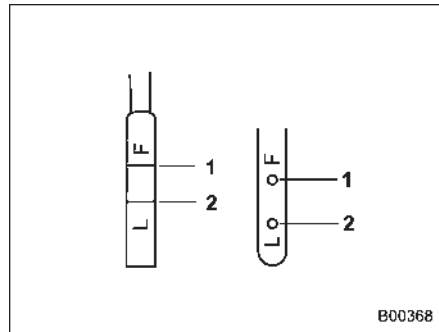
- 1) Yellow handle
- 2) Green collar

Check the oil level monthly.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and

stop the engine.

2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.



- 1) Upper level
- 2) Lower level

3. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the lower level, add oil through the level gauge hole to bring the level up to the upper level.



### CAUTION

**Be careful not to spill manual transmission oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If oil gets on the exhaust pipe,**

**be sure to wipe it off.**

### Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" 12-9.

## Automatic transmission fluid

### ■ Checking the fluid level

The automatic transmission fluid expands largely as its temperature rises; the fluid level differs according to fluid temperature. Therefore, there are two different scales for checking the level of hot fluid and cold fluid on the level gauge.

Though the fluid level can be checked without warming up the fluid on the "COLD" range, it is recommended to check the fluid level when the fluid is at the operating temperature.

### ▼ Checking the fluid level when the fluid is hot

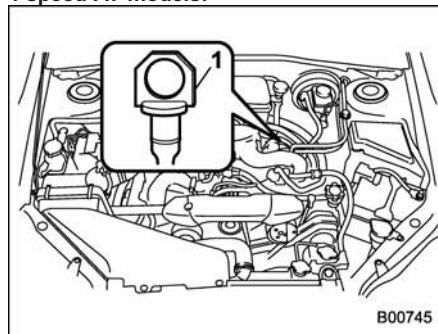
Check the fluid level monthly.

1. Drive the vehicle several kilometers (miles) to raise the temperature of the transmission fluid up to normal operating temperature; 70 to 80°C (158 to 176°F) is normal.

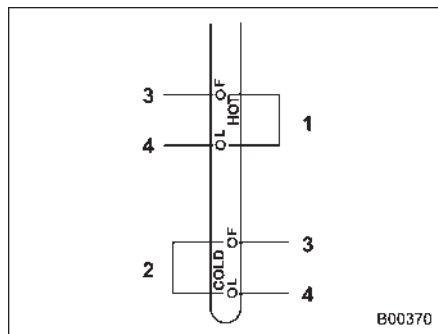
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and set the parking brake.

3. First shift the select lever in each position. Then shift it in the "P" position, and run the engine at idling speed.

#### 4-speed AT models:

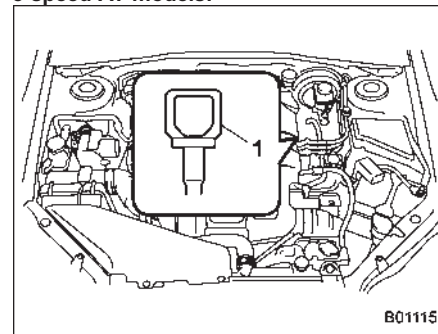


1) Yellow handle

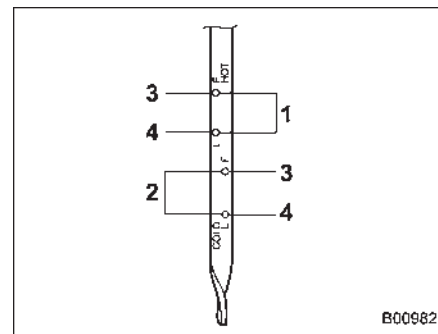


- 1) HOT range
- 2) COLD range
- 3) Upper level
- 4) Lower level

#### 5-speed AT models:



1) Yellow handle



- 1) HOT range
- 2) COLD range
- 3) Upper level
- 4) Lower level



4. Pull out the level gauge and check the fluid level on the gauge. If it is below the lower level on the "HOT" range, add the recommended automatic transmission fluid up to the upper level.

#### ▼ Checking the fluid level when the fluid is cold

When the fluid level has to be checked without time to warm up the automatic transmission, check to see that the fluid level is between the lower level and upper level on the "COLD" range. If it is below that range, add fluid up to the upper level. Be careful not to overfill.



#### CAUTION

Be careful not to spill automatic transmission fluid when adding it. If automatic transmission fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If automatic transmission fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

#### ■ Recommended fluid

Refer to "Fluids" 12-10.



#### CAUTION

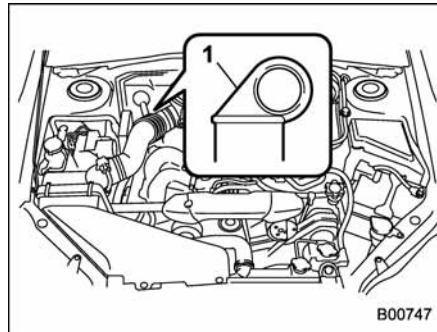
For 4-speed AT models, you can use the "Dexron III" type automatic transmission fluid only in an emergency if the recommended automatic transmission fluid is unavailable. However, if the Dexron III is used continuously, there will be a noticeable increase in the vibration and noise from the automatic transmission. If "Dexron III" fluid is used temporarily, change the fluid to the recommended automatic transmission fluid as soon as possible.

#### NOTE (5-speed AT models)

Using any non-specified type of automatic transmission fluid could result in damage inside the transmission. When replacing the automatic transmission fluid, be sure to use the kind specified above.

#### Front differential gear oil (AT models)

#### ■ Checking the oil level

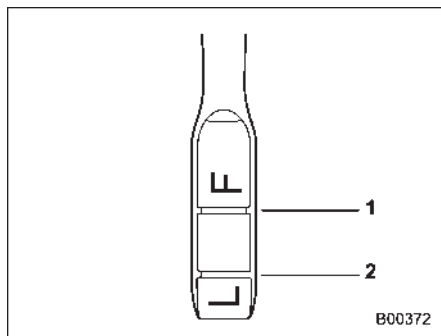


1) Yellow handle

Check the differential oil level monthly.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine.
2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.





- 1) Upper level
- 2) Lower level

3. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the lower level, add oil to bring the level up to the upper level.



### CAUTION

Be careful not to spill front differential gear oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

## ■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" 12-9.

## Rear differential gear oil (AWD models)

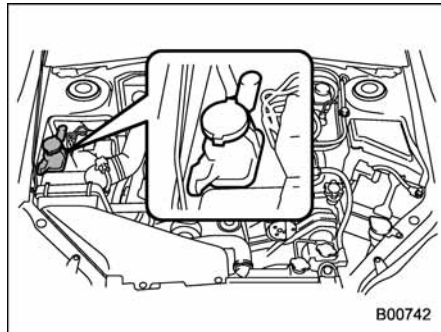
There is no rear differential gear oil level gauge. To check the rear differential gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

## ■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" 12-9.

## Power steering fluid (if equipped)

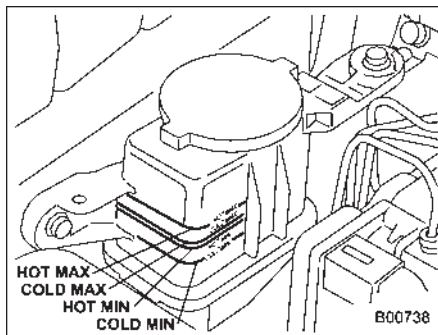
### ■ Checking the fluid level



The power steering fluid expands greatly as its temperature rises; the fluid level differs according to fluid temperature. Therefore, the reservoir tank has two different checking ranges for hot and cold fluids.

Check the power steering fluid level monthly.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and stop the engine.



2. Check the fluid level of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is hot after the vehicle has been run: Check that the oil level is between "HOT MIN" and "HOT MAX" on the surface of the reservoir tank.

When the fluid is cool before the vehicle is run: Check that the oil level is between "COLD MIN" and "COLD MAX" on the surface of the reservoir tank.

3. If the fluid level is lower than the applicable "MIN" line, add the recommended fluid as necessary to bring the level between the "MIN" and "MAX" line.

If the fluid level is extremely low, it may indicate possible leakage. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.



### WARNING

Be careful not to burn yourself because the fluid may be hot.



### CAUTION

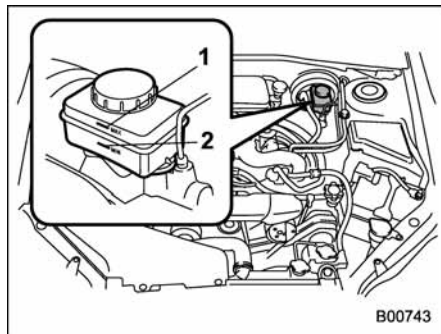
- When power steering fluid is being added, use only clean fluid, and be careful not to allow any dirt into the tank. And never use different brands together.
- Avoid spilling fluid when adding it in the tank.
- Be careful not to spill power steering fluid when adding it. If power steering fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If power steering fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

### ■ Recommended fluid

Refer to "Fluids" 12-10.

## Brake fluid

### ■ Checking the fluid level



- 1) "MAX" level mark
- 2) "MIN" level mark

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. If the level is below "MIN", add the recommended brake fluid to "MAX".

Use only brake fluid from a sealed container.



### WARNING

- Never let brake fluid contact your eyes because brake fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with

clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.

- Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking performance.
- If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.



### CAUTION

- When adding brake fluid, be careful not to allow any dirt into the reservoir.
- Never splash the brake fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the brake fluid may damage them.
- Be careful not to spill brake fluid when adding it. If brake fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If brake fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

### ■ Recommended brake fluid

Refer to "Fluids" 12-10.

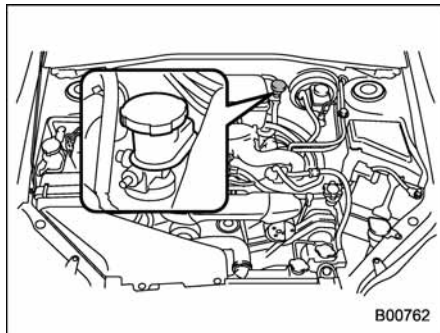


### CAUTION

Never use different brands of brake fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.

## Clutch fluid (MT models)

### ■ Checking the fluid level



Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. If the level is below “MIN” level mark, add the recommended clutch fluid to “MAX” level mark.

Use only clutch fluid from a sealed container.

### WARNING

Never let clutch fluid contact your eyes because clutch fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If clutch fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is

advisable.

### CAUTION

- Clutch fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause improper clutch operation.
- If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.
- When clutch fluid is added, be careful not to allow any dirt into the tank.
- Never splash the clutch fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the clutch fluid may damage them.
- Be careful not to spill clutch fluid when adding it. If clutch fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If clutch fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

### ■ Recommended clutch fluid

Refer to “Fluids” 12-10.

### CAUTION

Never use different brands of clutch fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.

## Brake booster

If the brake booster does not operate as described in the following procedure, we recommend that you have it checked by your SUBARU dealer.

1. With the engine off, depress the brake pedal several times, applying the same pedal force each time. The distance the pedal travels should not vary.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine. The pedal should move slightly down to the floor.
3. With the brake pedal depressed, stop the engine and keep the pedal depressed for 30 seconds. The pedal height should not change.
4. Start the engine again and run for approximately 1 minute then turn it off. Depress the brake pedal several times to check the brake booster. The brake booster operates properly if the pedal stroke decreases with each depression.

### NOTE

For models equipped with the brake assist system, when you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indicate any malfunctions, and the

brake assist system is operating properly.

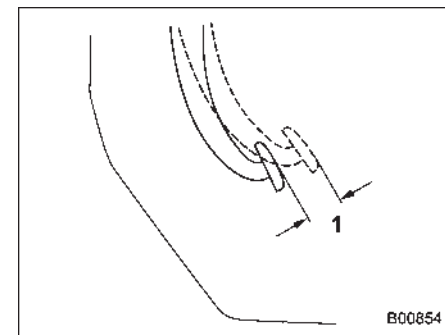
- You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.
- You might hear the sound of ABS operating from the engine compartment.

**Brake assist is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its breaking capability.**

## Brake pedal

Check the brake pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

### ■ Checking the brake pedal free play

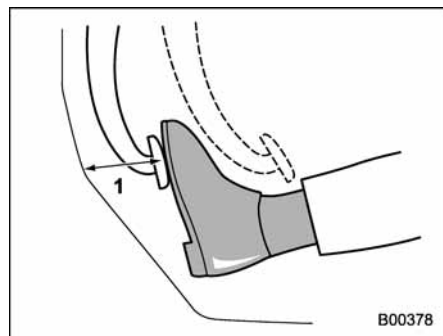


1) 0.5 – 2.0 mm (0.02 – 0.08 in)

Stop the engine and firmly depress the brake pedal several times. Then, check the amount of free play by pulling up the brake pedal with a force of less than 10 N (1 kgf, 2 lbf).

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## ■ Checking the brake pedal reserve distance



- 1) Left-hand drive models:  
More than 65 mm (2.56 in)  
Right-hand drive models:  
More than 85 mm (3.35 in)

Depress the pedal with a force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) and measure the distance between the upper surface of the pedal pad and the floor.

When the measurement is smaller than the specification, or when the pedal does not operate smoothly, we recommend that you contact with your SUBARU dealer.

## Clutch pedal (MT models)

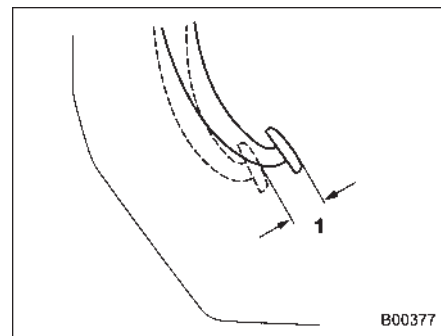
Check the clutch pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

### ■ Checking the clutch function

Check the clutch engagement and disengagement.

1. With the engine idling, check that there are no abnormal noises when the clutch pedal is depressed, and that shifting into 1st or reverse feels smooth.
2. Start the vehicle by releasing the pedal slowly to check that the engine and transmission smoothly couple without any sign of slippage.

## ■ Checking the clutch pedal free play

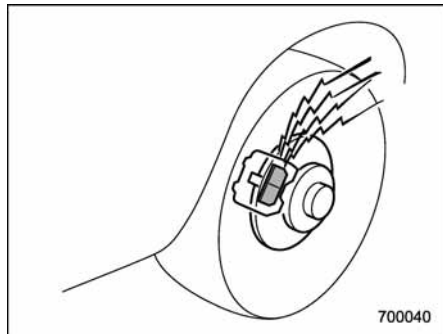


- 1) 4.0 – 11.0 mm (0.16 – 0.43 in)

Lightly press the clutch pedal down with your finger until you feel resistance, and check the free play.

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

## Replacement of brake pad and lining



Each disc brake has audible wear indicators on the brake pads. If the brake pads wear close to their service limit, the wear indicator makes a very audible scraping noise when the brake pedal is applied.

If you hear this scraping noise each time you apply the brake pedal, we recommend that you have the brake pads serviced by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.



### CAUTION

**If you continue to drive despite the scraping noise from the audible brake pad wear indicator, it will result in the need for costly brake**

### rotor repair or replacement.

## ■ Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings

When replacing the brake pad or lining, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, the new parts must be broken in as follows.

### ▼ Brake pad and lining

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

### ▼ Parking brake lining

1. Drive the vehicle at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph).
2. With the parking brake release button pushed in, pull the parking brake lever SLOWLY and GENTLY (pulling with a force of approximately 147 N [15 kgf, 33 lbf]).
3. Drive the vehicle for approximately 200 meters (220 yards) in this condition.
4. Wait 5 to 10 minutes for the parking brake to cool down. Repeat this procedure.
5. Check the parking brake stroke. If the parking brake stroke is out of the specified range, adjust it by turning the adjusting nut

located on the parking brake lever.

### Parking brake stroke:

7 – 8 notches / 200 N (20 kgf, 45 lbf)



### WARNING

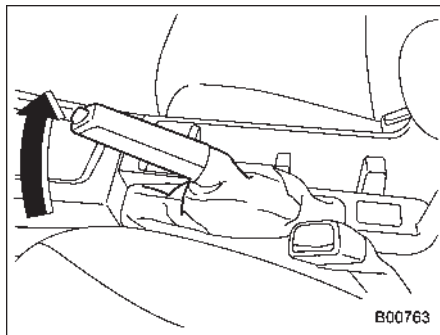
**A safe location and situation should be selected for break-in driving.**



### CAUTION

**Pulling the parking brake lever too forcefully may cause the rear wheels to lock. To avoid this, be certain to pull the lever up slowly and gently.**

## Parking brake stroke



Check the parking brake stroke according to the maintenance schedule. When the parking brake is properly adjusted, braking power is fully applied by pulling the lever up 7 to 8 notches gently but firmly (approximately 200 N [20 kgf, 45 lbf]). If the parking brake lever stroke is not within the specified range, we recommend that you have the brake system checked and adjusted at your SUBARU dealer.

## Tires and wheels

### ■ Types of tires

You should be familiar with type of tires present on your vehicle.

#### ▼ All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide an adequate measure of traction, handling and braking performance in year-round driving including snowy and icy road conditions. However all season tires do not offer as much traction performance as winter (snow) tires in heavy or loose snow or on icy roads.

All season tires are identified by "ALL SEASON" and/or "M+S" (Mud & Snow) on the tire sidewall.

#### ▼ Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited for highway driving under dry conditions.

Summer tires are inadequate for driving on slippery roads such as on snow-covered or icy roads.

If you drive your vehicle on snow-covered or icy roads, we strongly recommend the use of winter (snow) tires.

When installing winter tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

#### ▼ Winter (snow) tires

Winter tires are best suited for driving on snow-covered and icy roads. However winter tires do not perform as well as summer tires and all season tires on roads other than snow-covered and icy roads.

### ■ Tire inspection

Check on a daily basis that the tires are free from serious damage, nails, and stones. At the same time, check the tires for abnormal wear.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately if you find any problem.

### NOTE

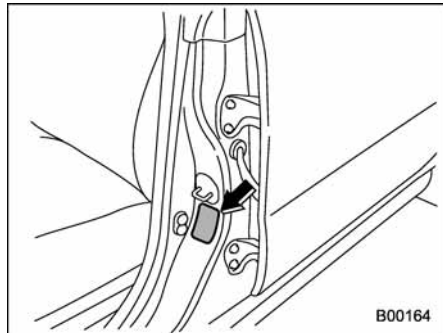
● **When the wheels and tires strike curbs or are subjected to harsh treatment as when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface, they can suffer damage that cannot be seen with the naked eye. This type of damage does not become evident until time has passed. Try not to drive over curbs, potholes or on other rough surfaces. If doing so is unavoidable, keep the vehicle's speed down to a walking pace or less, and approach the curbs as squarely as possible. Also, make sure the tires are not pressed against the curb when you park the vehicle.**



● If you feel unusual vibration while driving or find it difficult to steer the vehicle in a straight line, one of the tires and/or wheels may be damaged. We recommend that you drive slowly to the nearest authorized SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

## ■ Tire pressures and wear

Maintaining the correct tire pressures helps to maximize the tires' service lives and is essential for good running performance. Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month (for example, during a fuel stop) and before any long journey.



Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust

the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard. The tire placard is located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

Driving even a short distance warms up the tires and increases the tire pressures. Also, the tire pressures are affected by the outside temperature. It is best to check tire pressure outdoors before driving the vehicle.

When a tire becomes warm, the air inside it expands, causing the tire pressure to increase. Be careful not to mistakenly release air from a warm tire to reduce its pressure.

## NOTE

- The air pressure in a tire increases by approximately 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4.3 psi) when the tire becomes warm.
- The tires are considered cold when the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has been driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).



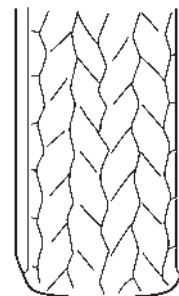
## WARNING

Do not let air out of warm tires to adjust pressure. Doing so will result in low tire pressure.

Incorrect tire pressures detract from con-

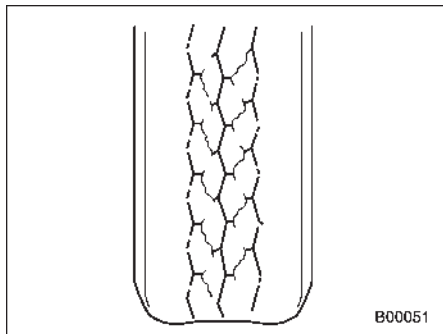
trollability and ride comfort, and they cause the tires to wear abnormally.

- **Correct tire pressure** (tread worn evenly)



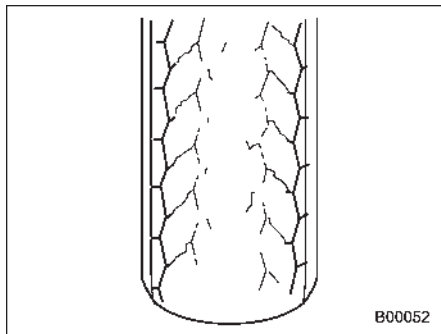
Roadholding is good, and steering is responsive. Rolling resistance is low, so fuel consumption is also lower.

- **Abnormally low tire pressure** (tread worn at shoulders)



Rolling resistance is high, so fuel consumption is also higher.

- **Abnormally high tire pressure** (tread worn in center)



Ride comfort is poor. Also, the tire magnifies the effects of road-surface bumps and dips, possibly resulting in vehicle damage.

If the tire placard shows tire pressures for the vehicle when fully loaded and for the vehicle when towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressures to the values that match current loading conditions.



### **WARNING**

**Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause**

**tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.**

### **■ Wheel balance**

Each wheel was correctly balanced when your vehicle was new, but the wheels will become unbalanced as the tires become worn during use. Wheel imbalance causes the steering wheel to vibrate slightly at certain vehicle speeds and detracts from the vehicle's straight-line stability. It can also cause steering and suspension system problems and abnormal tire wear. If you suspect that the wheels are not correctly balanced, we recommend that you have them checked and adjusted by your SUBARU dealer. Also have them adjusted after tire repairs and after tire rotation.

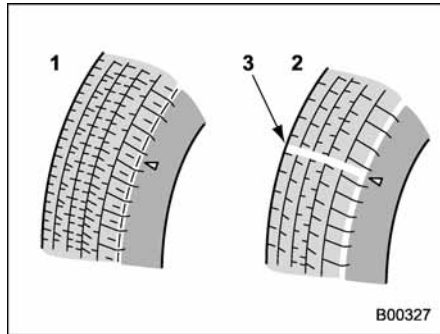
### **NOTE**

**Loss of correct wheel alignment\* causes the tires to wear on one side and reduces the vehicle's running stability. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you notice abnormal tire wear.**

\*: The suspension system is designed to hold each wheel at a certain alignment (relative to

the other wheels and to the road) for optimum straight-line stability and cornering performance.

## ■ Wear indicators



- 1) New tread
- 2) Worn tread
- 3) Tread wear indicator

Each tire incorporates a tread wear indicator, which becomes visible when the depth of the tread grooves decreases to 1.6 mm (0.063 in). A tire must be replaced when the tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread.



## WARNING

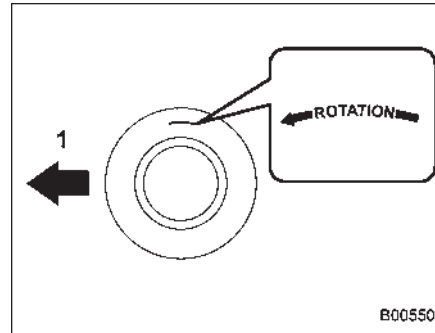
**When a tire's tread wear indicator becomes visible, the tire is worn**

**beyond the acceptable limit and must be replaced immediately. With a tire in this condition, driving at high speeds in wet weather can cause the vehicle to hydroplane. The resulting loss of vehicle control can lead to an accident.**

## NOTE

For safety, inspect tire tread regularly and replace the tires before their tread wear indicators become visible.

## ■ Tire rotation direction mark



Example of tire rotation direction mark

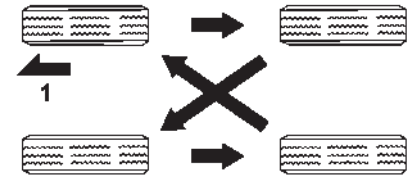
- 1) Front

If the tire has the rotation direction

specification, the tire rotation direction mark is placed on its sidewall.

When you install a tire that has the tire rotation direction mark, install the tire with the direction mark facing forward.

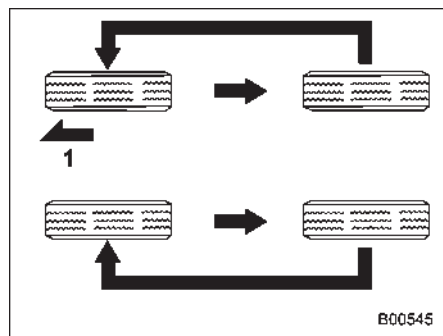
## ■ Tire rotation



B00546

**Models equipped with 4 non-unidirectional tires**

- 1) Front



**Models equipped with unidirectional tires**

1) Front

Tire wear varies from wheel to wheel. To maximize the life of each tire and ensure that the tires wear uniformly, it is best to rotate the tires every 10,000 km (6,200 miles). Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated.

Replace any damaged or unevenly worn tire at the time of rotation. After tire rotation, adjust the tire pressures and make sure the wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

After driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles), check the wheel nuts again and retighten any nut that has become loose.

## ■ Tire replacement

The wheels and tires are important and integral parts of your vehicle's design; they cannot be changed arbitrarily. The tires fitted as standard equipment are optimally matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and were selected to give the best possible combination of running performance, ride comfort, and service life. It is essential for every tire to have a size and construction matching those shown on the tire placard and to have a speed symbol and load index matching those shown on the tire placard.

Using tires of a non-specified size detracts from controllability, ride comfort, braking performance, speedometer accuracy and odometer accuracy. It also creates incorrect body-to-tire clearances and inappropriately changes the vehicle's ground clearance.

All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, and size. You are advised to replace the tires with new ones that are identical to those fitted as standard equipment.

For safe vehicle operation, SUBARU recommends replacing all four tires at the same time.



## WARNING

- All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, degree of wear, speed symbol, load index and size. Mixing tires of different types, sizes or degrees of wear can result in damage to vehicle's powertrain. Use of different types or sizes of tires can also dangerously reduce controllability and braking performance and can lead to an accident.
- Use only radial tires. Do not use radial tires together with belted bias tires and/or bias-ply tires. Doing so can dangerously reduce controllability, resulting in an accident.

## ■ Wheel replacement

When replacing wheels due, for example, to damage, make sure the replacement wheels match the specifications of the wheels that are fitted as standard equipment. Replacement wheels are available from SUBARU dealers.



### WARNING

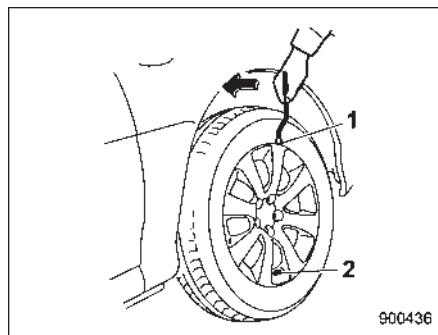
Use only those wheels that are specified for your vehicle. Wheels not meeting specifications could interfere with brake caliper operation and may cause the tires to rub against the wheel well housing during turns. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

## NOTE

When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat tire, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.

## ■ Wheel covers (if equipped)

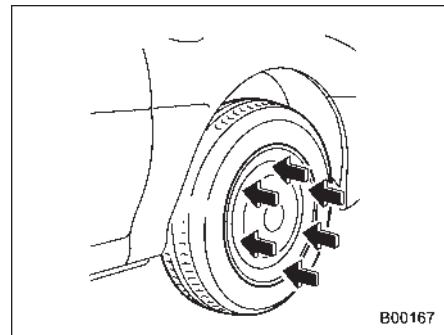
### ▼ Removing the wheel cover



- 1) Notch
- 2) Valve hole

Insert a wheel cover remover into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole and pry the wheel cover to remove it.

### ▼ Installing the wheel cover



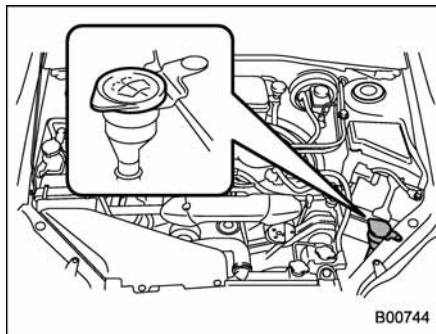
Align the valve with the valve hole in the cover, then fit the cover on the wheel by tapping your hand evenly around the circumference of the cover.

## Aluminum wheels (if equipped)

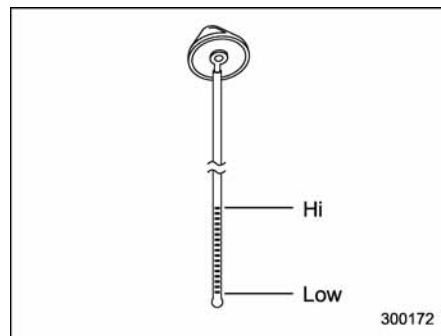
Aluminum wheels can be scratched and damaged easily. Handle them carefully to maintain their appearance, performance, and safety.

- When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.
- Never apply oil to the threaded parts, wheel nuts, or tapered surface of the wheel.
- Never let the wheel rub against sharp protrusions or curbs.
- Be sure to fit tire chains on uniformly and completely around the tire, otherwise the chains may scratch the wheel.
- When wheel nuts, balance weights, or the center cap is replaced, we recommend that you replace them with genuine SUBARU parts designed for aluminum wheels.

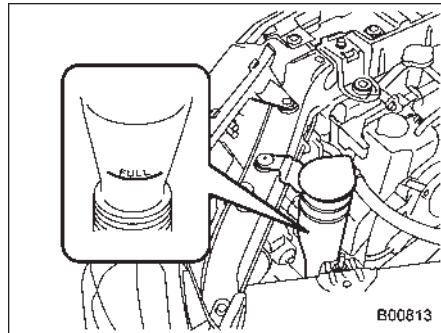
## Windshield washer fluid



If you spray washer fluid on the windshield but the supply of washer fluid appears to diminish, check the level of washer fluid in the tank.



Washer fluid level gauge



Remove the washer tank filler cap, then check the fluid level indicated by the level gauge (attached to the inside of the cap). If the level is near the "Low" mark, add fluid until it reaches the "Hi" level on the

level gauge or the "FULL" mark on the tank.

Use windshield washer fluid. If windshield washer fluid is unavailable use clean water.

In areas where water freezes in winter, use an anti-freeze type windshield washer fluid. SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

| Washer Fluid Concentration | Freezing Temperature |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 30%                        | -12°C (10.4°F)       |
| 50%                        | -20°C (-4°F)         |
| 100%                       | -45°C (-49°F)        |

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in

the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.



### CAUTION

- **Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.**
- **Never use engine coolant as washer fluid because it could cause paint damage.**

## Replacement of wiper blades

Grease, wax, insects, or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove the streaks after operating the windshield washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield (or rear window) and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.



### CAUTION

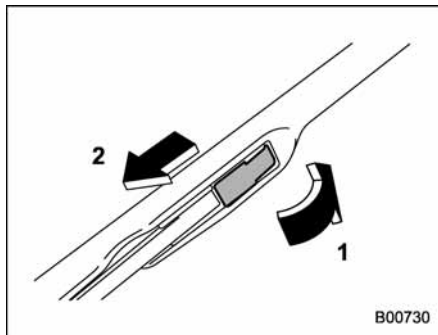
- **Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.**
- **While removing the wiper blades from the wiper arms, do not return the wiper arms to the original positions. Otherwise, the windshield surface may be scratched.**
- **When returning the raised wiper arms to the original positions,**

carefully return the wiper arms on the windshield while supporting them with your hands. You should not return the wiper arms to the windshield only by the return spring. Otherwise, the wiper arms may be deformed and/or the windshield surface may be scratched.

If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this method, replace the wiper blades using the following procedures.

## ■ Windshield wiper blade assembly

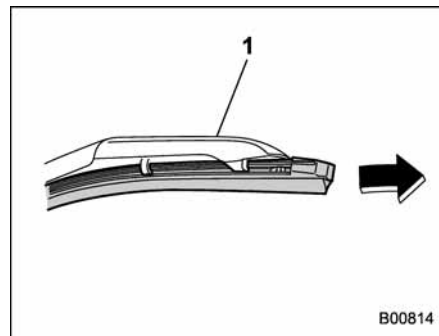
1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.



- 1) Open the cover
- 2) Pull down the wiper blade

2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by opening the cover and pulling it down in the direction shown in the illustration.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

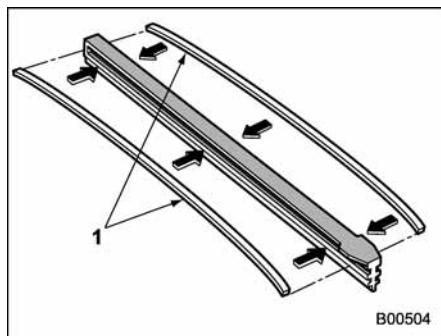
## ■ Windshield wiper blade rubber



- 1) Support

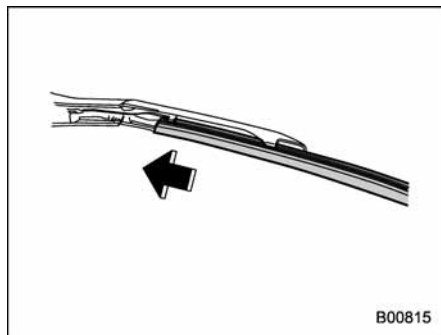
1. Grasp the locked end of the blade rubber assembly and pull it firmly until the stoppers on the rubber are free of the support.





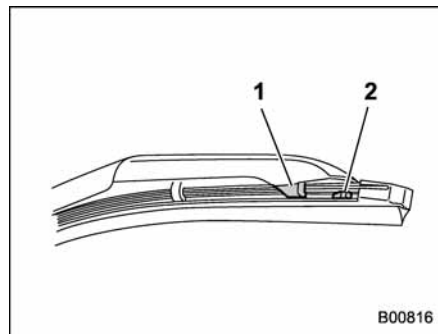
1) Metal spines

2. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.



3. Align the claws of the support with the

grooves in the rubber and slide the blade rubber assembly into the support until it locks.

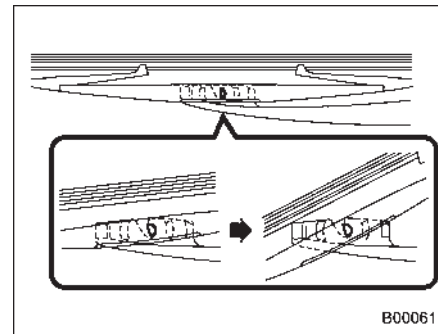


- 1) Claw
- 2) Stopper

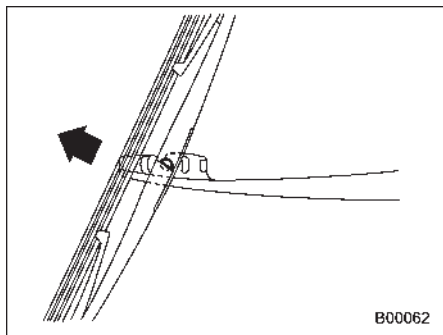
4. Be sure to position the claws at the end of the support between the stoppers on the rubber as shown. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper blade may scratch the windshield.

## ■ Rear window wiper blade assembly

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.

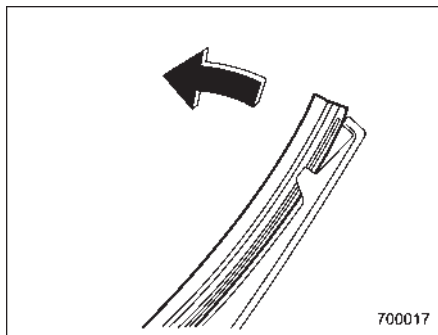


2. Turn the wiper blade assembly counterclockwise.

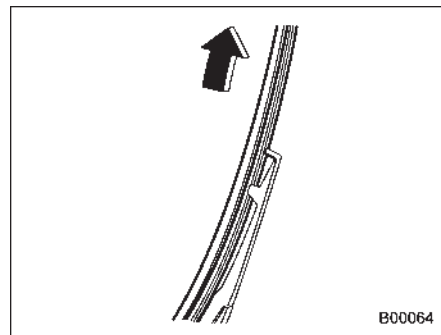


3. Pull the wiper blade assembly toward you to remove it from the wiper arm.
4. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
5. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

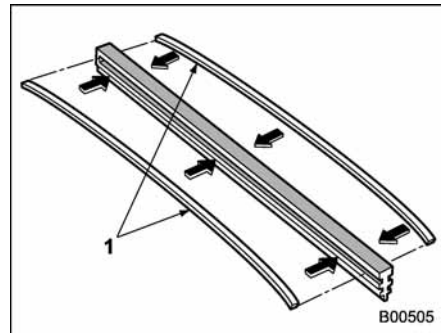
### ■ Rear window wiper blade rubber



1. Pull out the end of the blade rubber assembly to unlock it from the plastic support.



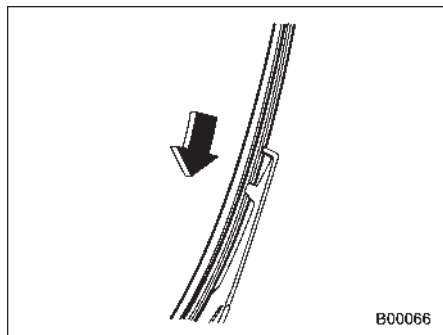
2. Pull the blade rubber assembly out of the plastic support.



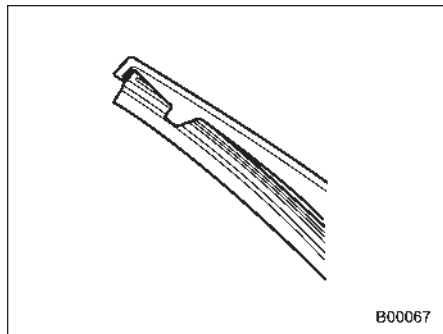
- 1) Metal spines

3. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and

install them in the new blade rubber.



4. Align the claws of the plastic support with the grooves in the blade rubber assembly, then slide the blade rubber assembly into place.



Securely retain both ends of the rubber

with the stoppers on the plastic support ends. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper may scratch the rear window glass.

## Battery

### ■ Battery Precautions!



#### WARNING



Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.



Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.



Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection

and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.



**Keep children away:**

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

can cause blindness and burns.



**Keep flames away:**

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (-) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

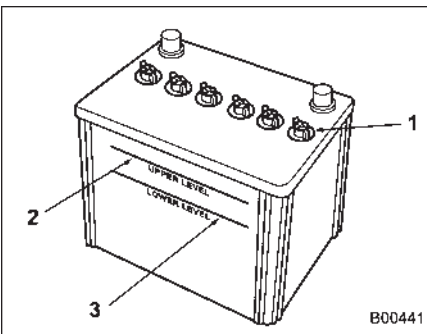
To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.



**Prevent explosions:**

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-

gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.



- 1) Cap
- 2) Upper level
- 3) Lower level

It is unnecessary to periodically check the battery fluid level or periodically refill with distilled water.

However, if the battery fluid level is below the lower level, remove the cap. Fill to the upper level with distilled water.

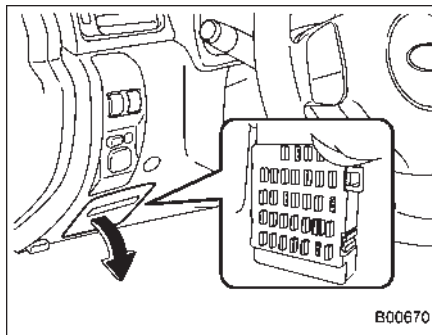
**CAUTION**

Never use more than 10 amperes when charging the battery because it will shorten battery life.

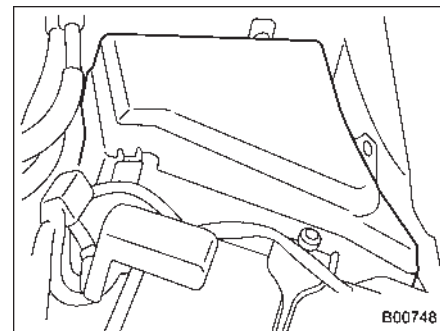
**Fuses****CAUTION**

Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or with material other than a fuse because serious damage or a fire could result.

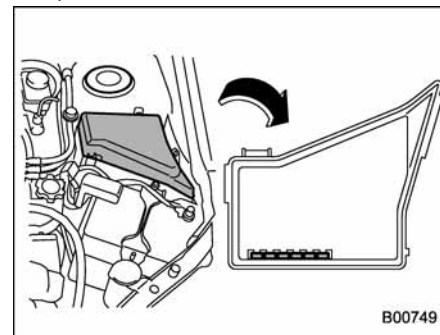
The fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. The fuses are located in two fuse boxes.



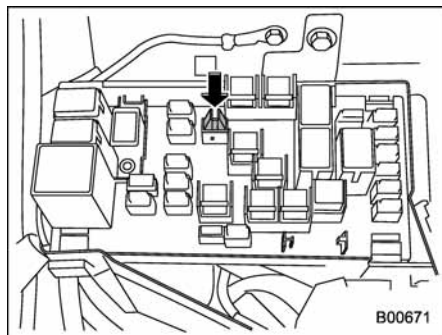
One is located under the instrument panel behind the fuse box cover on the driver's seat side. To remove the cover, pull it out.



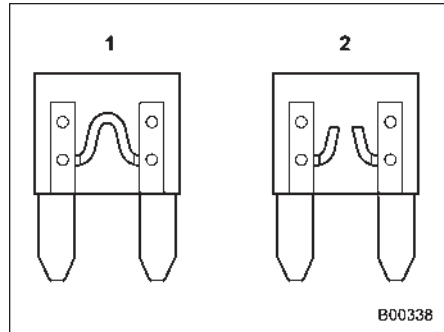
The other one is housed in the engine compartment.



The spare fuses are stored in the main fuse box cover in the engine compartment.



The fuse puller is stored in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.



- 1) Good
- 2) Blown

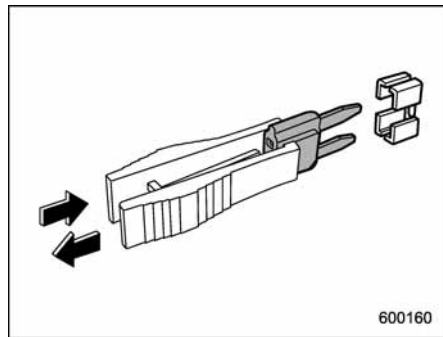
If any lights, accessories or other electrical controls do not operate, inspect the

corresponding fuse. If a fuse has blown, replace it.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and turn off all electrical accessories.

2. Remove the cover.

3. Determine which fuse may be blown. Look at the back side of each fuse box cover and refer to "Fuses and circuits" 12-13.

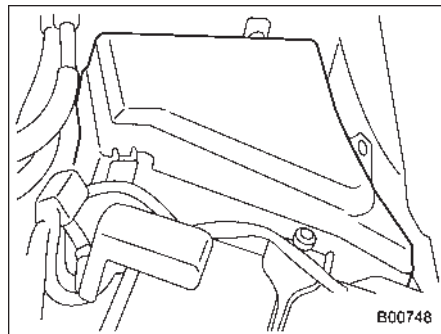


4. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.

5. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.

6. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for repairs.

## Main fuse



### Main fuse box

The main fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. Check the main fuses if any electrical component fails to operate (except the starter motor) and other fuses are good. A melted main fuse must be replaced. Use only replacements with the same specified rating as the melted main fuse. If a main fuse blows after it is replaced, we recommend that you have the electrical system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

## Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing fog lights or any other electrical equipment in your vehicle. Such accessories may cause the electronic system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.

Also, we recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a radio in your vehicle.

## Replacing bulbs



### WARNING

Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.



### CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire. For the specified wattage of each bulb, refer to "Bulb chart" 12-17.

### ■ Headlights (models with HID headlights)



### WARNING

High-intensity-discharge (HID) bulbs are used for the low beams of the headlights. These HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage. To avoid the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury, observe the

following precautions.

- Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.
- Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.
- Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.

For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

### ■ Headlights (models without HID headlights)



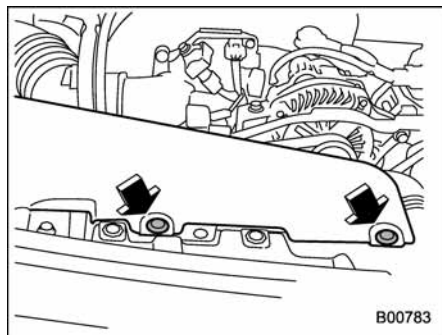
### CAUTION

Halogen headlight bulbs become very hot while in use. If you touch the bulb surface with bare hands or greasy gloves, fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface will develop into hot spots, causing the bulb to break. If there are fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface, wipe them away with a soft cloth moistened with alcohol.

## NOTE

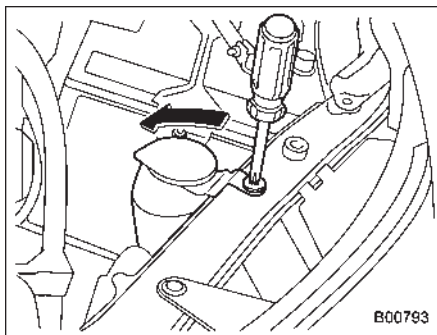
- If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.
- It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

### ▼ Low beam light bulbs



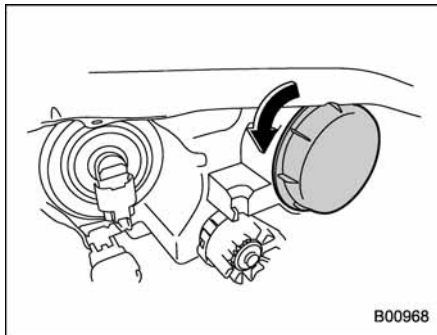
Right-hand side

1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct (right-hand side).

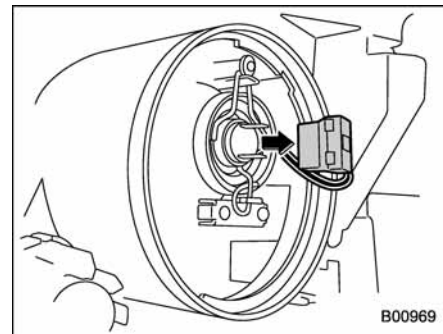


Left-hand side

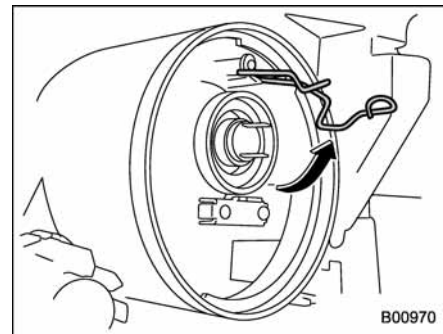
2. Use a screwdriver to remove the secured clip of the washer tank. To make it easy to access the bulb, move the washer tank to the horizontal direction (left-hand side).



3. Remove the bulb cover, by turning it counterclockwise.



4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

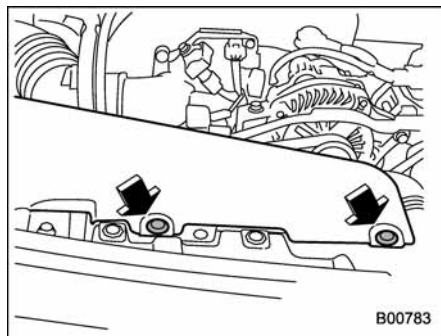


5. Remove the retainer spring.
6. Replace the bulb, then set the retainer spring securely.



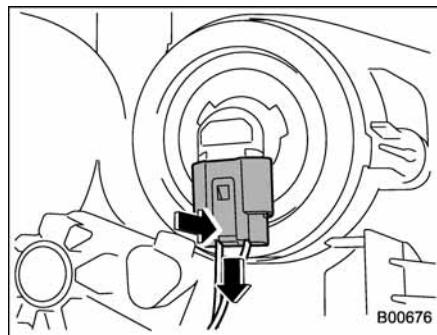
7. Reconnect the electrical connector.
8. Install the bulb cover.
9. Install the air intake duct with clips (right-hand side).
10. Set the washer tank to the original place and secure it by clip (left-hand side).

### ▼ High beam light bulbs

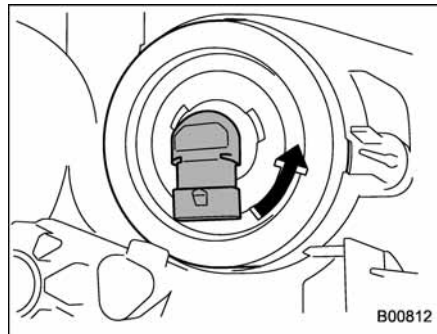


**Right-hand side**

1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct (right-hand side).



2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.

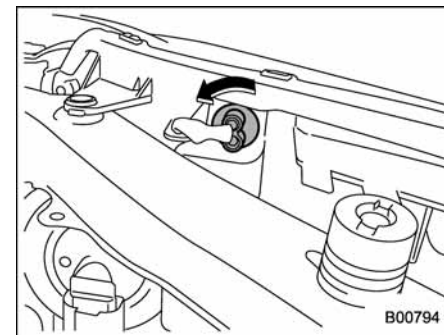


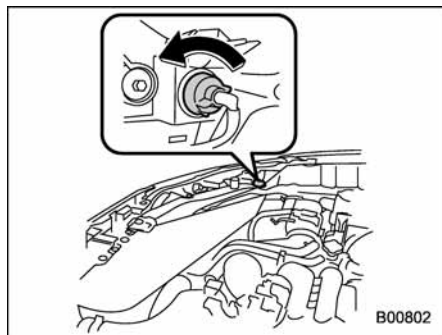
3. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb

surface.

5. Reconnect the electrical connector.
6. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it clockwise until it clicks.
7. Install the air intake duct with clips (right-hand side).

### ■ Front position light and front turn signal light



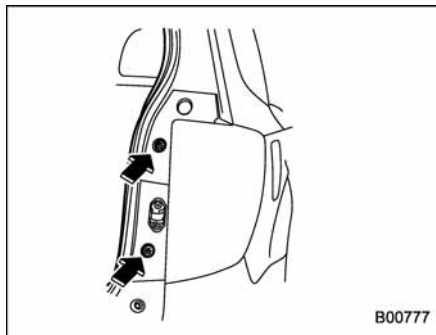


1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull out the socket.
2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket by turning it clockwise.

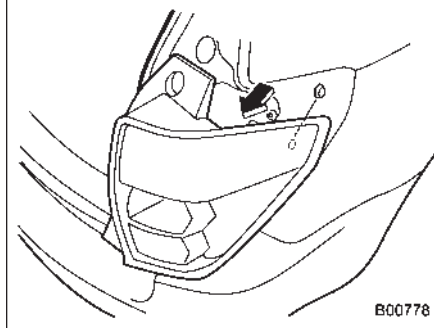
### ■ Side turn signal light

The bulb is an integral part of the side turn signal light assembly. If the bulb fails, the whole side turn signal light assembly must be replaced. We recommend that you have the side turn signal light assembly replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

### ■ Rear combination lights

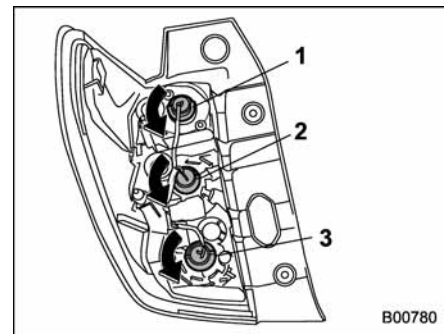


1. Using a Phillips screwdriver, remove the upper and lower screws that secure the rear combination light assembly.



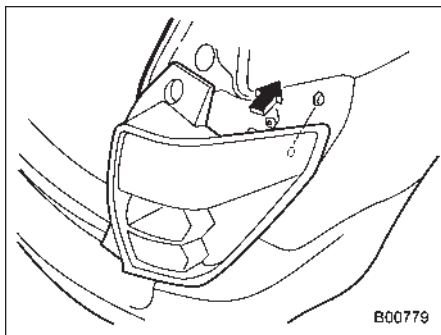
2. Slide the rear combination light as-

sembly rearward and remove it from the vehicle.

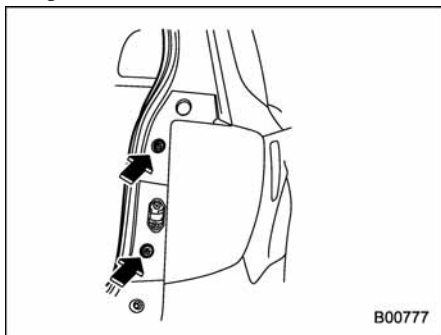


- 1) Brake/tail light
- 2) Rear turn signal light
- 3) Back-up light

3. Remove the bulb socket from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.
5. Set the bulb socket into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.

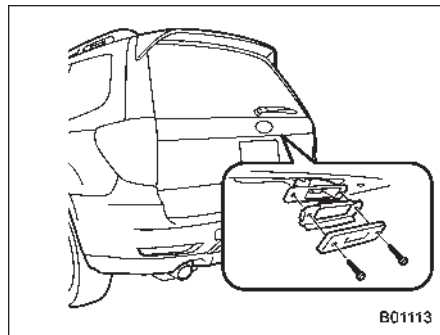


6. Put the rear combination light assembly into place while aligning the clip with the guide on the vehicle.



7. Tighten the upper and lower screws.

## ■ License plate light



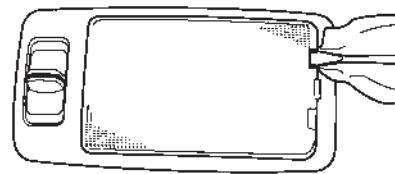
1. Remove the mounting screws using a Phillips screwdriver.
2. Remove the cover and lens.
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the lens and cover.
6. Tighten the mounting screws.

## ■ Dome light, map light, cargo area light and door step light

### ⚠ CAUTION

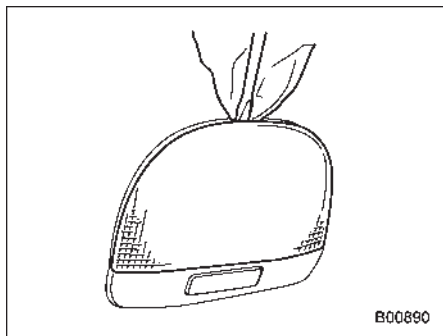
When the door or the rear gate is opened, the lights may illuminate and the bulbs may become very hot. Observe the following precautions in order to avoid burning yourself.

- When replacing the bulb of the door step light, always wear gloves.
- When replacing the other bulb, close the door and the rear gate, and wait until the bulb becomes cool enough.

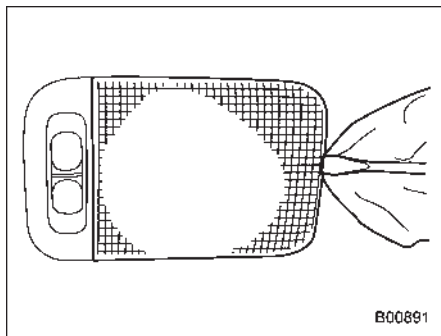


B00889

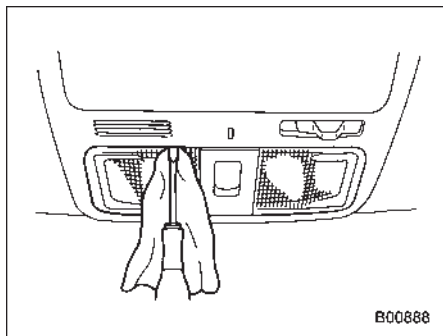
Dome light (type A)



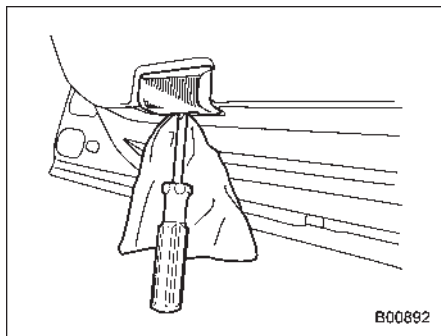
Dome light (type B)



Cargo area light



Map light



Door step light

1. Remove the lens by prying the edge of the lens with a flat-head screwdriver.

2. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Reinstall the lens.

### ■ Other lights on the vehicle

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs of other lights on the vehicle. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

## Replacing battery

The access key / transmitter battery may be discharged under the following conditions.

- The operation of the keyless access function is unstable
- The operating distance of the remote keyless entry system is unstable
- The transmitter does not operate properly when used within the standard distance

Replace the battery with a new one.



### CAUTION

- Do not let dust, oil or water get on or in the access key/transmitter when replacing battery.
- Be careful not to damage the printed circuit board in the access key/transmitter when replacing the battery.
- Be careful not to allow children to touch the battery and any removed parts; children could swallow them.
- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

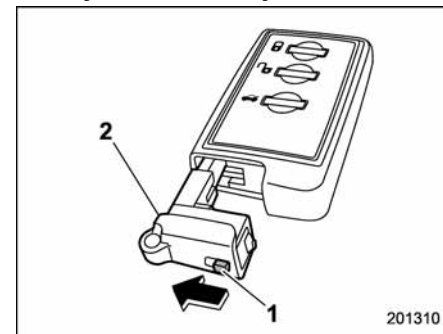
- Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

### NOTE

- Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.
- Mount the battery in the correct orientation to prevent fluid leakage. Be careful not to bend the terminals. It may result in a malfunction.
- It is recommended that the battery should be replaced at a SUBARU dealer.
- Use a new battery.
- After replacing the battery, confirm that the access key/transmitter functions properly.

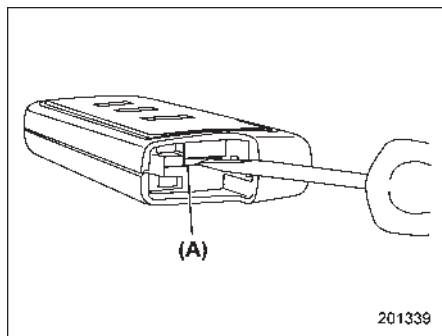
## ■ Replacing battery of access key

Battery: Button battery CR1632

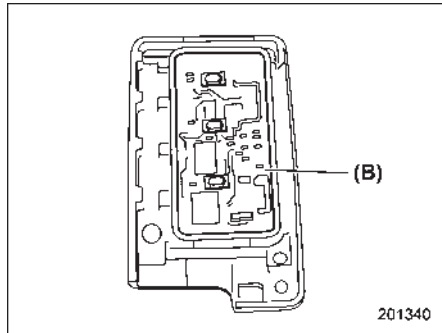


- 1) Knob
- 2) Mechanical key

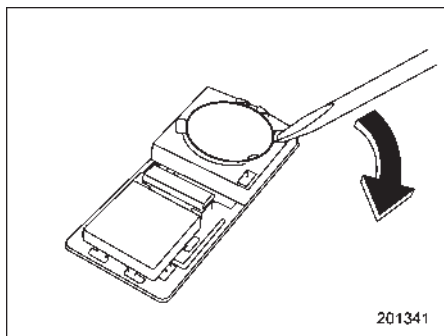
1. Take out the mechanical key.



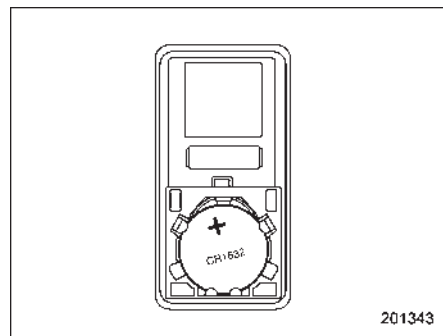
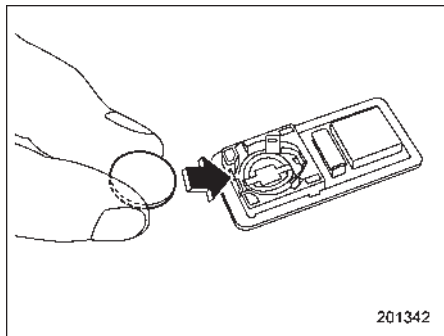
2. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth, and insert it in the gap (A) to remove the cover.



3. Remove the board in the cover (B). Place it with the battery side facing upward.



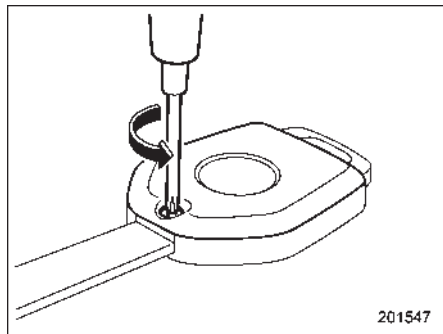
4. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with insulating tape, and insert it between the battery and the board (B). Take out the battery as shown in the figure.



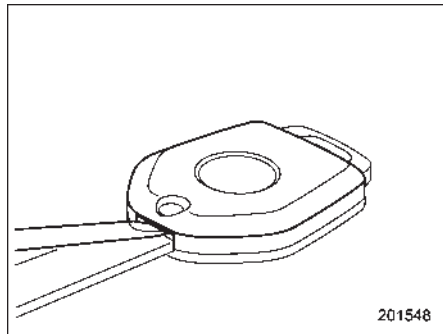
5. Insert a new battery with its positive (+) side facing upward as shown in the figure. Attach the cover firmly.

## ■ Replacing battery of transmitter

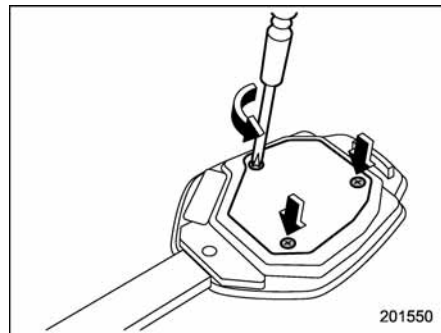
### ▼ Type A



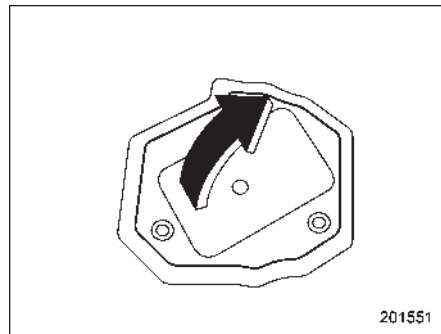
1. Remove the screw on the transmitter case.



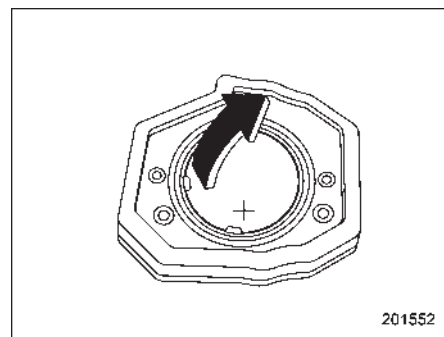
2. Open the case using a flat-head screwdriver.



3. Remove the screws on the battery case.



4. Open the case.



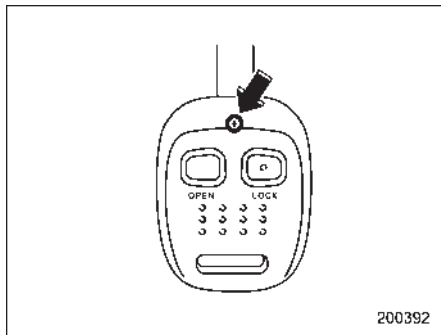
5. Remove the old battery.

6. Fit a new battery (type **CR-1620 3V** or equivalent) in the case with its positive (+) side facing upward.

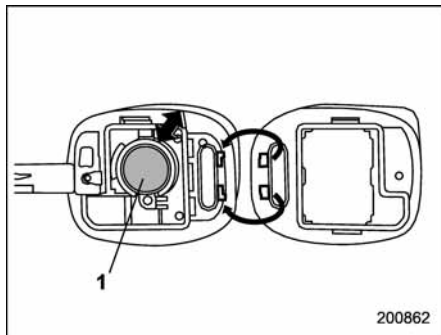
7. Put the case together by fitting the mating part of the button side into the hook on the key side.

8. Reinstall the screw on the transmitter case.

▼ Type B



1. Remove the screw on the transmitter case.
2. Separate the case.



- 1) Negative (-) side facing up

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Fit a new battery (type **CR-1620 3V** or equivalent) in the case with its negative (-) side facing upward.
5. Put the case together by fitting the mating part of the button side into the hook on the key side.
6. Reinstall the screw on the transmitter case.



|                             |             |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Specifications</b> ..... | <b>12-2</b> |
| Dimensions.....             | 12-2        |
| Engine .....                | 12-3        |
| Electrical system.....      | 12-4        |
| Fuel .....                  | 12-5        |
| Lubricants.....             | 12-6        |
| Fluids .....                | 12-10       |
| Engine coolant.....         | 12-11       |
| Tires .....                 | 12-11       |
| Wheel alignment .....       | 12-12       |

|                                                          |              |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>Fuses and circuits</b> .....                          | <b>12-13</b> |
| Fuse panel located in the passenger<br>compartment ..... | 12-13        |
| Fuse panel located in the engine<br>compartment .....    | 12-15        |
| <b>Bulb chart</b> .....                                  | <b>12-17</b> |
| <b>Vehicle identification</b> .....                      | <b>12-20</b> |
| For vehicle body.....                                    | 12-20        |
| For engine.....                                          | 12-21        |

# Specifications

These specifications are subject to change without notice.

## ■ Dimensions

|                                |                           |                      |                        |                    | mm (in)              |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Item                           |                           | Petrol engine models |                        |                    | Diesel engine models |
|                                |                           | 2.0 L models         | 2.5 L non-turbo models | 2.5 L turbo models | 2.0 L models         |
| Overall length                 |                           | 4,560 (179.5)        |                        |                    |                      |
| Overall width                  | Australia models          | —                    | 1,795 (70.7)           |                    |                      |
|                                | Other models              | 1,780 (70.1)         |                        |                    |                      |
| Overall height                 | Models with roof rails    | 1,700 (66.9)         |                        |                    |                      |
|                                | Models without roof rails | 1,675 (65.9)         |                        |                    |                      |
| Wheel base                     |                           | 2,615 (103.0)        |                        |                    |                      |
| Tread                          | Front                     | 1,530 (60.2)         |                        |                    |                      |
|                                | Rear                      | 1,530 (60.2)         |                        |                    |                      |
| Ground clearance* <sup>1</sup> |                           | 215 (8.5)            | 220 (8.7)              | 225 (8.9)          | 215 (8.5)            |

\*1: Measured with vehicle empty

## ■ Engine

### Models that conform to “Euro 4” or “PROCONVE L-5”

| Engine model            | Petrol engine                                                          |                                   |                               | Diesel engine                                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | FB20<br>(2.0 L, DOHC, non-turbo)                                       | FB25B<br>(2.5 L, DOHC, non-turbo) | EJ255<br>(2.5 L, DOHC, turbo) | EE20Z<br>(2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)                                          |
| Engine type             | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine |                                   |                               | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke diesel engine |
| Displacement cc (cu-in) | 1,995 (121.7)                                                          | 2,498 (152)                       | 2,457 (149.9)                 | 1,998 (121.9)                                                          |
| Bore × Stroke mm (in)   | 84 × 90<br>(3.31 × 3.54)                                               | 94.0 × 90.0<br>(3.7 × 3.5)        | 99.5 × 79<br>(3.92 × 3.11)    | 86 × 86<br>(3.39 × 3.39)                                               |
| Compression ratio       | 10.5 : 1                                                               | 10.0 : 1                          | 8.4 : 1                       | 16.3 : 1                                                               |
| Firing order            | 1 – 3 – 2 – 4                                                          |                                   |                               | —                                                                      |

### Models that conform to “Euro 5”

| Engine model            | Petrol engine                                                          | Diesel engine                                                          |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | FB20<br>(2.0 L, DOHC, non-turbo)                                       | EE20Z<br>(2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)                                          |
| Engine type             | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine | Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke diesel engine |
| Displacement cc (cu-in) | 1,995 (121.7)                                                          | 1,998 (121.9)                                                          |
| Bore × Stroke mm (in)   | 84 × 90<br>(3.31 × 3.54)                                               | 86 × 86<br>(3.39 × 3.39)                                               |
| Compression ratio       | 10.5 : 1                                                               | 16.0 : 1                                                               |
| Firing order            | 1 – 3 – 2 – 4                                                          | —                                                                      |

## 12-4 Specifications

### ■ Electrical system

|                                    |                      |                    |                        |    |                                                                |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Battery type and capacity<br>(5HR) | Petrol engine models | Australia models   |                        |    | 12V-48AH (55D23L)                                              |
|                                    |                      | Middle East models |                        |    | 12V-27AH (34B19L)                                              |
|                                    |                      | Other models       | 2.0 L models           |    | 12V-48AH (55D23L)                                              |
|                                    |                      |                    | 2.5 L models           | MT | 12V-48AH (55D23L)                                              |
|                                    |                      |                    |                        | AT | 12V-52AH (65D23L)                                              |
|                                    | Diesel engine models |                    |                        |    | 12V-64AH (95D26L)                                              |
| Alternator                         | Petrol engine models |                    |                        |    | 12V-110A                                                       |
|                                    | Diesel engine models |                    |                        |    | 12V-170A                                                       |
| Spark plugs (petrol engine models) |                      |                    | 2.0 L models           |    | SILFR6A11 <sup>*1</sup> (NGK)<br>SILFR6C11 <sup>*2</sup> (NGK) |
|                                    |                      |                    | 2.5 L non-turbo models |    | PFR5B-11 (NGK)                                                 |
|                                    |                      |                    | 2.5 L turbo models     |    | SILFR6A (NGK)                                                  |

AT: Automatic transmission

MT: Manual transmission

\*1: Models that conform to "Euro 4" or "PROCONVE L-5"

\*2: Models that conform to "Euro 5"

## ■ Fuel

### NOTE

- For petrol engine models, your engine is designed to use only unleaded petrol.
- For diesel engine models, your engine is designed to use only diesel fuel.

| Model                      |              | Fuel requirement                    | Fuel tank capacities                  |
|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Non-turbo models           | 2.0 L models | 95 Octane or higher <sup>*1*2</sup> | 60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal) |
|                            | 2.5 L models | 90 Octane or higher <sup>*1</sup>   |                                       |
| Turbo petrol engine models |              | 95 Octane or higher <sup>*1</sup>   | 64 liters (16.9 US gal, 14.1 Imp gal) |
| Diesel engine models       |              | EN590 or an equivalent              |                                       |

\*1: This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

\*2: If unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 95 or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 90 or higher may be used. For details, refer to "Fuel"  7-2.

## Lubricants

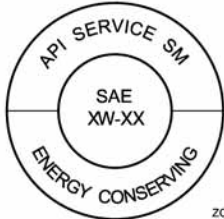
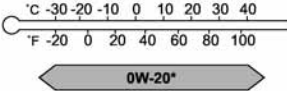
### NOTE

Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

### ▼ Engine oil

For checking, adding and replacing procedure, or other details, refer to “Engine oil” 11-15.

### ▽ Non-turbo models

| Oil grade                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Engine oil capacities                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>  <p>API SERVICE SM<br/>SAE XW-XX<br/>ENERGY CONSERVING</p> </div> <p>ZOM0297</p> <p>API classification SM or SN with the words “ENERGY CONSERVING” or “RESOURCE CONSERVING”</p> <p>or</p> <div>  <p>AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE<br/>FOR GASOLINE ENGINES<br/>CERTIFIED</p> </div> <p>ZOM0293</p> <p>ILSAC GF-4 or GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)</p> <p>or</p> <p>ACEA specification A3 or A5</p> | <p><b>0W-20 synthetic</b> oil is the recommended oil for optimum engine performance.</p> <p>*: 5W-30 or 5W-40 conventional oil may be used if replenishment is needed but should be changed to 0W-20 synthetic oil at the next oil change.</p> <div>  <p>°C -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40<br/>°F -20 0 20 40 60 80 100<br/>0W-20*</p> </div> <p>ZOM0294</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Adding the oil from L to F level:<br/>1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)</li> <li>– Changing the oil and oil filter:<br/>5.2 liters (5.5 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)</li> </ul> |

▽ Turbo petrol engine models

| Oil grade                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Engine oil capacities                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div> <p>ZOM0297</p> </div> <p>API classification SM or SN with the words "ENERGY CONSERVING" or "RESOURCE CONSERVING"</p> <p>or</p> <div> <p>ZOM0293</p> </div> <p>ILSAC GF-4 or GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)</p> <p>or</p> <p>ACEA specification A3 or A5</p> | <p><b>5W-30 synthetic</b> oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection.</p> <p>*: 5W-30 or 5W-40 conventional oil may be used if replenishment is needed but should be changed to 5W-30 synthetic oil at the next oil change.</p> <div> </div> <p>ZOM0296</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Adding the oil from L to F level:<br/>1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)</li> <li>– Changing the oil and oil filter:<br/>4.2 liters (4.4 US qt, 3.7 Imp qt)</li> </ul> |

▽ Diesel engine models

| Oil grade                   | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Engine oil capacities                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ACEA specification C2 or C3 | <p><b>0W-30 synthetic</b> oil is the recommended oil for optimum engine performance.</p> <p>*: 5W-30 conventional oil may be used if replenishment is needed but should be changed to 0W-30 synthetic oil at the next oil change.</p> <div><div><div></div><div>°C -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40</div><div></div></div><div><div></div><div>°F -20 0 20 40 60 80 100</div><div></div></div><div>0W-30*</div><div>ZOM0302</div></div> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)</li><li>– Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.5 liters (5.8 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)</li></ul> |



▼ **Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil**

| Oil grade               | SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature | Applies parts and model                               |                         | Oil capacities                     |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| API classification GL-5 |                                              | Manual transmission                                   | 5-speed                 | 3.5 liters (3.7 US qt, 3.1 Imp qt) |
|                         |                                              |                                                       | 5-speed with dual range | 4.0 liters (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) |
|                         |                                              |                                                       | 6-speed                 | 3.7 liters (3.9 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt) |
|                         |                                              | Front differential (for automatic transmission model) | 4-speed                 | 1.2 liters (1.3 US qt, 1.1 Imp qt) |
|                         |                                              |                                                       | 5-speed                 | 1.4 liters (1.5 US qt, 1.2 Imp qt) |
|                         |                                              | Rear differential                                     |                         | 0.8 liters (0.8 US qt, 0.7 Imp qt) |

For checking procedure, or other details, refer to "Manual transmission oil" 11-27, "Front differential gear oil (AT models)" 11-30, "Rear differential gear oil (AWD models)" 11-31.

## ■ Fluids

### NOTE

Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

| Fluid                                    | Fluid type                                                                                                                                          | Model   |              | Fluid capacity                      |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| Automatic transmission fluid (AT models) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· SUBARU ATF</li> <li>· IDEMITSU ATF HP</li> </ul>                                                           | 4-speed | 2.0 L models | 8.4 liters (8.9 US qt, 7.4 Imp qt)  |
|                                          |                                                                                                                                                     |         | 2.5 L models | 9.3 liters (9.8 US qt, 8.2 Imp qt)  |
|                                          |                                                                                                                                                     | 5-speed |              | 9.8 liters (10.4 US qt, 8.6 Imp qt) |
| Power steering fluid (2.5 L models)      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· SUBARU ATF</li> <li>· IDEMITSU ATF HP</li> <li>· "Dexron III" Type Automatic Transmission Fluid</li> </ul> | —       |              | 0.7 liter (0.7 US qt, 0.6 Imp qt)   |
| Brake fluid                              | FMVSS No. 116, fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid                                                                                                     | —       |              | —                                   |
| Clutch fluid (MT models)                 |                                                                                                                                                     | —       |              | —                                   |

For checking procedure, or other details, refer to "Automatic transmission fluid" 11-29, "Power steering fluid" 11-32, "Brake fluid" 11-33 or "Clutch fluid (MT models)" 11-34.

## ■ Engine coolant

### NOTE

Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

| Model                |                        |     | Coolant capacities                                                                                   | Coolant type         |
|----------------------|------------------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Petrol engine models | 2.0 L models           | MT  | 7.4 liters (7.8 US qt, 6.5 Imp qt)                                                                   | SUBARU Super Coolant |
|                      |                        | 4AT | 7.3 liters (7.7 US qt, 6.4 Imp qt)* <sup>1</sup><br>7.7 liters (8.1 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt)* <sup>2</sup> |                      |
|                      | 2.5 L non-turbo models | MT  | 7.0 liters (7.4 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |
|                      |                        | 4AT | 6.9 liters (7.3 US qt, 6.1 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |
|                      | 2.5 L turbo models     | MT  | 8.1 liters (8.6 US qt, 7.1 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |
|                      |                        | 4AT | 8.0 liters (8.5 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |
|                      |                        | 5AT | 8.3 liters (8.8 US qt, 7.3 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |
| Diesel engine models |                        |     | 8.8 liters (9.3 US qt, 7.7 Imp qt)                                                                   |                      |

4AT: 4-speed automatic transmission

5AT: 5-speed automatic transmission

MT: Manual transmission

\*1: Models that conform to "Euro 4" or "PROCONVE L-5"

\*2: Models that conform to "Euro 5"

For checking, adding and replacing procedure, or other details, refer to "Cooling system" 11-19.

## ■ Tires

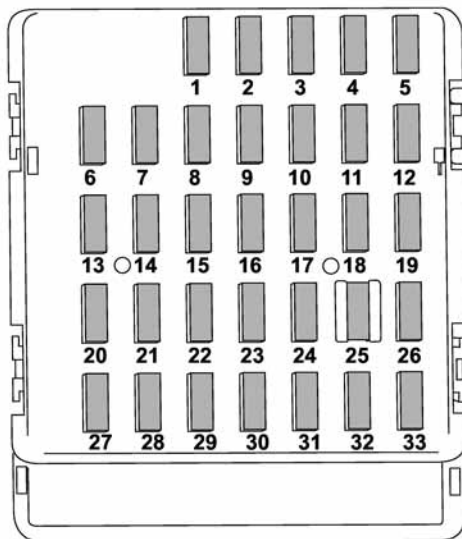
See the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

■ Wheel alignment

|        |       |                                                                                                                                |
|--------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Toe    | Front | $0 \pm 3 \text{ mm } (0 \pm 0.12 \text{ in})$<br>Toe angle (sum of both wheels): $0^\circ \pm 0^\circ 15'$                     |
|        | Rear  | $0 \pm 3 \text{ mm } (0 \pm 0.12 \text{ in})$<br>Toe angle (sum of both wheels): $0^\circ \pm 0^\circ 15'$                     |
| Camber | Front | $0^\circ 00' \pm 0^\circ 45'$<br>(The difference between right-hand camber and left-hand camber should be within 45' or less.) |
|        | Rear  | $0^\circ 00' \pm 0^\circ 45'$<br>(The difference between right-hand camber and left-hand camber should be within 45' or less.) |

## Fuses and circuits

### ■ Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment



C00123

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit                                                                                                                                   |
|------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1          | 20A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rear fog light</li> <li>• Trailer</li> </ul>                                                     |
| 2          | Empty       |                                                                                                                                           |
| 3          | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Door locking</li> </ul>                                                                          |
| 4          | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Front wiper deicer relay</li> </ul>                                                              |
| 5          | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Combination meter</li> </ul>                                                                     |
| 6          | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote control rear view mirrors</li> <li>• Seat heater relay</li> </ul>                         |
| 7          | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Combination meter</li> <li>• Integrated unit</li> </ul>                                          |
| 8          | 20A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stop light</li> </ul>                                                                            |
| 9          | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Front wiper deicer</li> </ul>                                                                    |
| 10         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power supply (battery)</li> </ul>                                                                |
| 11         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn signal unit</li> <li>• Clock</li> </ul>                                                     |
| 12         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission unit</li> <li>• Engine control unit</li> <li>• Integrated unit</li> </ul> |
| 13         | 20A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accessory power outlet (center console)</li> </ul>                                               |
| 14         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Position light</li> <li>• Tail light</li> <li>• Rear combination light</li> </ul>                |

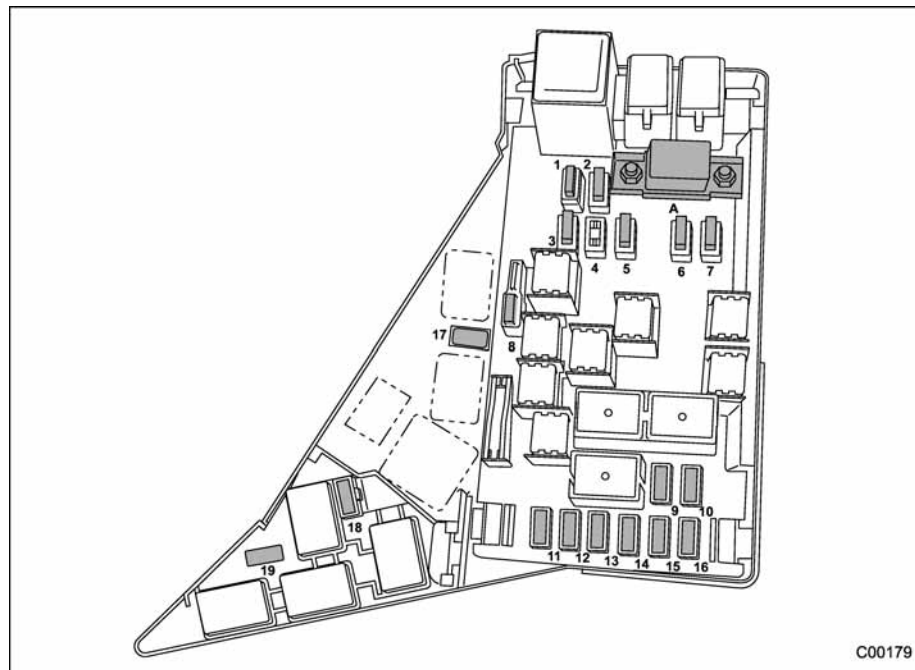
– CONTINUED –

## 12-14 Specifications

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit                                                                                                        |
|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15         | Empty       | (FWD connector for AWD AT models)                                                                              |
| 16         | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Illumination</li> </ul>                                               |
| 17         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Seat heaters</li> </ul>                                               |
| 18         | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Back-up light</li> </ul>                                              |
| 19         | Empty       |                                                                                                                |
| 20         | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accessory power outlet (instrument panel)</li> </ul>                  |
| 21         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Starter relay</li> </ul>                                              |
| 22         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Air conditioner</li> <li>• Rear window defogger relay coil</li> </ul> |
| 23         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rear wiper</li> <li>• Rear window washer</li> </ul>                   |
| 24         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audio unit</li> <li>• Clock</li> </ul>                                |
| 25         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SRS airbag system</li> </ul>                                          |
| 26         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power window relay</li> <li>• Radiator main fan relay</li> </ul>      |
| 27         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blower fan</li> </ul>                                                 |
| 28         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blower fan</li> </ul>                                                 |
| 29         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fog light</li> </ul>                                                  |
| 30         | 30A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Front wiper</li> </ul>                                                |

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit                                                                                                  |
|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 31         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto air conditioner unit</li> <li>• Integrated unit</li> </ul> |
| 32         | Empty       |                                                                                                          |
| 33         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control unit</li> </ul>                    |

■ Fuse panel located in the engine compartment



A) Main fuse (petrol engine models)

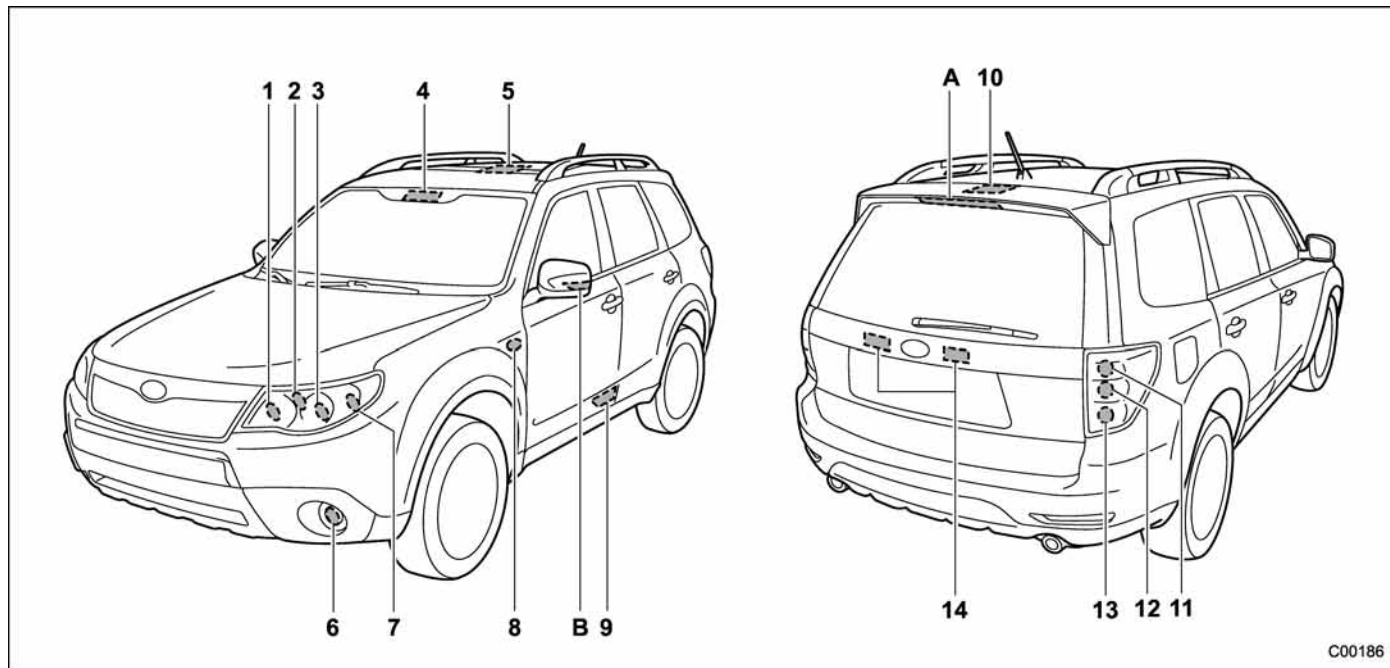
| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit                                                                                               |
|------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1          | 30A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ABS unit</li> <li>• Vehicle Dynamics Control unit</li> </ul> |
| 2          | 25A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Main fan (cooling fan)</li> </ul>                            |
| 3          | 25A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sub fan (cooling fan)</li> </ul>                             |
| 4          | Empty       |                                                                                                       |
| 5          | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audio</li> </ul>                                             |
| 6          | 30A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low beam headlight</li> </ul>                                |
| 7          | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High beam headlight</li> </ul>                               |
| 8          | 20A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Back-up</li> </ul>                                           |
| 9          | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horn</li> </ul>                                              |
| 10         | 25A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rear window defogger</li> <li>• Mirror heater</li> </ul>     |
| 11         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuel pump</li> </ul>                                         |
| 12         | 10A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission control unit</li> </ul>               |
| 13         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine control unit</li> </ul>                               |
| 14         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn and hazard warning flasher</li> </ul>                   |
| 15         | 15A         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tail and illumination relay</li> </ul>                       |
| 16         | 7.5A        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alternator</li> </ul>                                        |

**12-16** *Specifications*

---

| Fuse panel | Fuse rating | Circuit                                                                                                                    |
|------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 17         | 10A         | • Secondary air combination valve (non-turbo petrol engine models that conform to "Euro 5" and turbo petrol engine models) |
| 18         | 15A         | • Low beam headlight (left side)                                                                                           |
| 19         | 15A         | • Low beam headlight (right side)                                                                                          |



**Bulb chart**

Lights A and B are the LED (Light Emitting Diode) type. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

|                                         | Wattage   | Bulb No.* |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1) High beam headlight                  | 12V-60W   | HB3       |
| 2) Front position light                 | 12V-5W    | W5W       |
| 3) Low beam headlight                   |           |           |
| Models with HID light                   | 12V-35W   | D2R       |
| Models with halogen light               | 12V-55W   | H7        |
| 4) Map light                            | 12V-8W    | —         |
| 5) Dome light                           | 12V-8W    | —         |
| 6) Front fog light                      | 12V-51W   | HB4       |
| 7) Front turn signal light              | 12V-21W   | WY21W     |
| 8) Side turn signal light (if equipped) | 12V-5W    | —         |
| 9) Door step light                      | 12V-5W    | —         |
| 10) Cargo area light                    | 12V-13W   | —         |
| 11) Brake/tail light                    | 12V-21/5W | W21/5W    |
| 12) Rear turn signal light              | 12V-21W   | WY21W     |
| 13) Back-up/rear fog light              | 12V-21W   | W21W      |
| 14) Licence plate light                 | 12V-5W    | W5W       |
| A) High mount stop light                | —         | —         |
| B) Side turn signal light (if equipped) | —         | —         |

\*: ECE specification



## WARNING

- **Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.**
- **For models with HID low beam headlights, observe the following precautions. Not doing so carries the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury because the HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage.**
  - **Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.**
  - **Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.**
  - **Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.**

**For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.**

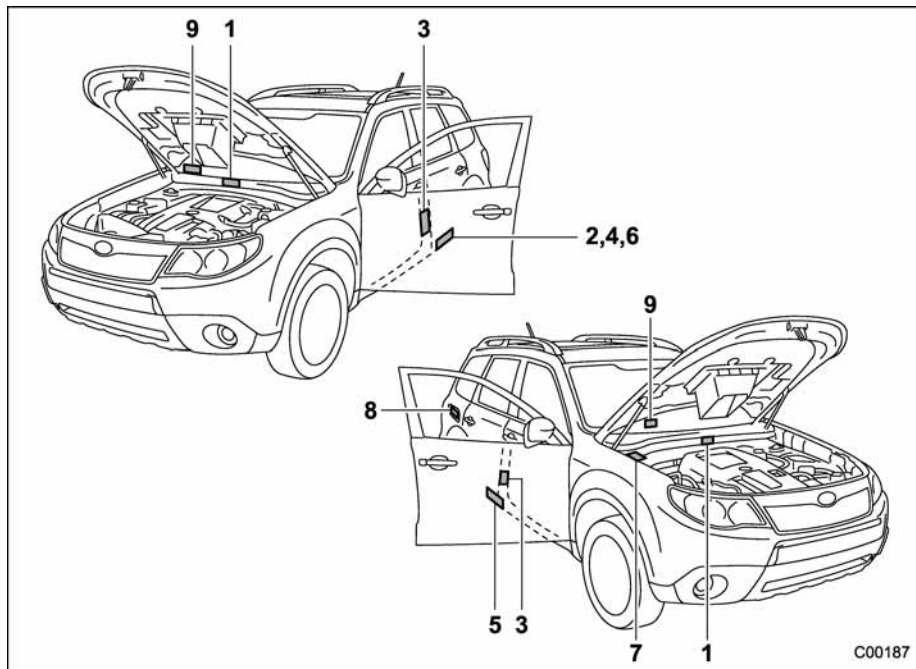


**CAUTION**

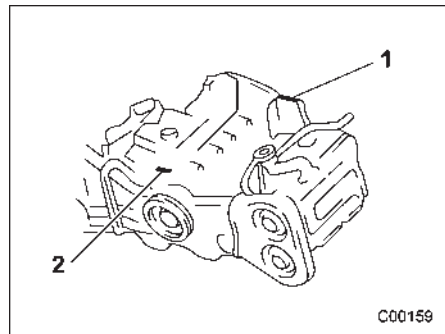
Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire.

## Vehicle identification

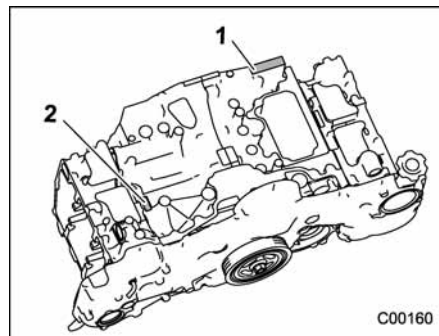
### ■ For vehicle body



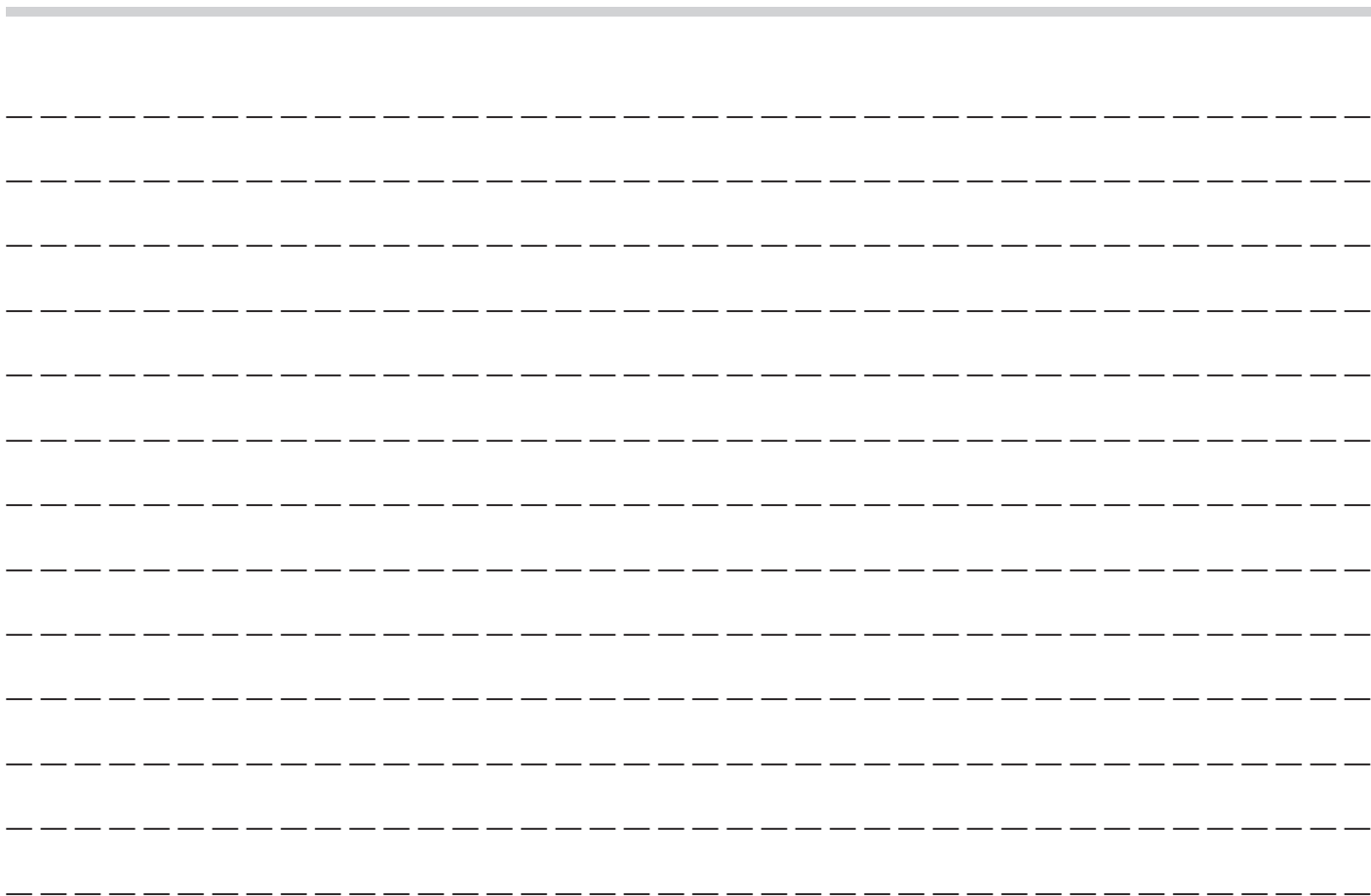
- 1) Vehicle identification number
- 2) ID label (Europe models)
- 3) Tire inflation pressure label
- 4) Year of manufacture label (Middle East models)
- 5) Model number label (General models)
- 6) Built date label (Australia models)
- 7) ADR compliance plate (Australia models)
- 8) Fuel label
- 9) Air conditioner label

**■ For engine****▼ Petrol engine**

- 1) Engine serial number (punch mark)
- 2) Engine type (casting) crankcase upper side

**▼ Diesel engine**

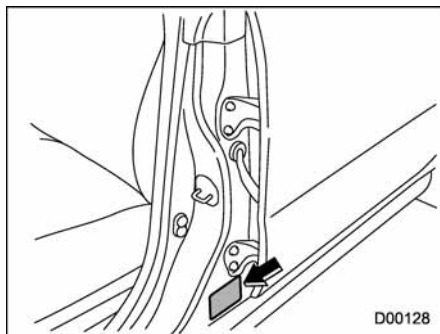
- 1) Engine serial number (punch mark)
- 2) Engine type (casting) crankcase upper side



|                                                                                                                            |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Year of manufacture (Middle East models only) .....                                                                        | 13-2 |
| Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only) .....                                       | 13-2 |
| Fuel consumption and CO <sub>2</sub> -emissions (EU only) .....                                                            | 13-3 |
| Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC ..... | 13-4 |
| Transmitter for keyless entry system (left-hand drive models) .....                                                        | 13-4 |
| Transmitter for keyless entry system (right-hand drive models) .....                                                       | 13-5 |
| Receiver for keyless entry system .....                                                                                    | 13-6 |

|                                                                                                         |       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Integrated unit (car immobilizer) .....                                                                 | 13-7  |
| Immobilizer .....                                                                                       | 13-8  |
| LF Oscillator .....                                                                                     | 13-9  |
| Bluetooth® module .....                                                                                 | 13-10 |
| Technical information and instruction of the radio and telecommunication devices for China models ..... | 13-12 |
| Transmitter .....                                                                                       | 13-12 |
| Immobilizer .....                                                                                       | 13-12 |
| Push-button ignition switch .....                                                                       | 13-12 |
| Access key .....                                                                                        | 13-13 |
| Antenna for keyless access .....                                                                        | 13-13 |
| Bluetooth® module .....                                                                                 | 13-13 |

## Year of manufacture (Middle East models only)



The calendar year when your vehicle was manufactured is indicated in the “Year of manufacture label” attached on the left center pillar.

## Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only)

| Model                         | 2.5 L            |     |
|-------------------------------|------------------|-----|
|                               | MT               | AT  |
| Speed limit<br>km/h           | 198              | 185 |
| Maximum torque<br>N·m (kgf·m) | 235 (24.0)/4,100 |     |
| Maximum power<br>kW (PS)      | 126 (172)/5,800  |     |

- The performance data above is the numeric value evaluated according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value evaluated from petrol with an octane rating of 90 (Research Octane number).



## Fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub>-emissions (EU only)

### Petrol engine models that conform to “Euro 5”

| Model and Type |     | Fuel consumption according to 715/2007-692/2008 (L/100 km) |             |       | CO <sub>2</sub> -emissions according to 715/2007-692/2008 (g/km) |             |       |
|----------------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------|
|                |     | Urban                                                      | Extra-urban | Total | Urban                                                            | Extra-urban | Total |
| 2.0 L models   | D/R | 9.4                                                        | 6.4         | 7.5   | 217                                                              | 148         | 173   |
|                | 4AT | 9.7                                                        | 6.3         | 7.5   | 225                                                              | 145         | 174   |

4AT: 4-speed automatic transmission

D/R: Dual-range manual transmission

### Diesel engine models that conform to “Euro 5”

| Model and Type |     |                    | Fuel consumption according to 715/2007-692/2008 (L/100 km) |             |       | CO <sub>2</sub> -emissions according to 715/2007-692/2008 (g/km) |             |       |
|----------------|-----|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------|
|                |     |                    | Urban                                                      | Extra-urban | Total | Urban                                                            | Extra-urban | Total |
| 2.0 L models   | 6MT | Without roof rails | 7.6                                                        | 5.6         | 6.3   | 199                                                              | 149         | 167   |
|                |     | With roof rails    | 7.7                                                        | 5.7         | 6.4   | 202                                                              | 151         | 170   |

6MT: 6-speed manual transmission

# Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC

## ■ Transmitter for keyless entry system (left-hand drive models)

  
**CALSONIC KASEI**  
 CalsonicKasei Corp.  
 2-1917, Nishin-cho, Kita-ku, Suitama-shi, Suitama-ken  
 331-8501, Japan  
 TEL.: +81-48-660-4073 FAX: +81-48-661-1026

### DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, CalsonicKasei Corp. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

**Product:** Keyless Entry System (Transmitter)  
**Model/ Type Number:** TF001  
**Directive and Standards used:**  
 Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04)  
 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06)  
 EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)  
 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)  
 Safety: EN 60965 :2003 + Amd.1 :2006  
 Incl. EN60965:2002+Amd.11:2008

Year of affixing CE marking: 2009

**Signature** : *Sakae Tsuyakubo*  
**Name** : Sakae Tsuyakubo  
**Position** : Deputy General Manager  
 Electric Design Group  
**Date** : December 16, 2009

**CAUTION** - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.  
**CAUTION** - Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

# ■ Transmitter for keyless entry system (right-hand drive models)



**CALSONIC KANSEI**  
 CalsonicKansei Corp.  
 2-1917, Nishin-cho, Kita-ku, Suitama-shi, Suitama-ken  
 331-8501, Japan  
 TEL : +81-48-660-4073 FAX : +81-48-661-1026

## DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, CalsonicKansei Corp. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

**Product:** Keyless Entry System (Transmitter)  
**Model/ Type Number:** ASREU55  
**Directive and Standards used:** Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04)  
 EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06)  
EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 (2008-04)  
 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)  
Safety: EN 60965 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006  
 Incl. EN60965:2002+Amd.1:2008

**Year of affixing CE marking:** 2009

**Signature** : *Sakae Tsuyakubo*  
**Name** : Sakae Tsuyakubo  
**Position** : Deputy General Manager  
 Electric Design Group  
**Date** : December 16, 2009

**CAUTION** - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.  
**CAUTION** - Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

D00185

## Receiver for keyless entry system

  
 Calsonic Kansei Corp.  
 2-1917, Nishino-cho, Kita-ku, Sakai-shi, Sakai-ken  
 591-8501, Japan  
 TEL.: +81-48-660-4073 FAX: +81-48-661-1026

### DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, Calsonic Kansei Corp. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Product:                      | Keyless Entry System (Receiver)                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Model/ Type Number:           | GSREU32                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Directive and Standards used: | Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.1.1 (2006-04)<br>EN 300 220-2 V2.1.2 (2007-06)<br>EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)<br>EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)<br>Safety: EN 60965 2002 + Amd.11:2006<br>Incl. EN60965:2002+Amd.11:2008 |

Year of affixing CE marking: 2009

|           |                                                   |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Signature | : <i>Sakae Tsuyuhiko</i>                          |
| Name      | : Sakae Tsuyuhiko                                 |
| Position  | : Deputy General Manager<br>Electric Design Group |
| Date      | : December 16, 2009                               |

# ■ Integrated unit (car immobilizer)



## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation, Himeji Works (of the above address), hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the R&G and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1990/53/EEC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed hereunder.

### Product:

Integrated Unit (Car Immobilizer)

### Model/Type Numbers:

IMB521-02  
 (Variant Types: M117, M121, M172)

### Directive and Standards used:

Radio: EN300 330-1 V1.5.1; 2006-04  
 EN300 330-2 V1.3.1; 2006-04  
EMC: EN 301 489-1 V1.6.1; 2005-09  
 EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1; 2002-08  
Safety: IEC 60065\_2004+Am1: 2005  
 EN 60065\_2002+Am1: 2006

Year of affixing CE marking: 2008

CE0891

Signature:

*Yasuyuki Nakano*

Name:

Yasuyuki Nakano

Position:

Manager  
 Body Control Unit Design Section I  
 Electronic Control Modules Dept. B

Date:

May 25, 2008

D00153

## ■ Immobilizer



FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION  
1-1-1, KAWAUCHI 4-CHOME, YAMAGUCHI 755, JAPAN TEL: 083-251-2322

## R&amp;TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.  
Manufacturer's Address: 1-1-1, Kawawuchi, Shimizu, Tokyo 100-8316, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer  
Product Model: SSPIMB01

to which this declaration refers is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1: 2001  
-EMC requirements: EN50149-1 V1.1.1 & EN50149-3 V1.1.1  
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 310-2 V1.1.1.

Supplementary information:

• CE mark



Date:

January 3, 2002

Signature:

*Kazuo Ohgawa*  
Kazuo Ohgawa

D00141

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB01 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

# ■ LF Oscillator



## R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.  
 Manufacturer's Address: 2-2-2, Nakai 2-chu, Shizuoka, Tokyo, 460-8316 Japan  
 hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator  
 Product Model: SSPLF01  
 to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

- Health & safety requirements: EN50599-1:2005  
 EMC requirements: EN601 489-1 V1.6.1 & EN601 489-3 V1.4.1  
 Electromagnetic compatibility: EN550 230-2 V1.3.1

Supplementary information:



Date: January 9, 2007  
 Signature: Kazuo Ogawa

D00142

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPLF01 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

## ■ Bluetooth® module

## ▼ Type D audio



## EC DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

Document No. 10DC-CT07

We, Clarion Co., Ltd.  
(manufacturer)  
7-2, Shimoshin, Chuo-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-0081, Japan.  
(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Car Radio with CD Player  
Model: PF-3293 / PF-3294 / PF-3295  
PF-3298 / PF-3299 / PF-3300  
Type: 9953672  
(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s)  
or other normative document(s)

EN 300 328 V1.7.1  
EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1  
EN 301 489-1 V1.3.2  
EN 55015:2001 + A1:2003 + A2:2006  
EN 55026:2007  
EN 60950-1:2006 Incl. EN 60950-1:2006 + Amend. 1:2009  
(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.  
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Saitama, Japan  
22, January, 2010  
(Place and date of issue)

*Tetsu Nishina*  
Tetsu Nishina  
(name and signature or equivalent  
marking of authorized person)



▼ Type E audio



# EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Document No. 10DC-CT13

We ... Clarion Co., Ltd. .....  
(manufacturer)  
7-2, Shimoshibu, Chuo-Ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama 330-0081, Japan.  
(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Car Radio with CD Player

Model: PE-3303 / PE-3304 / PE-3305

Type: 9953701

(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s)  
or other normative document(s)

- ..... EN 300 328 V1.7.1 .....
- ..... EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1 .....
- ..... EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 .....
- ..... EN 55013:2001 + A1:2003 + A2:2006 .....
- ..... EN 55020:2007 .....
- ..... EN 60950-1:2006 Inc1, EN 60950-1:2006+Amd.1:2009 .....
- (title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.  
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Saitama, Japan .....  
18. May 2010 .....  
(Place and date of issue)

Toru Nishimura .....  
Toru Nishimura  
Department Manager, R&D Division  
(name and signature or equivalent  
marking of authorized person)

## Technical information and instruction of the radio and telecommunication devices for China models

### Transmitter

#### 民用无线控制装置的规格

- 使用频率: 433.92MHz
- 发射功率小于10mW (e. r. p)
- 占用带宽不大于400kHz
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无[2005] 423 号文件
- 有关本控制器使用方法等请参照车主使用手册。
- CM11 ID: 2007DJ4539
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率 (包括额外加装射频功率放大器), 不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线;
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰; 一旦发现有干扰现象时, 应立即停止使用, 并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用;
- 使用微功率无线电设备, 必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰;
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

D00169

### Immobilizer

#### 电子防盗锁系统 ( 不具备无钥匙进入及按钮启动 系统 ) 的规格

- 使用频率: 134.45kHz
- 磁场强度小于72dB  $\mu$  A/m ( 10 米处场强, 准峰值 )
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无[2005] 423 号文件
- 有关本电子防盗锁系统 ( 不具备无钥匙进入及按钮启动系统 ) 的使用方法等请参照车主使用手册。
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率 (包括额外加装射频功率放大器), 不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线;
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰; 一旦发现有干扰现象时, 应立即停止使用, 并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用;
- 使用微功率无线电设备, 必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰;
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

D00166

### Push-button ignition switch

#### 按钮式点火开关的规格

- 使用频率: 134.2kHz
- 磁场强度发射限值: 67.7dB  $\mu$  A/m ( 10 米处场强, 准峰值 )
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无[2005] 423 号文件
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率 (包括额外加装射频功率放大器), 不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线;
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰; 一旦发现有干扰现象时, 应立即停止使用, 并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用;
- 使用微功率无线电设备, 必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰;
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

D00170

## ■ Access key

### 无线遥控电子钥匙（无钥匙进入系统）的规格

- 使用频率：315.12MHz
- 发射功率小于10mW (e. r. p)
- 占用带宽不大于400kHz
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无[2005] 423号文件
- 有关本钥匙（无钥匙进入系统）的使用方法等请参照车主使用手册。
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；
- 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

D00171

## ■ Antenna for keyless access

### 无线遥控钥匙天线的规格

- 使用频率：134.2kHz
- 磁场强度发射限值：67.7dB  $\mu$  A/m（10米处场强，准峰值）
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照信部无[2005] 423号文件
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；
- 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

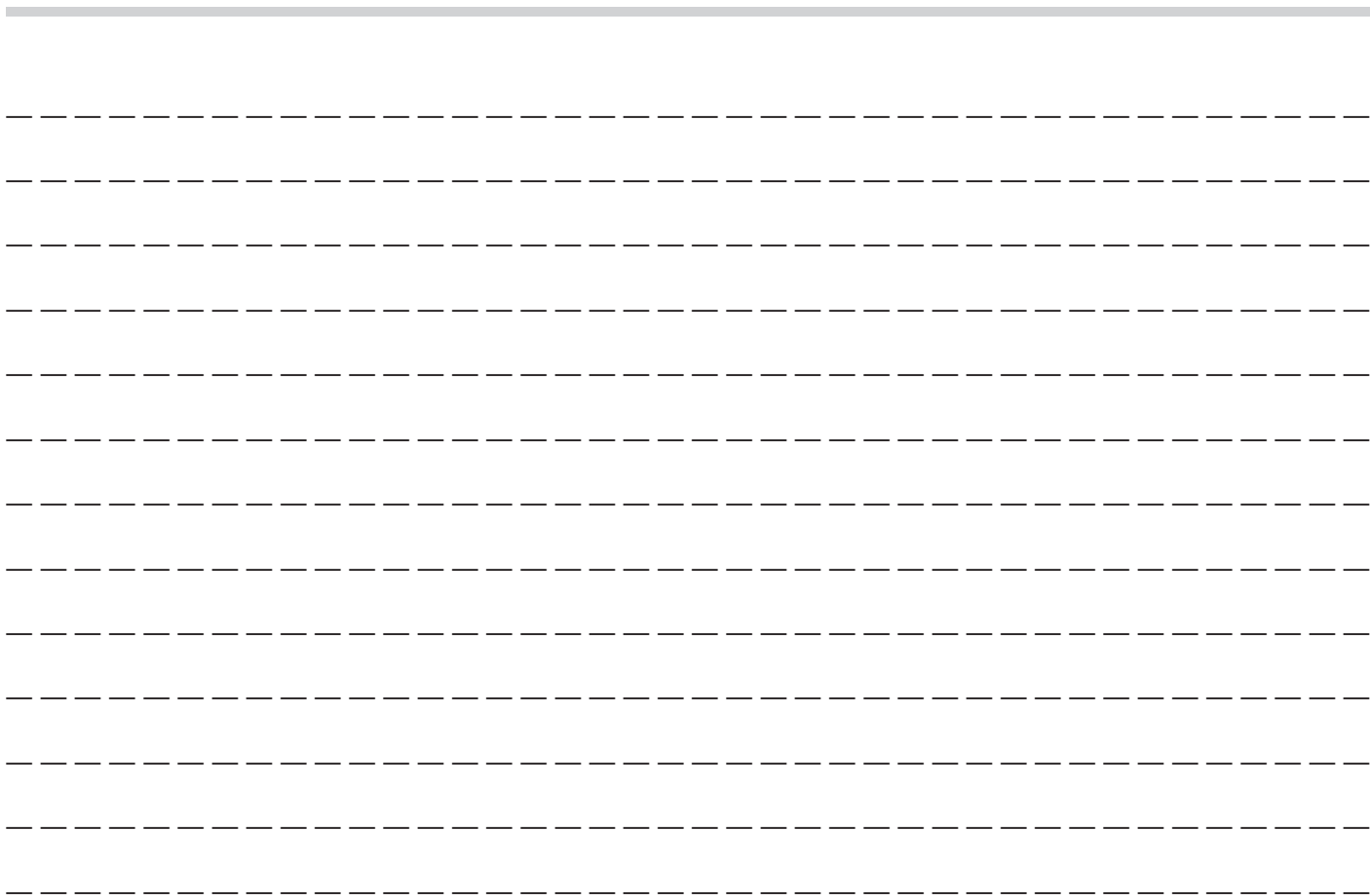
D00172

## ■ Bluetooth® module

### Bluetooth® 模块

- 使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835GHz
- 等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)：  
天线增益<10dBi时：≤100mW 或≤20dBm
- 最大功率谱密度：  
天线增益<10dBi时：≤20dBm / MHz (EIRP)
- 载频容限：20ppm
- 杂散辐射等其他技术指标请参照2002/353号文件
- 不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线；
- 使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用；
- 使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰；
- 不得在飞机和机场附近使用。

D00192





## A

|                                         |            |
|-----------------------------------------|------------|
| ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....      | 7-27       |
| Warning light .....                     | 3-20       |
| Access key .....                        | 2-8        |
| Warning light .....                     | 3-26, 3-28 |
| Accessories .....                       | 5-4, 11-53 |
| Accessory power outlet .....            | 6-10       |
| Active head restraint .....             | 1-5        |
| Additional information for Europe ..... | 8-19       |
| Air cleaner element .....               | 11-23      |
| Air filtration system .....             | 4-11       |
| All-Wheel Drive warning light .....     | 3-24       |
| Aluminum wheel .....                    | 11-44      |
| Cleaning .....                          | 10-3       |
| Antenna system .....                    | 5-3        |
| Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....      | 7-27       |
| Armrest .....                           | 1-8        |
| Ashtray .....                           | 6-12       |
| AT OIL TEMP warning light .....         | 3-20       |
| Audio .....                             |            |
| Antenna system .....                    | 5-3        |
| Auxiliary input jack .....              | 5-26       |
| Bluetooth® audio .....                  | 5-37       |
| CD player operation .....               | 5-18       |
| Control button .....                    | 5-35       |
| FM/AM radio operation .....             | 5-14       |
| iPod® operations .....                  | 5-29       |
| Set .....                               | 5-4        |
| USB storage device operations .....     | 5-29       |
| Automatic climate control system .....  | 4-6        |
| Automatic headlight beam leveler .....  | 3-40       |

|                                                     |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Warning light .....                                 | 3-24         |
| Automatic transmission .....                        | 7-17         |
| Fluid .....                                         | 11-29, 12-10 |
| MANUAL mode .....                                   | 7-21         |
| Oil temperature warning light (AT OIL TEMP) .....   | 3-20         |
| Select lever .....                                  | 7-18         |
| Shift lock function .....                           | 7-19         |
| SPORT mode .....                                    | 7-23         |
| Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) ..... | 1-13         |
| Auxiliary input jack .....                          | 5-26         |

## B

|                                                                  |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Battery .....                                                    | 11-49        |
| Disposal and recycling .....                                     | 9            |
| Drainage prevention function .....                               | 2-6          |
| Jump starting .....                                              | 9-7          |
| Replacement (keyless access with push-button start system) ..... | 11-59        |
| Replacement (remote keyless entry system) .....                  | 11-61        |
| Bluetooth® audio .....                                           | 5-37         |
| Booster seat .....                                               | 1-32         |
| Bottle holder .....                                              | 6-10         |
| Brake .....                                                      |              |
| Assist .....                                                     | 7-26         |
| Booster .....                                                    | 7-25, 11-35  |
| Fluid .....                                                      | 11-33, 12-10 |
| Pad and lining .....                                             | 11-37        |
| Parking .....                                                    | 7-31, 11-38  |
| Pedal .....                                                      | 11-35        |
| System .....                                                     | 7-25         |

|                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Brake pedal                                     |            |
| Free play .....                                 | 11-35      |
| Reserve distance .....                          | 11-36      |
| Brake system .....                              | 7-25       |
| Warning light .....                             | 3-22       |
| Braking .....                                   | 7-25       |
| Tips .....                                      | 7-25       |
| Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings ..... | 11-37      |
| Bulb                                            |            |
| Chart .....                                     | 12-17      |
| Replacing .....                                 | 11-53      |
| <b>C</b>                                        |            |
| Cargo area                                      |            |
| Cover .....                                     | 6-14       |
| Light .....                                     | 6-3, 11-57 |
| Tie-down hooks .....                            | 6-16       |
| Catalytic converter .....                       | 8-3        |
| Center                                          |            |
| Console .....                                   | 6-6        |
| Changing                                        |            |
| Coolant .....                                   | 11-21      |
| Flat tire .....                                 | 9-4        |
| Oil and oil filter .....                        | 11-17      |
| Charge warning light .....                      | 3-19       |
| Checking                                        |            |
| Brake pedal free play .....                     | 11-35      |
| Brake pedal reserve distance .....              | 11-36      |
| Clutch function .....                           | 11-36      |
| Clutch pedal free play .....                    | 11-36      |
| Coolant level .....                             | 11-20      |

|                                                  |              |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Fluid level (automatic transmission fluid) ..... | 11-29        |
| Fluid level (brake fluid) .....                  | 11-33        |
| Fluid level (clutch fluid) .....                 | 11-34        |
| Fluid level (power steering fluid) .....         | 11-32        |
| Fluid level (washer fluid) .....                 | 11-44        |
| Oil level (engine oil) .....                     | 11-15        |
| Oil level (front differential gear oil) .....    | 11-30        |
| Oil level (manual transmission oil) .....        | 11-27        |
| Child restraint systems .....                    | 1-23         |
| Installation of a booster seat .....             | 1-32         |
| ISOFIX anchor bars .....                         | 1-33         |
| Top tether anchorages .....                      | 1-35         |
| Child safety .....                               | 5            |
| Locks .....                                      | 2-21         |
| Chime                                            |              |
| Key .....                                        | 3-4          |
| Light .....                                      | 3-37         |
| Seatbelt .....                                   | 3-15         |
| Cleaning                                         |              |
| Aluminum wheels .....                            | 10-3         |
| Interior .....                                   | 10-5         |
| Ventilation grille .....                         | 4-10         |
| Climate control system                           |              |
| Automatic .....                                  | 4-6          |
| Manual .....                                     | 4-7          |
| Clock .....                                      | 3-34         |
| Clutch                                           |              |
| Fluid .....                                      | 11-34, 12-10 |
| Pedal .....                                      | 11-36        |
| Coat hook .....                                  | 6-14         |
| Coin tray .....                                  | 6-8          |

|                                      |              |
|--------------------------------------|--------------|
| Coolant.....                         | 11-20, 12-11 |
| Temperature high warning light ..... | 3-18         |
| Temperature low indicator light..... | 3-18         |
| Cooling system.....                  | 11-19        |
| Corrosion protection .....           | 10-4         |
| Cruise control .....                 | 7-34         |
| Indicator light.....                 | 3-32         |
| Set indicator light.....             | 3-32         |
| Cup holder.....                      | 6-8          |
| Front passenger's .....              | 6-8          |
| Rear passenger's.....                | 6-9          |

## D

|                                                                                                                                 |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio<br>and telecommunications terminal equipment directive<br>1999/5/EC..... | 13-4        |
| Defogger.....                                                                                                                   | 3-50        |
| Deicer .....                                                                                                                    | 3-50        |
| Diesel fuel.....                                                                                                                | 7-2         |
| Diesel particulate filter .....                                                                                                 | 8-4         |
| Warning light .....                                                                                                             | 3-33        |
| Differential gear oil                                                                                                           |             |
| Front .....                                                                                                                     | 11-30, 12-9 |
| Rear.....                                                                                                                       | 11-31, 12-9 |
| Dimensions .....                                                                                                                | 12-2        |
| Disc brake pad wear warning indicators.....                                                                                     | 7-26        |
| Dome light .....                                                                                                                | 6-2, 11-57  |
| Door                                                                                                                            |             |
| Locks .....                                                                                                                     | 2-4         |
| Open warning light .....                                                                                                        | 3-24        |
| Step light .....                                                                                                                | 11-57       |

|                                     |                      |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Double locking system .....         | 2-19                 |
| Drive belts .....                   | 11-26                |
| Driving                             |                      |
| All-Wheel Drive model.....          | 8-6                  |
| All-Wheel Drive warning light ..... | 3-24                 |
| Car phone/cell phone.....           | 8                    |
| Drinking.....                       | 7                    |
| Drugs.....                          | 7                    |
| Foreign countries.....              | 8-5                  |
| Pets.....                           | 8                    |
| Snowy and icy roads .....           | 8-10                 |
| Tips .....                          | 7-13, 7-15, 8-2, 8-6 |
| Tired or sleepy .....               | 7                    |
| Winter.....                         | 8-9                  |
| Dual range .....                    | 7-16                 |

## E

|                                                     |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| ECO gauge .....                                     | 3-14         |
| Electrical system .....                             | 12-4         |
| Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system... | 3-22, 7-27   |
| Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).....              | 1-12         |
| EN590 .....                                         | 7-2          |
| Engine                                              |              |
| Compartment overview.....                           | 11-12        |
| Coolant .....                                       | 11-20, 12-11 |
| Exhaust gas (carbon monoxide) .....                 | 6, 8-2       |
| Hood .....                                          | 11-10        |
| Oil .....                                           | 11-15, 12-6  |
| Overheating.....                                    | 9-11         |
| Starting & stopping .....                           | 7-6, 7-8     |
| Exterior care .....                                 | 10-2         |



**F**

|                                                            |             |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Flat tires .....                                           | 9-4         |
| Floor mat .....                                            | 6-13        |
| Fluid level                                                |             |
| Automatic transmission .....                               | 11-29       |
| Brake .....                                                | 11-33       |
| Clutch .....                                               | 11-34       |
| Power steering .....                                       | 11-32       |
| Fog light .....                                            | 3-42        |
| Indicator light .....                                      | 3-32        |
| Switch .....                                               | 3-42        |
| Folding mirror switch .....                                | 3-49        |
| Front                                                      |             |
| Differential gear oil .....                                | 11-30, 12-9 |
| Fog light .....                                            | 3-42        |
| Fog light indicator light .....                            | 3-32        |
| Fog light switch .....                                     | 3-42        |
| Seatbelt pretensioners .....                               | 1-19        |
| Front seats .....                                          | 1-2         |
| Forward and backward adjustment .....                      | 1-3         |
| Head restraint adjustment .....                            | 1-5         |
| Power seat .....                                           | 1-4         |
| Reclining .....                                            | 1-3         |
| Seat height adjustment (driver's seat) .....               | 1-4         |
| Fuel .....                                                 | 7-2         |
| Consumption and CO <sub>2</sub> -emissions (EU only) ..... | 13-3        |
| Consumption indicator .....                                | 3-34        |
| Economy hints .....                                        | 8-2         |
| Filler lid and cap .....                                   | 7-3         |
| Filter warning light .....                                 | 3-23        |
| Gauge .....                                                | 3-12        |

|                                                        |       |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Requirements .....                                     | 7-2   |
| Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models) ..... | 3-23  |
| Fuses .....                                            | 11-51 |
| Main fuse .....                                        | 11-52 |
| Fuses and circuits .....                               | 12-13 |

**G**

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| Glove box ..... | 6-5 |
|-----------------|-----|

**H**

|                                     |          |
|-------------------------------------|----------|
| Hands-free system .....             | 5-39     |
| Hazard warning flasher .....        | 3-7, 9-2 |
| Head restraint adjustment           |          |
| Front seat .....                    | 1-5      |
| Rear seat .....                     | 1-8      |
| Headlight                           |          |
| Beam leveler .....                  | 3-40     |
| Bulb replacing .....                | 11-53    |
| Bulb wattage .....                  | 12-17    |
| Control switch .....                | 3-37     |
| Flasher .....                       | 3-38     |
| Indicator light .....               | 3-32     |
| Washer .....                        | 3-47     |
| High beam indicator light .....     | 3-32     |
| High/low beam change (dimmer) ..... | 3-38     |
| Hill start assist (MT models) ..... | 7-33     |
| Warning light .....                 | 3-23     |
| Hitch stabilizer .....              | 8-17     |
| Hook                                |          |
| Cargo tie-down .....                | 6-16     |
| Coat .....                          | 6-14     |

|                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Shopping bag .....         | 6-14  |
| Towing and tie-down .....  | 9-12  |
| Horn .....                 | 3-52  |
| Hose and connections ..... | 11-20 |

## I

|                                          |      |
|------------------------------------------|------|
| Ignition switch .....                    | 3-3  |
| Light .....                              | 3-5  |
| Illumination brightness control .....    | 3-39 |
| Immobilizer .....                        | 2-3  |
| Indicator light .....                    | 3-31 |
| Indicator light                          |      |
| Coolant temperature low .....            | 3-18 |
| Cruise control .....                     | 3-32 |
| Cruise control set .....                 | 3-32 |
| Front fog light .....                    | 3-32 |
| Headlight .....                          | 3-32 |
| High beam .....                          | 3-32 |
| Immobilizer .....                        | 3-31 |
| LO position (dual range MT models) ..... | 3-32 |
| Preheating .....                         | 3-32 |
| Rear fog light .....                     | 3-32 |
| Security (immobilizer) .....             | 3-31 |
| Select lever/Gear position .....         | 3-31 |
| SPORT mode .....                         | 3-31 |
| Turn signal .....                        | 3-32 |
| Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF .....       | 3-21 |
| Vehicle Dynamics Control operation ..... | 3-31 |
| Information display .....                | 3-34 |
| Inside mirror .....                      | 3-48 |
| Interior lights .....                    | 6-2  |

|                          |      |
|--------------------------|------|
| iPod® operations .....   | 5-29 |
| ISOFIX anchor bars ..... | 1-33 |

## J

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Jack and jack handle ..... | 9-3 |
| Jack-up point .....        | 9-4 |
| Jump starting .....        | 9-7 |

## K

|                                                    |      |
|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| Key .....                                          | 2-2  |
| Number .....                                       | 2-2  |
| Reminder chime .....                               | 3-4  |
| Replacement .....                                  | 2-4  |
| Keyless access entry function .....                | 2-11 |
| Keyless access with push-button start system ..... | 2-8  |
| Disabling keyless access functions .....           | 2-15 |
| Locking and unlocking doors .....                  | 2-11 |
| Opening rear gate .....                            | 2-13 |
| Warning chimes and warning light .....             | 3-24 |
| When access key does not operate properly .....    | 9-15 |
| Keyless entry system .....                         | 2-16 |

## L

|                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| Lap pretensioner .....       | 1-21       |
| Leather seat materials ..... | 10-5       |
| License plate light .....    | 11-57      |
| Light                        |            |
| Cargo area .....             | 6-3, 11-57 |
| Control switch .....         | 3-37       |
| Dome .....                   | 6-2, 11-57 |
| Door step .....              | 11-57      |

|                                                         |                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Fog (front).....                                        | 3-42               |
| Fog (rear) .....                                        | 3-42               |
| Front position .....                                    | 3-37, 11-55        |
| Ignition switch.....                                    | 3-5                |
| License plate.....                                      | 11-57              |
| Map .....                                               | 6-3, 11-57         |
| Rear combination.....                                   | 11-56              |
| Turn signal.....                                        | 3-38, 11-55, 11-56 |
| LO position indicator light (dual range MT models)..... | 3-32               |
| Loading your vehicle .....                              | 8-13               |
| Low fuel warning light.....                             | 3-13, 3-23         |

## M

|                                                       |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Main fuse.....                                        | 11-52       |
| Maintenance                                           |             |
| Precautions .....                                     | 11-7        |
| Schedule .....                                        | 11-3        |
| Seatbelt .....                                        | 1-19        |
| Tools .....                                           | 9-2         |
| Malfunction indicator lamp (Check Engine light) ..... | 3-17        |
| Manual                                                |             |
| Climate control system .....                          | 4-7         |
| Seat .....                                            | 1-3         |
| Transmission oil.....                                 | 11-27, 12-9 |
| Transmission-5 speeds.....                            | 7-11        |
| Transmission-6 speeds.....                            | 7-14        |
| Map light.....                                        | 6-3, 11-57  |
| Meters and gauges .....                               | 3-7         |
| Mirror defogger.....                                  | 3-50        |
| Mirrors .....                                         | 3-48        |

## N

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| New vehicle break-in driving ..... | 8-2 |
|------------------------------------|-----|

## O

|                                       |       |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| Odometer/Trip meter.....              | 3-10  |
| Oil filter .....                      | 11-17 |
| Oil level                             |       |
| Engine .....                          | 11-15 |
| Front differential gear .....         | 11-30 |
| Manual transmission .....             | 11-27 |
| Rear differential gear .....          | 11-31 |
| Oil pressure warning light .....      | 3-19  |
| On-pavement and off-road driving..... | 8-7   |
| Outside                               |       |
| Mirror defogger .....                 | 3-50  |
| Mirrors .....                         | 3-48  |
| Temperature indicator.....            | 3-35  |
| Overhead console .....                | 6-7   |
| Overheating engine .....              | 9-11  |

## P

|                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Parking                    |       |
| Brake.....                 | 7-31  |
| Brake stroke .....         | 11-38 |
| Tips .....                 | 7-32  |
| Periodic inspections ..... | 8-5   |
| Petrol fuel.....           | 7-2   |
| Power                      |       |
| Door locking switch.....   | 2-7   |
| Outside mirrors .....      | 3-48  |
| Seat.....                  | 1-4   |

|                                                |              |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Steering .....                                 | 7-24         |
| Steering fluid .....                           | 11-32, 12-10 |
| Steering warning light .....                   | 3-24         |
| Windows .....                                  | 2-22         |
| Precautions against vehicle modification ..... | 1-22, 1-56   |
| Preheating indicator light .....               | 3-32         |
| Preparing to drive .....                       | 7-5          |
| Priming pump .....                             | 9-18, 11-14  |
| Push-button                                    |              |
| Ignition switch .....                          | 3-5          |
| Starting and stopping engine .....             | 7-8          |

## R

|                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| Rear                                |             |
| Combination lights .....            | 11-56       |
| Differential gear oil .....         | 11-31, 12-9 |
| Fog light switch .....              | 3-42        |
| Gate .....                          | 2-25, 9-17  |
| Turn signal light .....             | 11-56       |
| Rear differential                   |             |
| Oil temperature warning light ..... | 3-20        |
| Rear fog light .....                | 3-42        |
| Indicator light .....               | 3-32        |
| Rear seat .....                     | 1-7         |
| Center table .....                  | 6-7         |
| Folding down .....                  | 1-10        |
| Head restraint adjustment .....     | 1-8         |
| Reclining .....                     | 1-9         |
| Rear view camera .....              | 6-16        |
| Rear window                         |             |
| Defogger .....                      | 3-50        |

|                                                              |       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Wiper and washer switch .....                                | 3-46  |
| Wiper blades .....                                           | 11-47 |
| Recommended                                                  |       |
| Automatic transmission fluid .....                           | 12-10 |
| Brake fluid .....                                            | 12-10 |
| Clutch fluid .....                                           | 12-10 |
| Engine oil .....                                             | 12-6  |
| Front differential gear oil .....                            | 12-9  |
| Manual transmission oil .....                                | 12-9  |
| Power steering fluid .....                                   | 12-10 |
| Rear differential gear oil .....                             | 12-9  |
| Spark plugs .....                                            | 12-4  |
| Refueling .....                                              | 7-3   |
| Remote keyless entry system .....                            | 2-16  |
| Replacement                                                  |       |
| Brake pad and lining .....                                   | 11-37 |
| Wiper blades .....                                           | 11-45 |
| Replacing                                                    |       |
| Access key battery .....                                     | 11-59 |
| Air cleaner element .....                                    | 11-23 |
| Battery (keyless access with push-button start system) ..... | 11-59 |
| Battery (remote keyless entry system) .....                  | 11-61 |
| Remote keyless entry transmitter battery .....               | 11-61 |
| Replacing bulbs .....                                        | 11-53 |
| Cargo area light .....                                       | 11-57 |
| Dome light .....                                             | 11-57 |
| Door step light .....                                        | 11-57 |
| Front position light .....                                   | 11-55 |
| Front turn signal light .....                                | 11-55 |
| Headlight .....                                              | 11-53 |

|                                    |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|
| License plate light .....          | 11-57 |
| Map light.....                     | 11-57 |
| Rear combination light .....       | 11-56 |
| Side turn signal light.....        | 11-56 |
| Rocking the vehicle .....          | 8-12  |
| Roof molding and load carrier..... | 8-14  |
| Roof rails .....                   | 8-13  |
| Running out of fuel.....           | 9-18  |

## **S**

### **Safety**

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Precautions when driving ..... | 5 |
| Symbol .....                   | 2 |
| Warnings .....                 | 2 |

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Screensaver..... | 5-50 |
|------------------|------|

### **Seat**

|                         |      |
|-------------------------|------|
| Fabric.....             | 10-5 |
| Front .....             | 1-2  |
| Heater .....            | 1-6  |
| Height adjustment ..... | 1-4  |
| Power.....              | 1-4  |
| Rear.....               | 1-7  |

|                |         |
|----------------|---------|
| Seatbelt ..... | 5, 1-11 |
|----------------|---------|

|                               |      |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Fastening.....                | 1-13 |
| Maintenance.....              | 1-19 |
| Pretensioners .....           | 1-19 |
| Safety tips.....              | 1-11 |
| Warning light and chime ..... | 3-15 |

### **Security**

|                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| ID plate.....    | 2-3 |
| Immobilizer..... | 2-3 |

|                                                                                        |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Indicator light (immobilizer) .....                                                    | 3-31        |
| Select lever .....                                                                     | 7-18        |
| Position indicator .....                                                               | 3-31        |
| Shift lock function .....                                                              | 7-19        |
| Shopping bag hook.....                                                                 | 6-14        |
| Shoulder pretensioners .....                                                           | 1-19        |
| Skid suppression function .....                                                        | 7-29        |
| Snow tires .....                                                                       | 8-11, 11-38 |
| Snowy and icy roads .....                                                              | 8-10        |
| Spark plugs .....                                                                      | 11-26, 12-4 |
| Specifications.....                                                                    | 12-2        |
| Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at<br>rpm (Middle East models only)..... | 13-2        |
| Speedometer .....                                                                      | 3-10        |
| SPORT mode .....                                                                       | 7-23        |
| Indicator light .....                                                                  | 3-31        |
| <b>SRS</b>                                                                             |             |
| Curtain airbag .....                                                                   | 1-48        |
| Frontal airbag.....                                                                    | 1-42        |
| Side airbag .....                                                                      | 1-48        |
| SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)...                                   | 5, 1-37     |
| SRS airbag system                                                                      |             |
| Monitors .....                                                                         | 1-54        |
| Servicing .....                                                                        | 1-55        |
| Warning light.....                                                                     | 3-17        |
| Starting & stopping engine.....                                                        | 7-6, 7-8    |
| Steering wheel                                                                         |             |
| Power .....                                                                            | 7-24        |
| Tilt/telescopic .....                                                                  | 3-52        |
| Storage compartment.....                                                               | 6-5         |
| Sun shade.....                                                                         | 2-27        |

|                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Sun visors.....                                 | 6-5        |
| Sunroof.....                                    | 2-26, 9-18 |
| Supplemental Restraint System airbag (SRS)..... | 1-37       |
| Synthetic leather upholstery .....              | 10-5       |

**T**

|                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| Tachometer .....                     | 3-12 |
| Temperature gauge .....              | 3-13 |
| Temperature warning light            |      |
| AT OIL TEMP .....                    | 3-20 |
| Coolant.....                         | 3-18 |
| Rear differential oil .....          | 3-20 |
| Tether (child restraint system)..... | 1-35 |
| Tie-down hooks .....                 | 9-12 |

**Tire**

|                          |       |
|--------------------------|-------|
| Chains.....              | 8-12  |
| Inspection .....         | 11-38 |
| Pressures and wear ..... | 11-39 |
| Replacement.....         | 11-42 |
| Rotation.....            | 11-41 |
| Size and pressure.....   | 12-11 |
| Types .....              | 11-38 |

|                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| Tires and wheels..... | 11-38 |
|-----------------------|-------|

|             |     |
|-------------|-----|
| Tools ..... | 9-2 |
|-------------|-----|

|                             |      |
|-----------------------------|------|
| Top tether anchorages ..... | 1-35 |
|-----------------------------|------|

|             |      |
|-------------|------|
| Towing..... | 9-12 |
|-------------|------|

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| All wheels on the ground ..... | 9-15 |
| Flat-bed truck .....           | 9-14 |
| Hooks.....                     | 9-12 |
| Weight.....                    | 8-15 |

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Traction control function..... | 7-29 |
|--------------------------------|------|

**Trailer**

|                       |      |
|-----------------------|------|
| Hitch.....            | 8-16 |
| Towing .....          | 8-15 |
| Towing tips .....     | 8-17 |
| Trip meter.....       | 3-10 |
| Turn signal           |      |
| Indicator lights..... | 3-32 |
| Lever .....           | 3-38 |

**U**

|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| USB storage device operations ..... | 5-29 |
|-------------------------------------|------|

**V**

|                     |     |
|---------------------|-----|
| Vanity mirror ..... | 6-5 |
|---------------------|-----|

**Vehicle**

|                      |       |
|----------------------|-------|
| Identification ..... | 12-20 |
| Symbols .....        | 3     |

**Vehicle Dynamics Control**

|                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| OFF indicator light.....       | 3-21 |
| OFF switch .....               | 7-30 |
| Operation indicator light..... | 3-31 |
| System.....                    | 7-29 |
| Warning light.....             | 3-21 |

**W**

|                                   |      |
|-----------------------------------|------|
| Warning and indicator lights..... | 3-14 |
|-----------------------------------|------|

**Warning chimes**

|                                                   |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|
| Keyless access with push-button start system..... | 3-24 |
| Seatbelt.....                                     | 3-15 |

**Warning light**

|          |      |
|----------|------|
| ABS..... | 3-20 |
|----------|------|

|                                                    |            |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Access key .....                                   | 3-26, 3-28 |
| All-Wheel Drive.....                               | 3-24       |
| AT OIL TEMP .....                                  | 3-20       |
| Automatic headlight beam leveler.....              | 3-24       |
| Brake system .....                                 | 3-22       |
| Charge .....                                       | 3-19       |
| Coolant temperature high.....                      | 3-18       |
| Diesel particulate filter .....                    | 3-33       |
| Door open.....                                     | 3-24       |
| Fuel filter .....                                  | 3-23       |
| Hill start assist.....                             | 3-23       |
| Keyless access with push-button start system ..... | 3-24       |
| Low fuel.....                                      | 3-13, 3-23 |
| Oil pressure .....                                 | 3-19       |
| Power steering .....                               | 3-24       |
| Rear differential oil temperature .....            | 3-20       |
| Seatbelt.....                                      | 3-15       |
| SRS airbag system .....                            | 3-17       |
| Vehicle Dynamics Control .....                     | 3-21       |
| Warranties .....                                   | 1          |
| Washing .....                                      | 10-2       |
| Waxing and polishing .....                         | 10-3       |
| Wear indicators.....                               | 11-41      |
| Wheel                                              |            |
| Alignment.....                                     | 12-12      |
| Aluminum.....                                      | 11-44      |
| Balance .....                                      | 11-40      |
| Covers.....                                        | 11-43      |
| Nut tightening torque .....                        | 9-4        |
| Replacement.....                                   | 11-43      |
| Windows.....                                       | 2-22       |

|                                 |             |
|---------------------------------|-------------|
| Windshield                      |             |
| Washer fluid.....               | 11-44       |
| Wiper and washer switches ..... | 3-45        |
| Wiper blades.....               | 11-46       |
| Wiper deicer .....              | 3-50        |
| Winter                          |             |
| Diesel .....                    | 7-3         |
| Driving .....                   | 8-9         |
| Tires .....                     | 8-11, 11-38 |
| Wiper and washer .....          | 3-44        |
| Wiper deicer .....              | 3-50        |

## Y

|                                                    |      |
|----------------------------------------------------|------|
| Year of manufacture (Middle East models only)..... | 13-2 |
|----------------------------------------------------|------|

